ISSN 3030-1394

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) • Vasara

Vilnius, Lithuania

EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy
E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026): Vasara

The *Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education* ***(3030-1394)*** is an international, peer-reviewed journal dedicated to advancing knowledge and understanding in the fields of linguistics and language education. We aim to provide a platform for researchers, educators, and practitioners to share their work and contribute to the global discourse on language teaching, learning, and linguistic research.

Aims and Scope
Our journal focuses on a wide range of topics within linguistics and language education, including but not limited to:
- Theoretical and applied linguistics
- Language acquisition and learning
- Bilingualism and multilingualism
- Language teaching methodologies
- Educational technology in language learning
- Sociolinguistics and language policy
- Translation studies

We welcome submissions that explore innovative approaches, present empirical research findings, or offer critical reviews of current trends in the field.

Open Access Policy
Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education is committed to the open-access movement, providing unrestricted online access to all published articles. This ensures that research is freely available to the academic community and the general public, facilitating wider dissemination and engagement.

Peer Review Process
All submissions undergo a rigorous double-blind peer review process. This ensures that each manuscript is evaluated based on its academic merit, contribution to the field, and adherence to the journal's standards.

Ethical Standards
We adhere to the highest ethical standards in publishing. Authors are expected to follow ethical guidelines

in conducting and reporting research, including avoiding plagiarism, conflicts of interest, and ensuring proper attribution of sources.

Archiving
Our journal is included in the LOCKSS and CLOCKSS archiving systems, ensuring that our content is securely preserved and accessible for the future.

Contact Information
For any inquiries regarding submissions, the peer review process, or other journal-related matters, please contact us at editor@egarp.lt, urbaite0013@gmail.com

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy
Executive Secretary: Gerda Urbaite
Salomėjos Nėries g. 57, Vilnius, Lithuania
E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Contents

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026), Summer

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

The Nature of Nouns in Conceptual Perspective

[1] Yegana Babasoy

https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602001

Abstract. *This article offers a multidisciplinary analysis of the conceptual nature of nouns and examines their significant role in language, culture, social interaction, and human cognition. Although nouns are generally treated as a grammatical category, they also function as fundamental cognitive tools through which human beings classify, interpret, and structure the world. To reveal the complexity of nouns, the study adopts a transdisciplinary perspective and draws on linguistics, philosophy, psychology, sociolinguistics, anthropology, and cultural studies. From a psychological perspective, the paper explores the role of nouns in perception, categorization, memory, and language acquisition, particularly in child development. From a sociocultural perspective, it investigates how nouns operate as carriers of symbolic capital, markers of identity, and transmitters of cultural codes. The study also considers the impact of globalization and digital transformation on contemporary naming practices, including brand names, usernames, and domain names. The article argues that nouns are not merely linguistic units but conceptual instruments deeply embedded in systems of thought, culture, and social organization. Their study therefore requires an interdisciplinary approach and remains highly relevant to both theoretical inquiry and modern communicative practice.*

Keywords: *noun, cognition, perception, naming, linguistics, categorization, identity*

1. Introduction

Nouns are among the most fundamental instruments of human thought. They occupy a complex conceptual space in which language intersects with culture, philosophy, psychology, and social life. For this reason, the nature of nouns cannot be adequately understood through grammar alone; it requires a broader, transdisciplinary perspective.

Although nouns are one of the most basic and universal parts of speech, their importance extends far beyond syntax. At the intersection of linguistics, philosophy, psychology, anthropology, and digital studies, nouns function as bearers of meaning, categories of thought, and markers of social and cultural identity. Understanding the nature of nouns is therefore essential for exploring how human cognition operates, how reality is linguistically constructed, and how cultural knowledge is transmitted.

[1] Babasoy, Y. Doctoral Student, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: yegane.babasoy@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-2318-4056

The aim of this article is to examine the conceptual nature of nouns and to highlight their central role in human thought and social existence. Using a transdisciplinary approach, the article integrates insights from structural linguistics, philosophical ontology, cognitive psychology, sociolinguistics, and cultural studies.

2. Theoretical Framework

This study is grounded in a transdisciplinary theoretical framework that draws on structural linguistics, philosophical semantics, cognitive psychology, sociolinguistics, and cultural theory. Its central purpose is to examine nouns not only as grammatical units but also as essential instruments of cognition, cultural representation, and identity construction.

First, from the perspective of semiotics and structural linguistics, nouns may be understood as linguistic signs that acquire meaning through their relations within a language system. In this respect, Saussure's distinction between the signifier and the signified remains fundamental (Saussure, 1983). Second, from the perspective of philosophical semantics and ontology, nouns raise questions about the relationship between names and essences (Aristotle, 1984; Aquinas, 1947; Wittgenstein, 1953). Third, from cognitive and developmental psychology, nouns play a central role in categorization, memory, and language acquisition (Piaget, 1952; Rosch, 1978; Vygotsky, 1978). Fourth, sociolinguistic and anthropological approaches show that nouns reflect social structures, cultural values, and symbolic systems (Bourdieu, 1986; Lévi-Strauss, 1966).

3. Methodology

The methodology of the study is qualitative, descriptive, and comparative. It includes: (1) linguistic analysis of noun categories across several languages — English, Russian, Turkish, Azerbaijani, and Chinese — with attention to gender, number, case, and syntactic function; (2) historical-philosophical analysis of major theories of naming from classical antiquity to modern thought; (3) cognitive review of research on categorization, memory, and child language acquisition; (4) sociocultural analysis of naming practices such as surnames, place names, and ritual naming; and (5) contemporary observation of new forms of naming in digital and globalized communication.

Data were drawn from existing theoretical literature rather than a primary corpus. The comparative framework enables cross-linguistic and cross-cultural observations about the conceptual functions of nouns.

4. The Philosophical Aspect of Nouns: Name and Essence

The philosophical investigation of nouns is closely connected with the problem of the relationship between name and essence. In classical thought, this problem concerned whether names correspond naturally to the nature of things or whether they are established by convention.

Aristotle approached nouns from a logical and ontological perspective. In Categories, he distinguished types of being and showed how language relates to substance and classification

(Aristotle, 1984). Medieval philosophy further developed this discussion through the debate over universals. Realists, such as Thomas Aquinas, maintained that general concepts correspond to some form of real essence, whereas nominalists argued that universal terms are merely names applied to individual entities (Aquinas, 1947). In modern philosophy, Wittgenstein reconsidered the issue of naming and meaning, arguing that the meaning of a word derives from its function within language games (Wittgenstein, 1953). Structural linguistics similarly emphasized that nouns derive meaning from their place in a system of differences rather than from any inherent connection to reality (Saussure, 1983).

5. The Psychological Nature of Nouns

Psychological research indicates that nouns are not only linguistic forms but also key elements of cognitive processing. One of the most influential approaches is prototype theory, according to which categories are organized around central or prototypical examples rather than rigid boundaries (Rosch, 1978). Nouns also occupy a privileged position in child language development: Piaget observed that children first acquire names for concrete objects before mastering more abstract concepts (Piaget, 1952), while Vygotsky emphasized the social and cognitive function of naming in structuring the child's environment (Vygotsky, 1978).

In addition, nouns are closely linked to memory organization. Psycholinguistic research demonstrates that lexical items are stored in semantic networks, so that activating one noun tends to co-activate semantically related items (Levelt, 1989).

6. The Social and Cultural Scope of Nouns

Nouns also function in social and cultural domains far beyond grammar. According to Bourdieu's concept of symbolic capital, names and titles may operate as social resources that signal prestige, authority, and status (Bourdieu, 1986). From an anthropological perspective, naming systems encode cultural values and social organization (Lévi-Strauss, 1966). Historical change also reshapes noun systems: the adoption of surnames under modernization reforms and the renaming of cities in post-Soviet states illustrate how nouns can serve nation-building and identity reconstruction (Smith, 1998).

7. Names, Religion, and Symbolic Belief

Names have long been associated with religious belief and ritual practice. In many religious traditions, naming ceremonies mark the symbolic entry of an individual into a moral, spiritual, or communal order (Turner, 2009). In many cultures, names are also associated with mystical or symbolic power, as in Kabbalistic numerology (Kaplan, 1990) and Turkic cultural traditions where names are understood as meaningful signs connected to fate, ancestry, or social expectation (Tekin, 1968).

8. Nouns in the Age of Globalization and Digital Transformation

In the contemporary world, the functions of nouns have expanded considerably. Globalization, branding, and digital communication have produced new naming environments in which nouns play strategic and highly visible roles. Brand names, usernames, domain names, hashtags, and digital identities demonstrate that naming is now closely linked to visibility, market value, and online presence. A brand name is expected not only to identify a product but also to evoke associations, values, and emotional responses (Keller, 2008). The development of these new naming practices confirms that nouns remain dynamic conceptual tools adaptable to technological change.

9. Conclusion

The conceptual nature of nouns demonstrates that they are integral not only to language but also to culture, philosophy, psychology, and social life. The analysis has shown that nouns serve as cognitive maps in processes of perception, classification, and interpretation; they occupy a central place in philosophical debates about names and reality; they are fundamental to memory, categorization, and language acquisition; and they act as carriers of symbolic capital, cultural codes, and social status.

In education, noun study should include not only grammatical description but also cognitive and cultural dimensions. In artificial intelligence and natural language processing, research on nouns may contribute to semantic search and meaning extraction. Ultimately, the study of nouns is a key to understanding the fundamental mechanisms of human thought, social organization, and cultural meaning.

Funding: This research received no external funding.
Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.
Author Contributions: Conceptualization: Y.B.; Methodology: Y.B.;
Investigation: Y.B.; Writing – original draft: Y.B.;
Writing – review & editing: Y.B.

References

Aquinas, T. (1947). Summa theologica (Fathers of the English Dominican Province, Trans.). Benziger Bros. (Original work published 1265–1274)

Aristotle. (1984). Categories (J. L. Ackrill, Trans.). Oxford University Press. (Original work published ca. 350 BCE)

Bourdieu, P. (1986). The forms of capital. In J. Richardson (Ed.), Handbook of theory and research for the sociology of education (pp. 241–258). Greenwood.

Kaplan, A. (1990). Sefer Yetzirah: The book of creation. Weiser Books.

Keller, K. L. (2008). Strategic brand management: Building, measuring, and managing brand equity (3rd ed.). Pearson Education.

Lévi-Strauss, C. (1966). The savage mind. University of Chicago Press.

Levelt, W. J. M. (1989). Speaking: From intention to articulation. MIT Press.

Piaget, J. (1952). The origins of intelligence in children. International Universities Press.

Rosch, E. (1978). Principles of categorization. In E. Rosch & B. B. Lloyd (Eds.), Cognition and categorization (pp. 27–48). Erlbaum.

Saussure, F. de. (1983). Course in general linguistics (R. Harris, Trans.). Duckworth. (Original work published 1916)

Smith, A. D. (1998). Nationalism and modernism. Routledge.

Tekin, T. (1968). A grammar of Orkhon Turkic. Indiana University Press.

Turner, V. (2009). The ritual process: Structure and anti-structure. Aldine Transaction.

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Wittgenstein, L. (1953). Philosophical investigations (G. E. M. Anscombe, Trans.). Blackwell.

Received: 20 February 2026
Accepted: 2 April 2026
Published: 6 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

From Theory to Fluency: Cultivating Communicative Competence in the University Classroom

[1] **Nigar Mehdizade**

https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602002

Abstract. *Teaching speaking skills to university students requires a multifaceted pedagogical approach that transcends traditional rote memorization, focusing instead on the development of both communicative competence and academic fluency within a learner-centered environment. In the contemporary higher education landscape, the primary objective of oral instruction is to bridge the gap between theoretical linguistic knowledge and practical, real-world application, ensuring that students can navigate both professional discourses and informal social interactions with confidence. Central to this process is the integration of Communicative Language Teaching (CLT) and Task-Based Learning (TBL), which prioritize meaningful interaction over mechanical repetition, allowing students to engage in authentic problem-solving and critical thinking activities. Furthermore, the role of the instructor shifts from a traditional lecturer to a facilitator or moderator, creating a low-affective filter environment where students feel linguistically secure enough to take risks without the immediate fear of correction. Modern strategies must also incorporate the use of sophisticated classroom activities such as academic debates, Socratic seminars, and simulated professional presentations, which challenge students to synthesize complex information and articulate nuanced arguments. The inclusion of digital tools and Artificial Intelligence-driven platforms has further revolutionized this domain, providing students with personalized feedback loops and opportunities for asynchronous speaking practice that reinforce classroom learning. Assessment in this context must balance the dual pillars of accuracy and fluency, utilizing rubrics that evaluate not only grammatical precision but also pragmatic appropriateness, rhetorical organization, and sociolinguistic awareness. Ultimately, an effective speaking curriculum for university students must be adaptive, culturally responsive, and intellectually stimulating, aiming to produce graduates who are not only proficient in the target language but are also capable of global citizenship and cross-cultural collaboration.*

Keywords: *speaking, teaching speaking, speaking skills, oral proficiency, communicative competence, higher education*

1. Introduction

In the era of rapid globalization and digital transformation, the mastery of English as a lingua franca has become a non-negotiable prerequisite for academic success and professional mobility, requiring university-level English Language Teaching (ELT) to shift from traditional rote

[1] Mehdizade, N. Y. Teacher, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: Nigarmehdizade4@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-5116-3666

memorization toward the development of complex communicative competence. Within the framework of higher education, the ability to communicate effectively is no longer an auxiliary skill but a core competency, yet many students continue to exhibit a significant gap between their theoretical grammatical knowledge and practical oral proficiency, a phenomenon often described as the "silent experience" in language learning (Hymes, 1972).

The complexity of teaching speaking to university students lies in the dual requirement of fostering basic interpersonal communication skills and cognitive academic language proficiency, as speaking involves not only the mechanical production of sounds but also the mastery of sociolinguistic rules (Richards, 2008). Traditional teacher-centered approaches often fail to provide the comprehensible output necessary for genuine acquisition, necessitating a critical move toward student-centered methodologies like Communicative Language Teaching (CLT) and Task-Based Learning (TBL), which prioritize meaning over form (Swain, 1985).

By focusing on goal-oriented activities, instructors can significantly lower the affective filter — the psychological barrier of anxiety and lack of confidence — that often hinders adult learners from speaking freely in a public forum (Krashen, 1982). Furthermore, the integration of 21st-century digital tools and Artificial Intelligence has redefined the boundaries of the speaking classroom, offering personalized feedback loops and reducing the fear of social judgment (Mehdizade, 2024). Consequently, this article explores the multifaceted nature of oral instruction, proposing a comprehensive framework that integrates traditional pedagogical theory with modern digital practices to empower the next generation of global communicators.

2. Theoretical Framework

The pedagogical transition from traditional, grammar-heavy instruction to a more fluid, communication-oriented paradigm is the cornerstone of modern university-level ELT, requiring a sophisticated synthesis of theoretical rigor, psychological safety, and technological integration. For tertiary students who often possess a foundational grasp of syntax but lack the confidence to verbalize complex thoughts, the implementation of CLT and TBL is essential, as these frameworks prioritize the negotiation of meaning over mechanical repetition, transforming the classroom into a dynamic environment where language is treated as a practical tool for problem-solving rather than a static set of rules to be memorized (Littlewood, 1981).

Cognitive Load Theory is particularly relevant to spontaneous speech production, where the simultaneous demands of retrieving lexis, applying syntactic rules, and managing phonological output often overwhelm the undergraduate learner. Pedagogical scaffolding must therefore be intensified through pre-speaking input floods and brainstorming phases that prime the brain for linguistic performance. As Mehdizade (2024) underscores, the teacher's role is to architect zones of proximal development where students are pushed just beyond their current comfort levels through structured controversy and investigative dialogue (Vygotsky, 1978).

Furthermore, Politeness Theory and Speech Act Theory teach students how to navigate the delicate balance of power and distance in academic hierarchies — how to disagree respectfully, how to interrupt without causing offense, and how to use hedging expressions such as "It could be argued that..." to soften academic claims. The inclusion of Content and Language Integrated Learning (CLIL) further ensures that students are not merely learning to speak but speaking to learn, using English as a vehicle to explore complex global issues that demand rhetorical sophistication.

3. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative, descriptive-analytical methodology grounded in an extensive review of theoretical and empirical literature on oral language instruction at the tertiary level. Primary sources were drawn from peer-reviewed journals and scholarly monographs in the fields of applied linguistics, educational psychology, and language pedagogy, covering publications from 1972 to 2024. The analytical framework integrates key theoretical constructs — including CLT, TBL, Affective Filter Hypothesis, Cognitive Load Theory, and Dynamic Assessment — to examine their collective applicability in the contemporary university speaking classroom.

The study also incorporates a critical analysis of recent developments in AI-assisted language learning, drawing on empirical studies that evaluate the effectiveness of digital feedback tools in improving oral proficiency. The regional context of Azerbaijani higher education, particularly the Nakhchivan academic environment, is considered throughout the analysis to ensure contextual relevance and applicability of the proposed pedagogical framework.

4. Results and Discussion

The analysis reveals that the most effective university speaking programs are those that integrate psychological safety with cognitive scaffolding and technological support. Psychological factors play a pivotal role: university students are frequently inhibited by a fear of making mistakes in front of their peers, a barrier that can only be dismantled through a low-affective filter environment where educators act as facilitators rather than mere lecturers (Krashen, 1982). Employing Active Constructive Responding (ACR) helps build a linguistically safe atmosphere where students feel empowered to take risks.

When learners perceive that their ideas are valued more than their grammatical perfection, their Willingness to Communicate (WTC) increases significantly, leading to more robust engagement in advanced discursive practices such as Socratic seminars, academic debates, and simulated professional presentations. These high-level activities challenge students intellectually while simultaneously reinforcing their social and rhetorical skills, guiding them to master non-verbal cues, eye contact, and pacing — all integral components of effective communication (Thornbury, 2005).

The digital frontier, characterized by the emergence of AI and sophisticated educational technologies, has fundamentally redefined the boundaries of the speaking classroom, offering personalized, asynchronous practice and immediate feedback on pronunciation and intonation.

According to Mehdizade (2024), technology in language learning serves as a powerful catalyst for autonomy, offering a low-stakes environment for students to refine their verbal output before presenting it in a social setting. AI-driven simulations can now mimic high-stakes social interactions, allowing a student in Nakhchivan to virtually practice a conference presentation for an international audience, receiving real-time data on their pragmatic appropriateness and cultural signaling.

Assessment of speaking skills must evolve to include comprehensive rubrics that balance lexical resource and grammatical range with fluency and sociolinguistic appropriateness. A delayed correction model — where common errors are analyzed in a post-activity error clinic — maintains communicative flow while still improving accuracy over time. Dynamic Assessment, which measures not just what the student can do alone but how much they can achieve with a prompt, provides a more accurate picture of their potential for growth (Dörnyei, 2005).

The sociolinguistic implications of English as an International Language (EIL) are also significant: the goal is no longer to mimic a native speaker but to achieve intelligibility and interpretability across diverse cultural contexts. University curricula must therefore move beyond Western-centric models to include Global Englishes, fostering a sense of ownership over the language and encouraging students to express their local identities and academic insights with authority (Canale & Swain, 1980).

5. Conclusion

The multifaceted nature of teaching speaking to university students in the 21st century necessitates a departure from traditional, rigid pedagogical models in favor of a holistic, adaptive framework that synthesizes cognitive linguistics, psychological safety, and the transformative power of modern technology. Oral proficiency at the tertiary level is not a static destination but a dynamic process of identity construction and linguistic agency, where the student evolves from a passive recipient of grammar rules into an active, autonomous communicator capable of navigating complex global discourses.

Central to this evolution is the role of the instructor as a facilitator of engagement, who strategically utilizes TBL and CLT to create authentic inquiry spaces where the negotiation of meaning takes precedence over mechanical accuracy. The integration of AI and digital tools acts as a critical catalyst, providing a low-stakes environment that effectively lowers the affective filter and allows students to refine their verbal output through personalized, asynchronous feedback loops (Mehdizade, 2024).

By bridging the gap between theoretical knowledge and practical application through scaffolding, CLIL, and AI-mediated simulations, higher education institutions can fulfill their mission of producing graduates who are not only linguistically proficient but also critically engaged global citizens. Assessment must move beyond standardized testing to include Dynamic Assessment and multi-dimensional rubrics that evaluate fluency, lexical resource, and sociolinguistic awareness as interconnected components of a single communicative act. Ultimately, the successful teaching of speaking skills is a testament to the synergy between human-centric pedagogy and digital innovation, ensuring that every graduate possesses the communicative will to contribute meaningfully to global dialogues.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: M.N.; Methodology: M.N.; Investigation: M.N.; Writing – original draft: M.N.; Writing – review & editing: M.N.

References

Brown, H. D. (2014). Principles of language learning and teaching (6th ed.). Pearson Education.

Canale, M., & Swain, M. (1980). Theoretical bases of communicative approaches to second language teaching and testing. Applied Linguistics, 1(1), 1–47. https://doi.org/10.1093/applin/1.1.1

Celce-Murcia, M. (2001). Teaching English as a second or foreign language. Heinle & Heinle.

Dörnyei, Z. (2005). The psychology of the language learner: Individual differences in second language acquisition. Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Hymes, D. (1972). On communicative competence. In J. B. Pride & J. Holmes (Eds.), Sociolinguistics (pp. 269–293). Penguin.

Krashen, S. D. (1982). Principles and practice in second language acquisition. Pergamon Press.

Larsen-Freeman, D., & Anderson, M. (2011). Techniques and principles in language teaching (3rd ed.). Oxford University Press.

Littlewood, W. (1981). Communicative language teaching: An introduction. Cambridge University Press.

Mehdizade, N. (2024). The advantages and disadvantages of teacher-centred instruction in foreign language teaching amidst contemporary demands: An analysis based on the experience of Azerbaijan. Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(5), 119–131.

Mehdizade, N. (2024). Innovative approaches to teaching foreign languages in inclusive classrooms. Art Studies, 60.

Mehdizade, N. (2024). The indispensable role of structure and expertise: Advantages of teacher-centred approaches in foreign language learning. Porta Universorum, 1(10), 134–144.

Richards, J. C. (2008). Teaching listening and speaking: From theory to practice. Cambridge University Press.

Swain, M. (1985). Communicative competence: Some roles of comprehensible input and comprehensible output in its development. In S. Gass & C. Madden (Eds.), Input in second language acquisition (pp. 235–253). Newbury House.

Thornbury, S. (2005). How to teach speaking. Longman.

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Received: 20 February 2026
Accepted: 6 April 2026
Published: 6 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

The Main Principles of the Postmodernist Novel and English American Examples

[1] **Narmin Mammadova**

https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602003

Abstract. *This article examines the main principles of the postmodernist novel with a focus on metafiction, ironic style, and genre hybridity, and analyzes their representation in English and American literature. Postmodernism, which emerged in the mid-twentieth century, challenges traditional literary conventions by rejecting linear narratives, stable meanings, and objective reality. Instead, it emphasizes fragmentation, plurality, and the active role of the reader in constructing meaning. The study adopts a qualitative analytical approach, exploring how key postmodern techniques function within selected works of Thomas Pynchon and John Fowles. Metafiction is analyzed as a self-reflexive strategy that exposes the artificial nature of narrative and disrupts the illusion of reality. Ironic style is examined as a critical tool used to question dominant ideologies and undermine conventional storytelling. Additionally, genre hybridity and intertextuality are discussed as mechanisms that blur the boundaries between different literary forms and create complex layers of meaning. The findings reveal that both Pynchon and Fowles employ these techniques extensively, demonstrating the core characteristics of postmodern fiction. Their works challenge readers' expectations, encourage multiple interpretations, and highlight the instability of truth and meaning. The article concludes that the postmodernist novel represents a significant shift in literary aesthetics, offering innovative narrative strategies that reflect the complexities of contemporary culture.*

Keywords: *postmodernism, metafiction, irony, genre hybridity, intertextuality, English-American literature*

1. Introduction

Postmodernism emerged as one of the most influential intellectual and artistic movements of the twentieth century, profoundly transforming literature, philosophy, and cultural studies. Developing in the aftermath of World War II, postmodernism can be understood as both a continuation of and a reaction against modernism. While modernist writers sought new forms to represent reality and consciousness, they often maintained a belief in underlying coherence and meaning. In contrast, postmodernism rejects the idea of universal truths, stable identities, and objective reality, emphasizing instead fragmentation, ambiguity, and multiplicity (Hassan, 1982; McHale, 1987).

[1] Mammadova, N. Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: adonia_555@yahoo.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-4259-0453

In literary studies, the postmodernist novel stands out as a form that deliberately challenges traditional narrative conventions. Classical elements such as linear plot development, consistent characterization, and clear moral resolution are often subverted or entirely abandoned. Instead, postmodern fiction embraces discontinuity, nonlinearity, and open-endedness. The boundaries between fiction and reality become blurred, and the reader is no longer positioned as a passive recipient of meaning but as an active interpreter (Hutcheon, 1988). This transformation signals a move away from literature as a mirror of reality toward literature as a self-conscious construct that questions its own methods and purposes.

One of the defining features of the postmodernist novel is its reliance on metafiction, a technique through which the text draws attention to its own artificiality. By breaking the illusion of realism, metafiction exposes the processes of writing and storytelling, often involving direct authorial intrusion, narrative self-reflection, or characters who are aware of their fictional status (Waugh, 1984). Another essential aspect is the extensive use of irony, which operates on multiple levels and frequently resists definitive interpretation, allowing authors to question ideological assumptions and parody established literary forms (Hutcheon, 1994).

Furthermore, the postmodernist novel is characterized by genre hybridity and intertextuality. Rather than adhering to a single literary genre, postmodern works often combine elements of various forms such as historical fiction, detective narratives, science fiction, and romance (Allen, 2000). Within the context of English and American literature, Thomas Pynchon and John Fowles occupy a central place due to their innovative narrative techniques and their contribution to the development of postmodern aesthetics. The aim of this article is to examine these main principles and to analyze how they are manifested in selected works of Pynchon and Fowles.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundation of this study draws on key scholarly contributions to postmodern literary theory. Lyotard's (1984) concept of the "incredulity toward metanarratives" provides a philosophical basis for understanding the postmodern rejection of grand, totalizing systems of truth. In literary terms, this skepticism toward unified meaning directly informs the narrative strategies of fragmentation, irony, and self-reflexivity that characterize postmodern fiction.

Hutcheon's (1988) concept of "historiographic metafiction" is particularly relevant to the analysis of Pynchon and Fowles, as it describes texts that are both intensely self-reflexive and yet paradoxically claim to speak about real historical events and people. McHale's (1987) distinction between the modernist epistemological dominant — concerned with questions of knowledge and perception — and the postmodernist ontological dominant — concerned with questions of being and the nature of fictional worlds — provides a further analytical framework for distinguishing postmodern narrative strategies from their modernist predecessors.

Barthes's (1977) influential concept of the "death of the author" also informs the postmodern approach to narrative authority, as it shifts interpretive power from the author to the reader, a move that is enacted formally in the metafictional techniques of both Pynchon and Fowles. Similarly, Kristeva's (1980) theory of intertextuality, developed from Bakhtin's concept of dialogism, underpins the analysis of how postmodern texts engage in continuous dialogue with prior literary and cultural texts (Allen, 2000).

3. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative, text-analytical methodology grounded in close reading and literary analysis. The primary texts selected for analysis are Thomas Pynchon's The Crying of Lot 49 (1966) and Gravity's Rainbow (1973), and John Fowles's The French Lieutenant's Woman (1969). These works were selected because they are widely recognized as canonical examples of postmodern fiction within the English-American literary tradition and have received extensive critical attention in Scopus-indexed literary journals.

The analytical framework draws on the theoretical concepts outlined above — metafiction, irony, genre hybridity, and intertextuality — and applies them systematically to the selected primary texts. Secondary sources include peer-reviewed journal articles, scholarly monographs, and critical editions. The study proceeds from the general to the specific: first establishing the theoretical principles of postmodernism, then examining how these principles are enacted in the works of each author, and finally synthesizing the findings in a comparative discussion.

4. Main Principles of the Postmodernist Novel

4.1 Metafiction

Metafiction is widely regarded as one of the most distinctive and defining features of the postmodernist novel. The term refers to a form of fiction that self-consciously draws attention to its own status as an artificial construct. Rather than attempting to create the illusion of reality, metafiction deliberately breaks that illusion by exposing the mechanisms of storytelling. In doing so, it challenges traditional assumptions about narrative authority, realism, and the relationship between fiction and truth (Waugh, 1984).

One of the primary techniques of metafiction is authorial intrusion, where the author directly enters the narrative and addresses the reader. Another important aspect is the use of self-reflexive narration, where the text reflects upon its own structure, language, and development. Characters may be aware that they are part of a story, or the narrative may include discussions about how the story should be told. This creates a layered narrative in which the boundary between fiction and criticism becomes blurred (Hutcheon, 1988). Nünning (2004) further distinguishes between mimetic and anti-mimetic forms of metafiction, noting that the most radical postmodern examples deliberately foreground the fictionality of narrative at the expense of conventional story coherence.

In John Fowles's The French Lieutenant's Woman, for instance, Fowles famously interrupts the narrative to offer commentary and presents multiple possible endings, thereby denying the idea of a single authoritative conclusion. This technique not only highlights the constructed nature of fiction but also empowers the reader to participate in the creation of meaning. Currie (1995) argues that such metafictional strategies represent a fundamental epistemological challenge to realist assumptions about the transparency of narrative language.

4.2 Ironic Style

Ironic style is one of the central and most complex features of the postmodernist novel. Unlike traditional uses of irony, which often serve a clear rhetorical or moral purpose, postmodern irony operates in a more ambiguous and multilayered way. It is used not only as a stylistic device but also as a means of questioning authority, destabilizing meaning, and challenging accepted truths (Hutcheon, 1994). At its core, irony in postmodern literature reflects a deep skepticism toward grand narratives, ideologies, and fixed systems of belief.

One of the key functions of ironic style is parody. Postmodern novels frequently imitate and exaggerate earlier literary forms, genres, or styles in order to critique them. This parody is not merely for comedic effect; it serves as a critical commentary on the conventions and assumptions of those forms. Postmodern ironic style is also closely linked to black humor and playfulness: serious or even tragic themes — such as war, identity, or existential uncertainty — are often presented in a humorous or exaggerated manner, creating a sense of dissonance that forces readers to question their emotional responses (Rose, 1993).

In the works of Thomas Pynchon, irony is used extensively to challenge political, technological, and cultural systems. His narratives often combine absurd situations with complex philosophical ideas, creating a tone that is both satirical and deeply critical. Through irony, Pynchon exposes the chaotic and often irrational nature of modern society, while simultaneously questioning the possibility of finding order or meaning within it (Seed, 1988).

4.3 Genre Hybridity and Intertextuality

Genre hybridity refers to the blending and coexistence of multiple literary genres within a single work. Unlike traditional novels that typically adhere to a specific genre, postmodern novels freely combine elements from various forms. A single narrative may incorporate aspects of historical fiction, science fiction, fantasy, satire, and even journalism or autobiography. This mixing of genres challenges conventional expectations and disrupts the reader's sense of familiarity and stability (Bakhtin, 1981).

Closely connected to genre hybridity is the concept of intertextuality, which refers to the relationship between texts. In postmodern literature, no text exists in isolation; instead, every work is seen as part of a larger network of cultural and literary references (Kristeva, 1980). Authors deliberately incorporate quotations, allusions, and stylistic imitations from other texts, creating a dialogue between past and present works. Moreover, intertextuality challenges the traditional notion of originality: in the postmodern view, all texts are shaped by previous texts, and creativity lies not in producing something entirely new but in reworking and recontextualizing existing material (Allen, 2000).

Pynchon's novels blend historical events with science fiction, conspiracy theories, and satire, creating complex narratives that resist categorization. His extensive use of cultural and literary references forms a dense intertextual network that requires active interpretation. Similarly, Fowles incorporates elements of Victorian fiction, romance, and modern narrative techniques within the same work. In The French Lieutenant's Woman, he reinterprets the conventions of the nineteenth-century novel while simultaneously critiquing them through a postmodern lens.

5. Postmodernist Features in English and American Literature

5.1 Thomas Pynchon

Thomas Pynchon is one of the most influential American novelists associated with postmodern literature. Born in 1937 in the United States, Pynchon is known for his highly complex, intellectually dense, and stylistically innovative works. His fiction is characterized by its intricate narrative structures, extensive use of intertextual references, and blending of various genres. His novels often combine elements of science fiction, historical fiction, detective stories, satire, and conspiracy narratives, reflecting a key postmodern tendency to break down traditional literary boundaries (Seed, 1988).

One of the most prominent features of Pynchon's writing is his use of metafiction. His narratives frequently draw attention to their own artificiality, reminding readers that they are engaging with a constructed text rather than a direct representation of reality. His works are also deeply marked by irony and satire: he often uses humor, absurdity, and exaggeration to critique political systems, technological developments, and cultural norms. Beneath the often playful tone of his writing lies a serious engagement with themes such as power, control, paranoia, and the influence of hidden systems in modern society (Berressem, 1993).

Among his most notable works are Gravity's Rainbow (1973), The Crying of Lot 49 (1966), and V. (1963). In these novels, Pynchon explores themes of uncertainty, entropy, communication breakdown, and the search for meaning in a fragmented world. His narratives often lack conventional closure, reflecting the postmodern skepticism toward definitive endings and absolute truths. Cowart (2011) argues that Pynchon's consistent engagement with entropy as both a physical and cultural metaphor makes his fiction one of the most philosophically sustained expressions of postmodern thought in American literature.

5.2 John Fowles

John Fowles is a prominent British novelist whose works are widely associated with postmodern narrative techniques and experimental storytelling. Born in 1926 in England, Fowles gained international recognition for his innovative approach to fiction, particularly his use of metafiction, narrative self-reflexivity, and multiple endings. His novels challenge traditional conventions of the realist novel and explore the relationship between author, text, and reader (Tarbox, 1988).

One of the defining characteristics of Fowles's writing is his use of metafiction. In his novels, the author often appears to step outside the narrative framework and directly address the reader, breaking the illusion of a self-contained fictional world. Fowles is also known for his experimentation with narrative structure: instead of adhering to a single, fixed storyline with a definitive conclusion, he often presents multiple possible outcomes or alternative endings. This approach challenges the traditional notion of narrative closure and suggests that stories can exist in more than one form simultaneously (Loveday, 1985).

Fowles's writing also demonstrates elements of irony and intertextuality. His novels often engage with earlier literary traditions, particularly the Victorian novel, while simultaneously critiquing and reinterpreting them from a modern perspective. In addition, his works reflect postmodern themes such as freedom, choice, and the instability of meaning. Acheson (1998) notes that Fowles's consistent thematic preoccupation with freedom — both existential and narrative — links his postmodern formal experimentation to a broader humanist project that distinguishes him from more nihilistic postmodern writers.

6. Discussion

The analysis of postmodernist narrative techniques — metafiction, ironic style, genre hybridity, and intertextuality — demonstrates that the postmodernist novel represents a significant departure from traditional literary conventions. Rather than presenting a unified, linear, and authoritative narrative, postmodern fiction embraces fragmentation, multiplicity, and ambiguity. This shift reflects broader philosophical and cultural changes in the twentieth century, particularly the questioning of absolute truths and the growing awareness of the constructed nature of reality and language (Lyotard, 1984; Hassan, 1982).

Metafiction plays a crucial role in redefining the relationship between the author, the text, and the reader. By drawing attention to its own artificiality, the postmodern novel disrupts the illusion of realism and encourages readers to reflect on the act of reading itself. In the works of Pynchon and Fowles, metafiction is not merely a stylistic device but a central structural principle that transforms the novel into a self-aware construct where the process of storytelling becomes as important as the story being told (Waugh, 1984; Hutcheon, 1988).

Irony further contributes to the complexity of postmodern narratives by introducing a tone of skepticism and playfulness. Genre hybridity and intertextuality expand the boundaries of the novel by incorporating multiple literary traditions and references within a single text, situating each text within a broader network of literary and cultural influences (Allen, 2000; Kristeva, 1980). The works of Pynchon and Fowles illustrate how these principles function in practice: both authors demonstrate that postmodern fiction is less concerned with providing answers than with posing questions about the nature of reality, authorship, and interpretation.

A notable point of divergence between the two authors, however, lies in their treatment of the reader. Where Pynchon's dense intertextual networks tend to challenge and even frustrate the reader's desire for coherent meaning, Fowles more openly invites the reader into the narrative process through direct address and multiple endings. This distinction suggests that postmodernism, rather than constituting a monolithic aesthetic, encompasses a spectrum of approaches to narrative self-consciousness, ranging from the encyclopedic and labyrinthine to the more playfully dialogic.

7. Conclusion

This article has examined the main principles of the postmodernist novel — metafiction, ironic style, genre hybridity, and intertextuality — and analyzed their manifestation in the works of Thomas Pynchon and John Fowles. The findings confirm that the postmodernist novel represents a major transformation in literary form and narrative philosophy, moving away from the conventions of realism and modernism to embrace fragmentation, plurality, and the instability of meaning.

Metafiction exposes the artificiality of narrative and encourages self-awareness in both the text and the reader. Ironic style introduces ambiguity and critical distance, allowing authors to question established norms and ideologies. Genre hybridity breaks down traditional literary boundaries, while intertextuality situates texts within a broader network of cultural and literary references. The works of Pynchon and Fowles exemplify how these principles operate in practice, demonstrating the postmodern tendency to resist fixed meanings and to present literature as an open-ended and dynamic process.

Ultimately, the postmodernist novel does not aim to offer definitive answers or coherent worldviews. Instead, it encourages readers to question assumptions, explore multiple interpretations, and engage critically with the text. Future research might productively extend this analysis to non-Anglophone postmodern traditions, examining how writers from other cultural contexts adapt and transform these narrative strategies in response to their own historical and literary conditions.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: N.M.; Methodology: N.M.; Investigation: N.M.; Writing – original draft: N.M.; Writing – review & editing: N.M.

References

Acheson, J. (1998). John Fowles. Macmillan.

Allen, G. (2000). Intertextuality. Routledge.

Bakhtin, M. M. (1981). The dialogic imagination: Four essays (C. Emerson & M. Holquist, Trans.). University of Texas Press.

Barthes, R. (1977). Image, music, text (S. Heath, Trans.). Hill and Wang.

Berressem, H. (1993). Pynchon's poetics: Interfacing theory and text. University of Illinois Press.

Cowart, D. (2011). Thomas Pynchon and the dark passages of history. University of Georgia Press.

Currie, M. (1995). Metafiction. Longman.

Fowles, J. (1969). The French lieutenant's woman. Jonathan Cape.

Hassan, I. (1982). The dismemberment of Orpheus: Toward a postmodern literature (2nd ed.). University of Wisconsin Press.

Hutcheon, L. (1988). A poetics of postmodernism: History, theory, fiction. Routledge.

Hutcheon, L. (1994). Irony's edge: The theory and politics of irony. Routledge.

Kristeva, J. (1980). Desire in language: A semiotic approach to literature and art (T. Gora, A. Jardine, & L. S. Roudiez, Trans.). Columbia University Press.

Loveday, S. (1985). The romances of John Fowles. Macmillan.

Lyotard, J.-F. (1984). The postmodern condition: A report on knowledge (G. Bennington & B. Massumi, Trans.). University of Minnesota Press. (Original work published 1979)

McHale, B. (1987). Postmodernist fiction. Routledge.

McHale, B. (2015). The Cambridge introduction to postmodernism. Cambridge University Press.

Nünning, A. (2004). On metanarrative: Towards a definition, a typology and an outline of the functions of metanarrative commentary. In J. Pier (Ed.), The dynamics of narrative form (pp. 11–57). De Gruyter.

Pynchon, T. (1963). V. J. B. Lippincott.

Pynchon, T. (1966). The crying of lot 49. J. B. Lippincott.

Pynchon, T. (1973). Gravity's rainbow. Viking Press.

Rose, M. A. (1993). Parody: Ancient, modern and post-modern. Cambridge University Press.

Seed, D. (1988). The fictional labyrinths of Thomas Pynchon. University of Iowa Press.

Tarbox, K. (1988). The art of John Fowles. University of Georgia Press.

Tew, P. (2007). The contemporary British novel (2nd ed.). Continuum.

Waugh, P. (1984). Metafiction: The theory and practice of self-conscious fiction. Methuen.

Woods, T. (1999). Beginning postmodernism. Manchester University Press.

Received: 15 February 2026
Accepted: 2 April 2026
Published: 6 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Foreign-Language Dental Terminology and the Development of Professional Communication Skills in Dental Students

[1] Khatira Mammadova, [2] Khadija Jamalova
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602004

Abstract. *The globalization of healthcare education has heightened the need for foreign language competence in specialized disciplines such as dentistry. For dental students, learning clinical terminology in a foreign language extends beyond accessing international textbooks; it is integrally connected to the development of professional communicative competence in multilingual academic and clinical contexts. This study investigates the relationship between foreign-language dental terminology acquisition and the development of professional communication skills among undergraduate dental students. Using a mixed-method design that incorporates a questionnaire survey and qualitative discourse analysis, the research examines how students perceive the relevance of foreign-language terminology to their academic progress, clinical confidence, and patient-centered communication. The findings indicate that familiarity with foreign-language dental terminology enables students to explain procedures more clearly, comprehend clinical materials more effectively, and communicate with greater confidence in simulated patient interactions. The study argues that foreign-language dental terminology should not be treated as a peripheral vocabulary component but as a pedagogical instrument central to professional identity formation in dental education.*

Keywords: *dental terminology, English for specific purposes, professional communication, communicative competence, dental education, patient-centered communication*

1. Introduction

In contemporary healthcare education, communication has become nearly as central as clinical competence. Future dentists must not only diagnose and treat oral conditions but must also explain findings, manage patient anxiety, negotiate treatment plans, and engage in professional discourse in an increasingly multilingual and multicultural environment (Street et al., 2009; Ho et al., 2025). Research on dentist-patient relationships has consistently identified communication and trust as primary determinants of care quality and patient satisfaction (Choi et al., 2024). It is within this

[1] Mammadova, K. English Teacher, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: khatiramammadova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0000-3739-032X

[2] Jamalova, K. First-year Dentistry Student, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: camalovaxdic5@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0006-6397-6598

broader context that foreign-language competence has gained strategic significance, particularly in areas touching on technical vocabulary, patient communication, and professional discourse.

Dental students encounter English-medium textbooks, international lectures, mobile learning applications, and online clinical demonstrations, meaning that foreign-language proficiency is no longer supplementary but integral to academic and professional training (Anthony, 2018; Otsuka et al., 2025). Historically, terminology instruction in professionally oriented language courses has relied heavily on memorization: students are expected to learn lists of anatomical terms, instrument names, procedures, and pathologies. While lexical knowledge is a prerequisite, this vocabulary-focused approach risks overlooking a more substantive pedagogical question: how does knowledge of specialized vocabulary shape the broader professional communicative competence of dental students?

English for Specific Purposes (ESP) scholarship has long argued that communicative purposes, not isolated vocabulary accumulation, should drive language teaching (Hutchinson & Waters, 1987; Anthony, 2018). Similarly, research on ESP vocabulary emphasizes that specialized lexis becomes meaningful only when it is embedded in context, usage, and discourse function (Coxhead, 2017). This concern is particularly acute in dental education, where students must constantly shift between registers: deploying technical vocabulary in textbook reading and case presentations, while simplifying explanations for patient interaction. From a discourse-analytic perspective, professional language is not a collection of words but a means of enacting role, identity, expertise, and relationship in practice (Gee, 2014; Imafuku et al., 2022).

Patient-centered communication adds further complexity. Research consistently demonstrates that clinician-patient communication influences health outcomes through enhanced understanding, increased trust, improved shared decision-making, and better emotional management (Street et al., 2009). In dentistry specifically, effective communication has been linked to reduced patient anxiety, improved treatment adherence, greater satisfaction, and reduced misunderstanding (Ho et al., 2025). Oral health literacy research further highlights that patients vary widely in their comprehension of health information, requiring practitioners to adapt their communication accordingly (Nurash et al., 2020; Lu et al., 2025; Yu et al., 2024). Ethical dimensions are equally significant: informed consent in dentistry requires not merely a signed document but a communicative process grounded in patient autonomy and genuine understanding (Kakar et al., 2014; Reid, 2017). Inclusive and person-centered language has also been identified as essential to equitable professional care (Haley & Doubleday, 2025).

Despite the growing relevance of these issues, relatively little research has directly examined the relationship between foreign-language dental terminology acquisition and the development of professional communication skills among dental students. Existing instruction often separates terminology learning from communicative practice, even though research suggests that dental students' empathy, attitudes toward communication skill learning, and patient-centered orientation are closely interconnected in the learning environment (Lee & Ihm, 2021; McKenzie, 2014). This study therefore investigates whether foreign-language dental terminology functions not merely as specialized vocabulary but as a foundation for the development of professional communication in dental students.

2. Theoretical Framework

This study is grounded in three intersecting theoretical traditions: English for Specific Purposes, discourse analysis, and patient-centered communication theory. ESP theory, as articulated by Hutchinson and Waters (1987) and extended by Anthony (2018), holds that language teaching should be organized around the communicative demands of specific professional or academic contexts rather than around general linguistic structures. Applied to dental education, this principle implies that terminology instruction should be embedded within the discursive practices of dental professionals rather than treated as a discrete vocabulary exercise.

Discourse analysis, particularly as developed by Gee (2014) and applied in medical education contexts by Imafuku et al. (2022), provides a framework for understanding how language functions as social action. In this view, professional communication is not merely the transmission of information but the enactment of identity, expertise, and relationship. For dental students, this means that acquiring foreign-language terminology is inseparable from learning to perform the role of a dental professional in interaction. Coxhead's (2017) work on specialized vocabulary further supports the view that lexical knowledge becomes meaningful only when learners understand how terms function within disciplinary discourse.

Patient-centered communication theory, as synthesized by Street et al. (2009), emphasizes that effective clinical communication requires not technical precision alone but adaptability, clarity, and shared understanding. This framework has been extended in the dental education literature by research demonstrating that communication competence, empathy, and patient-centered orientation develop interdependently in dental students (Lee & Ihm, 2021; McKenzie, 2014). Taken together, these three theoretical traditions suggest that foreign-language dental terminology should be conceptualized not as peripheral vocabulary knowledge but as a communicative and professional competence that requires integrated, context-sensitive instruction.

3. Methodology

This study employed a mixed-method design incorporating a questionnaire survey and qualitative discourse analysis. The mixed-method approach was selected because the research problem encompasses both quantifiable patterns in student perceptions and situation-dependent language use that requires qualitative interpretation. The questionnaire was designed to capture general trends in student attitudes toward terminology and communication, while discourse analysis enabled a more detailed examination of how specialized language was deployed in both verbal and written communication tasks.

The qualitative component was informed by discourse-analytic methodology, which conceptualizes language use as social action rather than a neutral system of words (Gee, 2014; Imafuku et al., 2022). This approach was particularly appropriate for the present study, which investigated not merely whether dental students could recall foreign-language terminology but whether they could deploy it in professionally appropriate and communicatively effective ways. Participants were undergraduate dental students enrolled in a professionally oriented English language course. All participants had prior exposure to core dental subjects in their degree program but reported limited confidence in English-medium academic and clinical communication. This participant profile is consistent with that used in prior dental education research investigating communication competence, empathy, and patient-centered attitudes (Lee & Ihm, 2021; McKenzie, 2014).

The questionnaire addressed perceived difficulty of dental terminology, perceived usefulness of foreign-language vocabulary, confidence in explaining procedures, participation in classroom discussion, and comfort in simulated patient interaction. Students also completed oral role-play tasks and short written explanation tasks designed to elicit authentic communicative performance. These task types reflect broader evidence in dental education research indicating that communication training is most effective when it combines practice-oriented and reflective strategies rather than relying on theoretical instruction alone (Nurash et al., 2020; Ho et al., 2025). Data from the questionnaire were analyzed descriptively to identify patterns across the group, while role-play and written task data were analyzed using discourse-analytic categories including register, audience orientation, and lexical precision.

4. Results

The findings indicated that the majority of students regarded foreign-language dental terminology as an essential component of their professional development. Students associated terminology knowledge with three primary benefits: access to international textbooks and digital resources, improved understanding of dental subject matter, and increased confidence in professional communication. These perceptions are consistent with ESP scholarship, which positions specialized vocabulary as central to disciplinary participation and professional literacy (Anthony, 2018; Coxhead, 2017).

At the same time, students did not describe terminology learning as straightforward. Many reported difficulty in retaining dental terms, particularly when multiple closely related clinical or anatomical concepts appeared together. Notably, however, this perceived difficulty did not diminish the perceived value of terminology; rather, students tended to interpret difficulty as evidence of professional significance. A clear pattern also emerged in relation to communicative confidence: students who reported greater familiarity with foreign-language dental terminology also tended to report greater confidence in explaining procedures, discussing clinical content, and participating in role-play scenarios. This pattern aligns with prior research demonstrating that positive attitudes toward communication skill learning are associated with more patient-centered professional orientation in dental students (Lee & Ihm, 2021).

The discourse analysis of oral role-play tasks revealed three distinct communicative patterns. In stronger performances, students used technical terms accurately and then reformulated them in simpler language for the listener, demonstrating both lexical control and audience awareness. This approach is consistent with patient-centered communication principles, which emphasize clarity, adaptation, and shared understanding over unmodified technical display (Street et al., 2009; Ho et al., 2025). In weaker performances, some students used specialized terms without adjusting them to the listener's level of comprehension; although their discourse sounded more technical, it was often less interactive and less communicatively effective. A third group avoided terminology almost entirely when uncertain, relying on vague substitutes that reduced professional precision. These contrasting patterns suggest that terminology knowledge is necessary but not sufficient: its educational value depends on whether students can integrate it into context-sensitive, audience-aware communication.

The written explanation tasks produced analogous findings. Students with stronger terminology command generally produced clearer, more structured explanations and were more likely to define specialized terms for non-specialist readers. The most effective written texts were not those containing the greatest number of technical terms but those that balanced accuracy with accessibility — a finding consistent with oral health literacy research emphasizing the importance of adapting communication to patient comprehension levels (Nurash et al., 2020; Lu et al., 2025; Yu et al., 2024).

5. Discussion

The results indicate that foreign-language dental terminology plays a meaningful and multidimensional role in the development of professional communication skills among dental students. More importantly, the findings suggest that terminology should not be conceptualized as an isolated vocabulary list detached from practice but as a communicative scaffold that helps students organize explanations, project professional identity, and navigate between disciplinary and patient-facing registers. This reframing is significant because it connects terminology instruction directly to professional identity formation: students in the present study consistently associated correct terminology use with sounding and feeling more like future dental professionals.

However, discourse analysis revealed that professionalism was expressed most effectively not when technical vocabulary was displayed for its own sake but when it was combined with clarity, tact, and audience awareness. This finding is supported by discourse-analytic theory, which treats language as a means of identity enactment, and by patient-centered communication research, which prioritizes shared understanding over technical density (Gee, 2014; Street et al., 2009). It also aligns with the broader ESP principle that language teaching should reflect the communicative realities of the target discipline rather than linguistic form alone (Hutchinson & Waters, 1987; Anthony, 2018).

The pedagogical implications are substantial. If dental terminology is taught exclusively through memorization or translation exercises, students may be able to recognize terms without developing the capacity to use them communicatively. Communication-oriented terminology instruction — integrating role-play, case-based discussion, register shifting, and written explanation tasks — is more likely to develop both lexical precision and communicative adaptability. This instructional approach is supported by dental education research demonstrating the effectiveness of practice-oriented and reflective communication training (McKenzie, 2014; Nurash et al., 2020; Ho et al., 2025). Harden and Crosby (2000) similarly argue that effective professional education requires the integration of declarative knowledge with the performative competencies needed in authentic practice settings.

The ethical dimensions of the findings are equally significant. In dental settings, practitioners must explain diagnoses, risks, and treatment procedures in ways that support valid informed consent. Overuse of terminology without explanation risks undermining patient comprehension; avoidance of terminology risks imprecision. Ethical dental communication therefore requires balance: sufficient technical precision to be accurate, and sufficient linguistic flexibility to remain accessible. This interpretation is consistent with informed consent literature and inclusive language research in dentistry (Kakar et al., 2014; Reid, 2017; Haley & Doubleday, 2025). Dudley-Evans and St John (1998) further emphasize that ESP instruction must develop not only receptive vocabulary knowledge but also the productive discourse competence needed to communicate effectively across professional contexts.

6. Conclusion

This study has demonstrated that foreign-language dental terminology exerts a significant and multidimensional influence on the professional communicative development of dental students. Its value extends beyond technical vocabulary acquisition to encompass communicative confidence, register flexibility, and the capacity for patient-centered explanation. Students who developed familiarity with foreign-language dental terminology were better equipped not only to access international academic resources but also to engage in classroom discourse, describe clinical procedures, and communicate appropriately in simulated dentist-patient interactions.

At the same time, the study makes clear that terminology knowledge alone is insufficient. Communication was most effective when students could integrate technical accuracy with clarity, audience awareness, and interactive sensitivity. Foreign-language dental terminology should therefore be understood not as an isolated lexical item but as a component of a broader communicative competence encompassing register control, pragmatic appropriateness, and ethical responsibility. The language of future dental professionals must include the capacity to move flexibly between specialist discourse and patient-accessible explanation.

The study confirms the pedagogical value of integrating terminology instruction with communication-based practice. Isolated word learning may produce awareness of professional language without producing readiness to use it in authentic interaction. A more effective pedagogical strategy bridges terminology instruction with role-play, case-based discussion, written explanation tasks, and patient-centered communication training, enabling students to develop linguistic competence and professional identity in tandem. Future research should examine these relationships across larger and more diverse samples, and investigate how different instructional approaches to ESP in dental education influence communicative development over time.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: K.M., K.J.; Methodology: K.M.; Investigation: K.M., K.J.; Data collection: K.J.; Writing – original draft: K.M., K.J.; Writing – review & editing: K.M.

References

Anthony, L. (2018). Introducing English for specific purposes. Routledge.

Choi, H., Kim, R. J.-Y., Park, S.-Y., Lee, J., & Song, Y. (2024). Determinants of dentist-patient relationships: A scoping review. International Dental Journal, 74(5), 1078–1088. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.identj.2024.02.015

Coxhead, A. (2017). Vocabulary and English for specific purposes research: Quantitative and qualitative perspectives. Routledge.

Dudley-Evans, T., & St John, M. J. (1998). Developments in English for specific purposes: A multi-disciplinary approach. Cambridge University Press.

Gee, J. P. (2014). An introduction to discourse analysis: Theory and method (4th ed.). Routledge.

Haley, C. M., & Doubleday, A. F. (2025). Inclusive language to support health equity and belonging in dentistry. Dental Clinics of North America, 69(1), 17–28. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cden.2024.08.001

Harden, R. M., & Crosby, J. (2000). AMEE guide no. 20: The good teacher is more than a lecturer — The twelve roles of the teacher. Medical Teacher, 22(4), 334–347. https://doi.org/10.1080/014215900409429

Ho, J. C. Y., Chai, H. H., Luo, B. W., Lo, E. C. M., Huang, M. Z., & Chu, C. H. (2025). An overview of dentist-patient communication in quality dental care. Dentistry Journal, 13(1), Article 31. https://doi.org/10.3390/dj13010031

Hutchinson, T., & Waters, A. (1987). English for specific purposes: A learning-centred approach. Cambridge University Press.

Imafuku, R., Kataoka, R., Ogura, H., Suzuki, H., & Saiki, T. (2022). Revisiting discourse analysis in medical education research. Medical Education, 56(4), 400–410.

Kakar, H., Gambhir, R. S., Singh, S., Kaur, A., & Nanda, T. (2014). Informed consent: Corner stone in ethical medical and dental practice. Journal of Family Medicine and Primary Care, 3(1), 68–71. https://doi.org/10.4103/2249-4863.130284

Lee, M., & Ihm, J. (2021). Empathy and attitude toward communication skill learning as a predictor of patient-centered attitude: A cross-sectional study of dental students in Korea. BMC Medical Education, 21, Article 225. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12909-021-02674-z

Lu, X., Nanjappa, S., Wijesiri, T. I. D., Mossey, P., & Yuan, S. (2025). The role of health literacy in adults' dental service utilisation: A scoping review. Community Dentistry and Oral Epidemiology. Advance online publication.

McKenzie, C. T. (2014). Dental student attitudes towards communication skills instruction and clinical application. Journal of Dental Education, 78(10), 1388–1396.

Nurash, P., Kasevayuth, K., & Intarakamhang, U. (2020). Learning programmes and teaching techniques to enhance oral health literacy or patient-centred communication for healthcare providers: A systematic review. European Journal of Dental Education, 24(1), 134–144. https://doi.org/10.1111/eje.12477

Otsuka, Y., Higashinakao, T., Nishio, F., & Kono, H. (2025). Design and implementation of a dental English learning application using Flutter. Cureus, 17(6), e86481.

Reid, K. I. (2017). Informed consent in dentistry. The Journal of Law, Medicine & Ethics, 45(1), 77–94.

Street, R. L., Jr., Makoul, G., Arora, N. K., & Epstein, R. M. (2009). How does communication heal? Pathways linking clinician-patient communication to health outcomes. Patient Education and Counseling, 74(3), 295–301. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pec.2008.11.015

Yu, S., Huang, S., Song, S., Lin, J., & Liu, F. (2024). Impact of oral health literacy on oral health behaviors and outcomes among older adults: A scoping review. BMC Geriatrics, 24, Article 858.

Received: 6 February 2026
Accepted: 2 April 2026
Published: 6 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

English Terminology and Its Impact on Information Technology Development

[1] **Rubaba Mammadova**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602005

Abstract. *The dominance of English terminology in Information Technology (IT) has significantly shaped the development, dissemination, and standardization of technological knowledge worldwide. As English functions as the global lingua franca of science, technology, and digital communication, the majority of programming languages, technical documentation, research publications, and professional interactions are conducted in English. This paper examines the role of English terminology in IT development from linguistic, educational, and professional perspectives. It explores how English-based terminology facilitates global collaboration, accelerates innovation, and promotes standardization, while also addressing the challenges faced by non-native English-speaking professionals and students. Drawing upon research in applied linguistics and globalization studies, the paper argues that proficiency in English terminology has become an essential component of professional competence in the IT sector. The study concludes that systematic integration of English terminology instruction into IT education is necessary to ensure equal access to knowledge and global competitiveness.*

Keywords: *English terminology, information technology, lingua franca, globalization, IT education, professional communication, technical discourse*

1. Introduction

The unprecedented growth of Information Technology (IT) over the last half-century has fundamentally transformed the structure of modern societies. Digital systems now underpin global finance, healthcare, education, governance, communication, and scientific research. While much scholarly attention has been devoted to technical advancement and economic impact, comparatively less focus has been placed on the linguistic dimension that enables such global technological integration. Among these linguistic factors, English terminology occupies a central and strategic position.

English has emerged as the dominant language of science, technology, and international communication. Crystal (2003) characterizes English as a global language due to its extensive use in political, economic, academic, and technological domains. Graddol (2006) argues that

[1] Mammadova, R. Senior Lecturer, Department of English and Methods, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: rubabamammadova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0001-5018-9265

globalization, combined with digital communication networks, has further reinforced the status of English as the primary medium of knowledge exchange. In the IT sector specifically, English is not merely a tool for communication; it is embedded within the structural foundations of computing systems themselves.

The historical development of computing technologies largely occurred in English-speaking contexts, particularly in the United States. Early programming languages, operating systems, and technical documentation were developed using English lexical structures. Consequently, fundamental programming keywords such as if, else, while, return, and class became standardized components of coding syntax. Over time, this linguistic pattern became globally institutionalized. As Swales (1990) explains, specialized professional communities develop shared discourse conventions that facilitate communication and knowledge production; in IT, English terminology constitutes the core of such a discourse community.

The integration of English terminology into IT extends beyond programming languages. Technical documentation, software manuals, cybersecurity protocols, international standards, and research publications are predominantly written in English. Major academic databases and peer-reviewed journals in computer science operate primarily in English, which shapes both the production and dissemination of knowledge. Tardy (2004) emphasizes that English proficiency significantly influences participation in global academic discourse, and researchers who lack advanced English skills may encounter barriers to publication, collaboration, and citation visibility.

Furthermore, English functions as the operational language of multinational technology corporations and international development teams. Neeley (2012) notes that many global companies adopt English as their official corporate language to enhance coordination and reduce communication inefficiencies across geographically dispersed offices. In the IT industry, where cross-border collaboration is common, a shared linguistic framework ensures clarity, speed, and precision in project management and innovation processes.

However, the dominance of English terminology also raises important sociolinguistic and ethical considerations. Phillipson (1992) introduces the concept of linguistic imperialism, suggesting that the global spread of English may create asymmetrical power relations and marginalize other languages. In the context of IT, reliance on English terminology may limit the development of localized technical vocabularies and restrict full participation for non-native English speakers. Linguistic barriers can influence educational outcomes, professional confidence, and career advancement opportunities. This paper therefore seeks to analyze the multifaceted role of English terminology in shaping IT development, exploring how it facilitates global standardization and professional integration while simultaneously addressing the educational and sociolinguistic challenges associated with its dominance.

2. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative and descriptive research approach aimed at analyzing the role of English terminology in the development of information technology. Primary and secondary data sources were utilized, including peer-reviewed academic articles, technical documents, and industry reports. A content analysis method was applied to identify the frequency, origin, and contextual usage of English terms in IT-related materials. Comparative analysis was conducted to examine differences between English terminology and its equivalents in other languages, and expert perspectives from IT professionals and applied linguists were incorporated to ensure interpretive reliability.

The study further draws on case studies from software development, cybersecurity, and digital communication to illustrate practical implications. This methodological framework allows for a comprehensive understanding of how English terminology facilitates knowledge transfer, standardization, and global collaboration in the rapidly evolving field of information technology. The qualitative orientation of the study is consistent with approaches in applied linguistics research that prioritize contextual depth and interpretive validity over statistical generalizability (Swales, 1990; Tardy, 2004).

3. Results

3.1 English as the Structural Foundation of Information Technology

The role of English in IT extends beyond functioning as a medium of communication; it is embedded in the structural and operational foundations of digital systems. The historical evolution of computing technologies in predominantly English-speaking countries significantly influenced the linguistic architecture of programming languages and system design. Early computational models, operating systems, and programming environments were developed in the United States and the United Kingdom, resulting in the institutionalization of English-based terminology in coding syntax and software engineering conventions.

Programming languages serve as a clear illustration of this phenomenon. Core syntactic elements — such as conditional statements (if, else), loops (for, while), and object-oriented constructs (class, object, method) — are based on English vocabulary. These lexical choices are not easily replaceable because they form part of standardized computational grammar. According to Swales (1990), discourse communities develop shared linguistic conventions to ensure precision and efficiency; in IT, English terminology functions as this shared linguistic code, enabling programmers worldwide to interpret, modify, and collaborate on software systems. Furthermore, command-line interfaces, system error messages, database query languages such as SQL, and configuration settings largely employ English terminology, reinforcing English as the operational backbone of digital infrastructure.

3.2 English Terminology and Global Knowledge Production

The production and dissemination of knowledge in IT are heavily mediated by English. The majority of high-impact journals in computer science publish exclusively in English, shaping both academic discourse and citation networks. Crystal (2003) argues that the dominance of English in scientific communication has created a global system in which knowledge flows primarily through one linguistic channel, accelerating international knowledge exchange by reducing translation barriers and establishing uniform technical standards and terminological consistency.

However, Tardy (2004) highlights that the centrality of English may disadvantage scholars who lack advanced proficiency. Writing research articles in a second language requires additional cognitive and editorial effort, which may limit publication output and reduce a country's or institution's competitiveness in rapidly evolving IT domains. In addition to academic publishing, digital learning environments — such as Massive Open Online Courses (MOOCs), coding tutorials, and professional certification programs — operate predominantly in English, further consolidating English terminology as the primary gateway to advanced technological knowledge.

4. Discussion

4.1 Professional Communication and Corporate Integration

In the global IT industry, professional communication relies extensively on English terminology. Multinational corporations often designate English as their internal corporate language to facilitate cross-border collaboration (Neeley, 2012). This practice enhances operational efficiency, particularly in software development projects involving distributed teams across continents. Agile development methodologies, project management frameworks, and technical documentation standards are largely articulated in English. Terminology such as sprint, scrum, deployment, debugging, and integration testing carries standardized meanings that transcend national contexts, minimizing ambiguity and enhancing productivity.

Nevertheless, linguistic asymmetry within corporate environments may generate inequalities. Employees with higher English proficiency may participate more actively in meetings, contribute more confidently to decision-making processes, and access leadership roles more readily. Neeley (2012) notes that the adoption of English as a corporate language can inadvertently create communication hierarchies. Organizations must therefore implement language support policies to ensure equitable participation alongside the efficiency gains that English-medium communication provides.

4.2 Educational Systems and Curriculum Development

The impact of English terminology on IT education is profound. In many non-English-speaking countries, technical courses incorporate English terminology directly into instruction rather than translating key concepts, aiming to align national education systems with global industry standards. From a pedagogical perspective, early exposure to English terminology provides students with direct access to international resources, research publications, and employment opportunities. Graduates equipped with English technical vocabulary are more competitive in global labor markets and better prepared for international collaboration.

However, the reliance on English terminology can present learning challenges. Students with limited English proficiency may struggle to grasp complex theoretical concepts when terminology is unfamiliar. Graddol (2006) suggests that unequal access to English education contributes to disparities in global knowledge economies. To address these issues, universities should adopt integrated educational models combining technical training with English for Specific Purposes (ESP), focusing on domain-specific vocabulary, technical writing skills, and oral communication competencies relevant to IT contexts. Such programs can reduce linguistic barriers without compromising global alignment (Hutchinson & Waters, 1987).

4.3 Sociolinguistic Perspectives and Linguistic Inequality

The global dominance of English terminology raises important sociolinguistic questions. Phillipson (1992) argues that the spread of English can reinforce structural inequalities by privileging certain linguistic groups over others. In the IT sector, this dynamic may manifest in publication access, professional recognition, and innovation visibility. Linguistic inequality can influence not only academic productivity but also professional identity: non-native English-speaking professionals may experience linguistic insecurity during international presentations, technical negotiations, or conference participation, with indirect effects on career trajectories (Crystal, 2003).

Moreover, the predominance of English terminology may hinder the development of localized technological discourse. While some countries attempt to create native-language equivalents for technical terms, global standardization often discourages widespread adoption. This tension reflects a broader conflict between globalization and linguistic diversity. Promoting multilingual documentation, translation initiatives, and inclusive communication strategies can help mitigate these disparities while preserving global interoperability.

4.4 English Terminology and Technological Innovation

Innovation in IT depends on rapid information exchange, interdisciplinary collaboration, and global networking. English terminology facilitates these processes by providing a standardized linguistic framework: shared vocabulary reduces misinterpretation and enhances efficiency in research and development environments. Crystal (2003) emphasizes that a common global language enhances cooperation in scientific and technological endeavors, and in open-source communities, contributors from diverse linguistic backgrounds collaborate through English-based documentation and discussion forums.

However, innovation also benefits from cognitive diversity. Encouraging multilingual participation can introduce alternative perspectives and culturally informed problem-solving approaches. While English terminology remains essential for global integration, fostering inclusive communication ecosystems can further strengthen innovation capacity. The challenge for the IT sector therefore lies in maintaining the efficiency gains of English standardization while creating structural conditions that allow non-native speakers to contribute fully to knowledge production and innovation.

5. Conclusion

The influence of English terminology on Information Technology development is comprehensive and multidimensional, operating at structural, educational, professional, and sociocultural levels. English terminology forms the linguistic foundation of programming languages, standardizes technical discourse, and enables global knowledge dissemination. Its widespread adoption has accelerated innovation, facilitated international collaboration, and strengthened interoperability across digital systems.

At the same time, linguistic dominance introduces educational challenges and sociolinguistic inequalities. Non-native English speakers may face barriers in academic publishing, corporate communication, and professional advancement. These challenges highlight the need for balanced strategies that promote both global standardization and linguistic inclusivity. Proficiency in English terminology has become a fundamental professional competence in the IT sector, and educational institutions, policymakers, and organizations must recognize the strategic importance of linguistic preparation in technological development.

By integrating systematic English terminology training and promoting multilingual support mechanisms, the global IT community can ensure more equitable participation in the digital future. Future research should examine the longitudinal effects of ESP-integrated IT curricula on student outcomes, investigate the role of machine translation and AI-assisted tools in reducing linguistic barriers, and analyze how emerging Global Englishes influence terminological standardization in different regional IT contexts.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: R.M.; Methodology: R.M.; Investigation: R.M.; Writing – original draft: R.M.; Writing – review & editing: R.M.

References

Alisoy, H. (2023). Digital dynamics: Transforming classrooms with ICT. Znanstvena Misel Journal, 34, 3–52.

Alisoy, H. (2025). Machine learning approaches for automated vocabulary acquisition in ESL classrooms. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(3), 97–118.

Aslanova, U. (2026). Methods of teaching German at the A1 level to students with heterogeneous proficiency levels in higher education institutions. Porta Universorum, 2(3), 43–56.

Babayev, J. (2022). Online versus offline learning. Znanstvena Misel Journal, 66, 24–25.

Babayev, J. (2025). Application of social platforms in language learning. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(3), 141–148.

Babayev, J., & Alaviyya, N. (2023). Translation procedures of culture-bound terms (CBTs). Journal of Science (Lyon), 48.

Babazade, Y. (2024). Transforming science education: The impact of active learning on student engagement and achievement. Excellencia: International Multi-disciplinary Journal of Education, 2(4), 506–514.

Babazade, Y. (2024). The impact of digital tools on vocabulary development in second language learning. Journal of Azerbaijan Language and Education Studies, 1(1), 35–41.

Crystal, D. (2003). English as a global language (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Graddol, D. (2006). English next. British Council.

Hutchinson, T., & Waters, A. (1987). English for specific purposes: A learning-centred approach. Cambridge University Press.

Ismayilli, T., & Nuri, A. (2025). Applications that can be used in mobile-assisted language education. Dibon Journal of Education, 1(2), 111–119.

Javid, B., & Sadikhova, S. (2025). Culturonyms in food and drink: How language reflects cultural identity through cuisine. In Proceedings of the 10th International Scientific Conference «Modern Scientific Technology» (pp. 346). Stockholm, Sweden.

Neeley, T. B. (2012). Global business speaks English. Harvard Business Review, 90(5), 116–124.

Phillipson, R. (1992). Linguistic imperialism. Oxford University Press.

Sadikhova, S., & Babayev, J. (2025). Challenges encountered in translation of culture-bound and subject-specific terminology while using Google Translate. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(3), 119–126.

Swales, J. M. (1990). Genre analysis: English in academic and research settings. Cambridge University Press.

Tardy, C. M. (2004). The role of English in scientific communication: Lingua franca or Tyrannosaurus rex? Journal of English for Academic Purposes, 3(3), 247–269. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jeap.2003.10.003

Received: 10 February 2026
Accepted: 6 April 2026
Published: 8 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

From Lyrics to Fluency: The Power of Songs in Language Study

[1] Javid Babayev
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602006

Abstract. *This article explores the effectiveness of songs as a pedagogical tool in second language acquisition (SLA), focusing on their impact on vocabulary development, pronunciation, listening skills, and learner motivation. The study combines a qualitative review of existing literature with classroom-based observations to examine how music enhances language learning. Findings indicate that songs facilitate vocabulary retention through repetition and melody, while also improving phonological awareness by exposing learners to natural rhythm, stress, and intonation patterns. Additionally, music creates an engaging and low-anxiety learning environment which increases learner participation and motivation. The study also highlights the cultural value of songs, as they provide authentic linguistic input and insights into the social and cultural contexts of the target language. However, challenges such as non-standard grammar and complex lyrical content require careful selection and guided instructional support. Overall, the results suggest that songs are an effective supplementary tool that can enrich traditional language teaching methods. By integrating emotional, cognitive, and cultural elements, music offers a holistic approach to language learning and supports the development of communicative competence and fluency.*

Keywords: *music-based learning, second language acquisition, vocabulary retention, pronunciation, learner motivation, songs in EFL*

1. Introduction

Language learning is a complex and multifaceted process that involves acquiring vocabulary, mastering grammatical structures, developing pronunciation, and understanding cultural context. Traditional teaching approaches have often emphasized rote memorization, explicit grammar instruction, and repetitive drills. While these methods can be effective to a degree, they may fail to fully engage learners or address the affective and cognitive dimensions of language acquisition. As a result, educators and researchers have increasingly explored alternative, more holistic approaches that integrate creativity, emotion, and authentic input into the learning process (Engh, 2013).

[1] Babayev, J. PhD in Philology, Senior Lecturer, Department of English Language and Teaching Methods, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Correspondence: cavidbabayev@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0009-2472-0006.

One such approach is the use of music and songs as pedagogical tools in second language acquisition. Songs combine linguistic content with melody, rhythm, and repetition — elements known to support memory and learning. Medina (1993) demonstrates that music can significantly enhance vocabulary acquisition by providing repeated exposure to words in a meaningful and engaging context. Similarly, Murphey (1992) argues that songs naturally encourage repetition without monotony, making them particularly effective for language learners. From a cognitive perspective, music activates multiple areas of the brain simultaneously, including those responsible for language, memory, and emotion. Research by Schön et al. (2008) demonstrates that songs can facilitate language learning by improving segmentation and recall of linguistic units, aligning with theories of multisensory learning which suggest that combining auditory, emotional, and rhythmic stimuli enhances retention and comprehension.

In addition to cognitive benefits, songs provide authentic language input that reflects real-world usage. Unlike textbook dialogues, song lyrics often include idiomatic expressions, colloquial language, and cultural references, helping learners develop pragmatic competence and cultural awareness. Music also plays a motivational role, increasing learner engagement and reducing anxiety — factors critical for successful language acquisition (Engh, 2013). The repetitive and rhythmic nature of songs further supports phonological development: learners can internalize patterns of stress, intonation, and pronunciation through listening and singing, mirroring aspects of first language acquisition where repetition and imitation play key roles (Paquette & Rieg, 2008).

Despite these advantages, the use of songs in language learning is not without challenges. Lyrics may contain non-standard grammar, poetic structures, or slang that can be difficult for learners to interpret, particularly at lower proficiency levels. Careful selection of songs and structured instructional support are therefore necessary to maximize their effectiveness. Given the growing body of research supporting music-based learning, this study aims to explore how songs contribute to language acquisition and whether they can serve as a meaningful pathway from basic comprehension to communicative fluency.

2. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative, exploratory design aimed at understanding the pedagogical value of songs in second language acquisition. Rather than conducting a single controlled experiment, the research integrates a structured literature review with classroom-based observations to provide a comprehensive perspective on music-assisted language learning. A qualitative synthesis approach was employed to analyze patterns and insights across existing studies, allowing for the identification of recurring themes — such as memory enhancement, pronunciation improvement, and learner motivation — without limiting the analysis to a single dataset. This approach is particularly suitable for educational research, where contextual and experiential factors play a significant role.

Academic sources were selected based on publication in peer-reviewed journals or academic books, relevance to music in language learning or SLA, inclusion of empirical findings or theoretical frameworks, and accessibility in English. Key studies included works by Murphey (1992), Medina (1993), Schön et al. (2008), Ludke, Ferreira, and Overy (2014), and Engh (2013), which collectively provide foundational insights into the cognitive, linguistic, and motivational effects of music on language learners.

To complement the literature review, informal classroom observations were conducted in language learning settings where instructors integrated songs into their teaching practices. Learners participated in music-based activities over several sessions including listening comprehension tasks with gap-fill exercises, lyric analysis focusing on vocabulary and grammatical structures, pronunciation practice through repetition and singing, translation and paraphrasing tasks, and group discussions on cultural and thematic elements. Songs were selected based on learners' proficiency levels, clarity of pronunciation, and relevance of vocabulary — simpler, repetitive songs for beginners and lyrically richer material for advanced learners. Data were collected through observational notes, learner feedback, and documented classroom interactions, analyzed using thematic analysis to identify recurring patterns and compare findings with existing literature.

3. Results

3.1 Vocabulary Acquisition and Long-Term Retention

One of the most prominent findings is the positive impact of songs on vocabulary learning. Learners exposed to musical input demonstrated improved recall of words and phrases compared to those using traditional study methods, an effect largely attributed to repetition and melodic structuring which reinforce memory pathways. Consistent with the findings of Medina (1993), learners were able to remember lexical items more effectively when they were embedded in songs rather than presented in isolation. Observational data further indicated that students often recalled entire phrases or lines from songs, suggesting that music supports chunk-based learning rather than isolated word memorization.

3.2 Pronunciation, Intonation, and Phonological Awareness

Songs were found to significantly enhance learners' pronunciation and listening skills. Through repeated exposure and imitation, learners developed a better sense of stress patterns, rhythm, and intonation in the target language. Singing along with songs encouraged learners to approximate native-like pronunciation in a low-pressure environment. Research by Schön et al. (2008) supports this finding, demonstrating that musical training can improve phonological processing and segmentation. In classroom observations, students who regularly engaged in singing activities showed noticeable improvement in their ability to distinguish sounds and reproduce them accurately.

3.3 Learner Motivation, Engagement, and Autonomy

Affective factors played a crucial role in the success of music-based learning. Learners consistently reported higher levels of enjoyment and engagement during lessons that incorporated songs, with increased motivation translating into greater participation and longer periods of focused attention. As highlighted by Engh (2013), music reduces anxiety and creates a more relaxed learning atmosphere conducive to language acquisition. Observations confirmed that even less confident students were more willing to participate in singing and group activities than in traditional speaking exercises. Songs also encouraged independent learning behaviors: many learners reported listening to target-language music outside the classroom, looking up lyrics, and attempting translations on their own, effectively transforming entertainment into a learning tool.

3.4 Listening Comprehension and Cultural Competence

Songs provided learners with exposure to authentic and continuous speech, improving their listening comprehension. Initially, learners reported difficulty understanding lyrics due to natural variations in speed and expression; however, with repeated listening and guided activities such as gap-fill exercises, comprehension improved significantly. Lyrics also reflected societal values, historical contexts, and everyday experiences of native speakers, through which learners gained insights into cultural nuances and idiomatic expressions. This aligns with Murphey (1992), who emphasized the cultural richness of songs as authentic language materials. Students demonstrated increased awareness of informal language use, humor, and metaphor — all essential for communicative competence.

4. Discussion

The findings of this study reinforce the growing consensus that music is a valuable and multifaceted tool in second language acquisition. By integrating songs into language instruction, educators can address not only linguistic development but also cognitive, emotional, and cultural dimensions of learning. From a cognitive perspective, the effectiveness of songs can be explained through principles of multisensory learning and memory encoding. Music combines auditory, rhythmic, and emotional stimuli, which together enhance the brain's ability to process and retain information. As demonstrated by Schön et al. (2008), melodic and rhythmic structures facilitate the segmentation and recall of linguistic units, supporting the view that language learning is not solely a rational process but also a sensory and emotional experience.

The role of affective factors — motivation, anxiety reduction, and emotional engagement — emerges as a critical component of music-based learning. Engh (2013) notes that music creates a low-stress environment that encourages participation and reduces the fear of making mistakes, which is particularly important in language classrooms where anxiety can hinder performance. The present findings confirm that learners are more willing to engage in singing and discussion activities, suggesting that music fosters a supportive and inclusive learning atmosphere. The emotional connection to music also strengthens memory encoding: learners who expressed personal affinity for certain songs were more likely to remember associated vocabulary, consistent with research by Ludke et al. (2014) on the role of singing in facilitating foreign language memory through emotional and auditory reinforcement.

Regarding pronunciation and phonological development, songs provide repeated exposure to natural speech patterns including stress, rhythm, and intonation. Through imitation and practice, learners can approximate native-like pronunciation in a way that feels less forced than traditional drills, consistent with Murphey's (1992) emphasis on unconscious language acquisition through repetition and mimicry. Cultural learning represents another domain of significant value: unlike textbook materials, song lyrics offer authentic language use including idiomatic expressions, humor, and cultural references that help learners develop pragmatic competence and deepen their understanding of the target language community (Medina, 1993).

Despite these advantages, the use of songs requires careful pedagogical planning. Lyrics may include slang, non-standard grammar, or metaphorical language that can confuse learners at lower proficiency levels. Instructors must therefore select songs that align with learners' abilities and instructional goals, and scaffolded activities — guided listening, vocabulary pre-teaching, and post-listening discussions — are essential to ensure effective processing. Future studies could employ experimental designs to measure the long-term impact of song-based instruction on fluency and consider individual differences such as musical preference, learning style, and prior exposure when evaluating this method's effectiveness.

5. Conclusion

This study has highlighted the significant role that songs can play in enhancing second language acquisition. By combining linguistic input with melody, rhythm, and emotional engagement, music creates a rich learning environment that supports vocabulary retention, pronunciation, listening comprehension, and cultural awareness. These benefits stem from the repetitive and memorable nature of music as well as its ability to engage learners on both cognitive and emotional levels. The integration of songs into language learning also fosters motivation and reduces anxiety, encouraging more active participation and promoting autonomous learning behaviors outside the classroom.

However, the use of songs as a pedagogical tool requires careful selection and thoughtful implementation. Educators must consider factors such as language complexity, clarity of pronunciation, and cultural relevance to ensure alignment with learners' proficiency levels and instructional goals. When used effectively and combined with structured activities, songs can complement traditional teaching methods and provide meaningful, authentic language exposure. Learning through music represents a holistic approach that bridges formal instruction and real-world communication, and while further empirical research is needed to establish its long-term impact on fluency, the evidence strongly supports the integration of music-based activities into language education as an effective, engaging, and accessible strategy.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: J.B.; Methodology: J.B.; Investigation: J.B.; Writing – original draft: J.B.; Writing – review & editing: J.B.

References

Alisoy, H. (2025). Integrating music into curriculum design: Strategies for enhancing student achievement and cognitive skills. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(4), 37–70.

Aslanova, U. (2026). Methods of teaching German at the A1 level to students with heterogeneous proficiency levels in higher education institutions. Porta Universorum, 2(3), 43–56.

Babayev, J. (2025). How music makes you fluent: Learning English through songs. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(4).

Babayev, J. (2026). Impact of movies in second language learning. Porta Universorum, 2(3), 36–42.

Babazade, Y. (2024). The impact of digital tools on vocabulary development in second language learning. Journal of Azerbaijan Language and Education Studies, 1(1), 35–41.

Engh, D. (2013). Why use music in English language learning? A survey of the literature. English Language Teaching, 6(2), 113–127. https://doi.org/10.5539/elt.v6n2p113

Ismayilli, T. M., Mammadova, K. M., & Asadova, A. A. (2025). The impact of educational games on speaking skills in the foreign language teaching process. Novitas-ROYAL (Research on Youth and Language), 19(1), 229–240.

Ludke, K. M., Ferreira, F., & Overy, K. (2014). Singing can facilitate foreign language learning. Memory & Cognition, 42(1), 41–52. https://doi.org/10.3758/s13421-013-0342-5

Mammadova, R. (2025). The active approach: Enhancing language skills through classroom engagement. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(1), 186–191.

Medina, S. L. (1993). The effect of music on second language vocabulary acquisition. FEES News, 6(3), 1–8.

Murphey, T. (1992). Music and song. Oxford University Press.

Nuri, A., Ismayil, Z., Babayeva, M., Guliyev, A., Rzayeva, F., Shiraliyeva, G., & Jahangirli, T. (2025). Artistic expressions as vehicles of cultural memory. Journal of Ethnic and Cultural Studies, 12(5), 258–275.

Paquette, K. R., & Rieg, S. A. (2008). Using music to support the literacy development of young English language learners. Early Childhood Education Journal, 36(3), 227–232. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10643-008-0277-9

Schön, D., Boyer, M., Moreno, S., Besson, M., Peretz, I., & Kolinsky, R. (2008). Songs as an aid for language acquisition. Cognition, 106(2), 975–983. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cognition.2007.03.005

Received: 05 March 2026
Accepted: 6 April 2026
Published: 8 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

The Impact of Mobile Apps on Incidental Vocabulary Acquisition in EFL Contexts

[1] **Bulbul Hajiyeva**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602007

Abstract. *The rapid proliferation of mobile applications has fundamentally reshaped the landscape of English as a Foreign Language (EFL) education, offering learners unprecedented opportunities to encounter and internalize vocabulary outside the formal classroom setting. This paper examines the impact of mobile apps on incidental vocabulary acquisition — the process by which learners absorb new lexical items as a by-product of meaning-focused activities rather than through deliberate study. Drawing on a synthesis of theoretical frameworks including the Input Hypothesis, Dual Coding Theory, the Involvement Load Hypothesis, and sociocultural perspectives, the study investigates how mobile platforms such as Duolingo, Quizlet, and content-based reading and listening applications create conditions conducive to incidental lexical learning. The paper reviews empirical evidence on the effectiveness of mobile-assisted language learning (MALL) in promoting vocabulary retention, contextual word recognition, and communicative competence. Key factors analyzed include frequency of exposure, multimodal input, spaced repetition, learner engagement, and the role of authentic language use. The findings suggest that well-designed mobile applications can significantly enhance incidental vocabulary acquisition by increasing the quantity and quality of meaningful language encounters. However, outcomes depend heavily on app design, learner motivation, and pedagogical integration. The paper concludes with practical recommendations for EFL educators and app developers seeking to optimize mobile learning environments for vocabulary development.*

Keywords: *mobile apps, incidental vocabulary acquisition, EFL, mobile-assisted language learning, lexical development, spaced repetition*

1. Introduction

Vocabulary knowledge is widely recognized as one of the most fundamental components of language proficiency. Without an adequate lexical base, learners are unable to comprehend authentic texts, engage in meaningful communication, or progress in their overall language development (Nation, 2001; Schmitt, 2000). Traditionally, vocabulary instruction in EFL contexts has relied on explicit, intentional approaches such as direct definition teaching, translation, and

[1] Bulbul Hajiyeva, Nakhchivan State University Hajiyeva, B. Nakhchivan State University. Email: bulbul_hajiyeva@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0001-6513-1920

rote memorization. While these methods have their place, they are often insufficient to build the breadth and depth of vocabulary required for fluent language use.

In recent years, the exponential growth of mobile technology has created new possibilities for language learning beyond the classroom. Smartphones and tablets equipped with language learning applications allow learners to engage with the target language at any time and in any place. This shift has intensified scholarly interest in mobile-assisted language learning (MALL) and its capacity to support vocabulary development through incidental means — that is, through meaning-focused activities rather than explicit study (Godwin-Jones, 2011; Kukulska-Hulme & Shield, 2008). Incidental vocabulary acquisition refers to the unintentional learning of new words as a by-product of engaging with language for communicative or informational purposes. Research has consistently shown that extensive reading, listening, and interaction with authentic input can lead to robust vocabulary gains over time, even in the absence of deliberate learning intent (Huckin & Coady, 1999; Krashen, 1989).

Mobile applications, by virtue of their capacity to deliver rich, contextual, and multimodal input, may be particularly well-suited to facilitating this type of incidental learning. Despite growing interest in the intersection of mobile technology and vocabulary learning, several questions remain underexplored: how exactly do mobile apps create conditions for incidental acquisition, which design features are most conducive to lexical retention, and how do learner motivation and engagement mediate the effects of app-based exposure. This paper seeks to address these questions by synthesizing existing theoretical and empirical literature on MALL and incidental vocabulary learning in EFL contexts, and by drawing practical implications for educators and application developers.

2. Theoretical Framework

2.1 Incidental Vocabulary Acquisition

Incidental vocabulary acquisition (IVA) is broadly defined as the learning of new words as a secondary outcome of activities primarily directed at comprehension or communication (Coady & Huckin, 1997). Unlike intentional vocabulary learning, which involves deliberate attention to lexical form and meaning, incidental learning occurs when learners encounter unfamiliar words in meaningful contexts and infer their meanings through contextual clues. Nation (2001) estimates that a substantial proportion of a learner's vocabulary is acquired incidentally through extensive exposure to the target language, particularly through reading. The quality of incidental acquisition depends on several variables, including the frequency of word encounters, the richness of contextual information, the learner's existing vocabulary knowledge, and the degree of cognitive engagement with the encountered words (Webb, 2007). Research suggests that a word must be encountered multiple times across varied contexts before it is reliably retained in long-term memory (Schmitt, 2000), underscoring the importance of creating conditions that maximize meaningful, repeated encounters with target vocabulary.

2.2 The Input Hypothesis and Output Hypothesis

Krashen's (1989) Input Hypothesis posits that language acquisition occurs when learners are exposed to comprehensible input — language slightly beyond their current level of competence but remaining meaningful. In this framework, vocabulary is acquired naturally as learners process input for meaning, without the need for explicit instruction. Mobile applications that provide learners with graded reading passages, audio content, and video materials may serve as ideal vehicles for delivering comprehensible input at scale and with high frequency. Swain's (1985) Output Hypothesis complements this view by arguing that producing language through speaking and writing also plays a crucial role in noticing gaps in lexical knowledge and consolidating newly acquired items. Apps that incorporate interactive tasks requiring learners to produce target vocabulary in meaningful contexts may thus support both acquisition and retention.

2.3 Dual Coding Theory and Multimodal Input

Paivio's (1986) Dual Coding Theory proposes that information is encoded and retained more effectively when it is processed through both verbal and visual channels simultaneously. Mobile applications are uniquely positioned to exploit this principle through the integration of text, images, audio, animations, and video. When learners encounter a new word accompanied by a visual representation or audio pronunciation, they form richer mental associations that enhance retention and retrieval (Baddeley, 1990). Apps such as Duolingo capitalize on this principle by presenting vocabulary in multimodal formats that engage multiple cognitive pathways.

2.4 The Involvement Load Hypothesis

Laufer and Hulstijn (2001) proposed the Involvement Load Hypothesis to explain differences in vocabulary retention across different task types. The hypothesis suggests that the depth of vocabulary learning is a function of the degree to which a task requires learners to attend to, search for, and evaluate the meaning of target words. Tasks that generate higher levels of cognitive involvement — such as using a word in a meaningful sentence or inferring its meaning from context — lead to deeper and more durable learning than passive exposure. Mobile apps that incorporate contextual inference tasks, fill-in-the-blank exercises, and communicative activities may generate higher involvement loads than simple matching or multiple-choice formats.

2.5 Sociocultural Perspectives and Scaffolded Learning

Vygotsky's (1978) sociocultural theory emphasizes the role of social interaction and scaffolded support in cognitive development. In the context of mobile vocabulary learning, scaffolding may take the form of contextual hints, glossary support, difficulty progression, and adaptive feedback. Apps that dynamically adjust to the learner's proficiency level and provide just-in-time assistance create a zone of proximal development that promotes deeper lexical processing and retention. Furthermore, collaborative features such as leaderboards and social challenges may harness peer motivation as a driver of sustained engagement.

3. Mobile Apps and Incidental Vocabulary Learning

3.1 Types of Mobile Applications

Mobile applications used in EFL vocabulary learning can be broadly categorized into three types. First, dedicated vocabulary apps such as Quizlet, Anki, and Memrise are specifically designed to support lexical development through flashcard-based review, spaced repetition algorithms, and gamified practice. While these apps often involve intentional study, their spaced repetition systems simulate the repeated, distributed encounters with words that characterize naturalistic incidental learning. Second, language learning platforms such as Duolingo and Babbel embed vocabulary practice within communicative and game-based tasks, creating conditions for incidental word learning alongside deliberate instruction. Third, content-based apps — including news aggregators, podcasts, e-book readers, and video streaming platforms — expose learners to authentic language in meaningful contexts, maximizing the potential for genuine incidental acquisition.

3.2 Spaced Repetition and Frequency of Exposure

One of the most well-established principles in vocabulary research is the importance of repeated encounters with target words across distributed time intervals (Webb, 2007). Spaced repetition systems (SRS), employed by apps such as Anki and Memrise, algorithmically schedule review sessions to optimize long-term retention by presenting words at increasing intervals as the learner demonstrates mastery. Research by Thornton and Houser (2005) and Lu (2008) has demonstrated that mobile-delivered spaced repetition is significantly more effective for vocabulary retention than massed practice, in part because the mobile format allows for frequent, short practice sessions distributed throughout the day. Importantly, even apps not explicitly designed around SRS can promote beneficial repetition by exposing learners to target words across multiple episodes of use, with multiple contextual encounters reinforcing the word's phonological, orthographic, and semantic dimensions (Nation, 2001).

3.3 Contextual and Authentic Language Input

A critical distinction in incidental vocabulary research is between decontextualized word exposure — as in isolated flashcard review — and contextualized encounters in which words are embedded within meaningful discourse. Research consistently shows that contextual exposure leads to deeper semantic processing and more durable retention, as learners must actively infer meaning from surrounding text and prior knowledge (Huckin & Coady, 1999; Peters, 2012). Mobile applications that provide learners with access to authentic reading and listening materials — newspaper articles, short stories, podcasts, and videos — create conditions closely analogous to naturalistic incidental acquisition. Chen and Li (2010) found that context-aware mobile vocabulary systems — which deliver vocabulary items relevant to the learner's current real-world context — resulted in significantly higher retention rates than context-free systems, highlighting the potential of situation-aware technologies to enhance incidental acquisition.

3.4 Gamification and Learner Engagement

Learner motivation and sustained engagement are critical mediating variables in incidental vocabulary acquisition. Mobile apps widely employ gamification — the integration of game-design elements such as points, badges, leaderboards, streaks, and progress bars — to sustain learner motivation and encourage regular use (Godwin-Jones, 2011). By making vocabulary practice intrinsically rewarding, gamified apps increase the total volume of language exposure learners accumulate over time, which is a key predictor of incidental acquisition outcomes. Stockwell (2010) found that learners who engaged with mobile vocabulary activities reported higher levels of motivation and more frequent voluntary practice compared to those using desktop-based platforms, attributing this to the convenience and accessibility of mobile devices. However, the author also cautioned that excessive focus on game mechanics can shift learner attention away from meaning and toward performance metrics, potentially reducing the depth of lexical processing.

4. Empirical Evidence on Mobile App-Mediated Vocabulary Acquisition

A growing body of empirical research has examined the effectiveness of mobile applications for vocabulary learning in EFL contexts. Başal et al. (2016) conducted a study comparing mobile app-based vocabulary instruction with traditional paper-based methods and found that learners in the mobile condition demonstrated significantly higher retention scores on both immediate and delayed post-tests, suggesting that the multimodal and interactive features of mobile apps confer distinct learning advantages. Lu (2008) investigated the use of SMS-based vocabulary delivery with Japanese university students and found that learners who received short vocabulary lessons via text message outperformed control groups on retention measures, attributing these gains to the portability of mobile devices and the distributed nature of the learning episodes.

Similarly, Thornton and Houser (2005) reported that EFL learners who studied vocabulary through mobile phone exercises in brief, frequent sessions demonstrated superior retention compared to those who studied the same material in longer, less frequent sessions. Stockwell (2010) compared the effects of mobile and computer-based vocabulary activities on learning outcomes and found no significant difference in gains between platforms, but noted that mobile users completed activities in a greater number of shorter sessions spread across a wider range of locations — a pattern consistent with the conditions known to support incidental acquisition. More recent research has examined app-specific features: Godwin-Jones (2011) reviewed evidence on vocabulary learning apps and concluded that tools incorporating spaced repetition, contextual sentences, audio pronunciation, and image association consistently outperformed simpler flashcard tools on delayed retention measures, underscoring the importance of pedagogically informed app design.

5. Challenges and Limitations

Despite the promising evidence reviewed above, mobile app-mediated vocabulary learning is not without significant challenges and limitations. One of the most frequently cited concerns is the shallow cognitive processing induced by many popular apps. Apps that rely primarily on recognition tasks — such as matching words to images or selecting correct translations from a multiple-choice menu — may generate insufficient involvement load to support deep lexical processing and durable retention (Laufer & Hulstijn, 2001). Learners may accumulate high point scores while retaining only surface-level knowledge of target words. A related concern is the tendency of many vocabulary apps to present words in isolation rather than in meaningful communicative contexts. While isolated practice may build form-meaning associations, it does not develop the collocational knowledge, pragmatic awareness, or productive command of vocabulary that characterize advanced linguistic competence (Schmitt, 2000).

Learner motivation and self-regulation present additional challenges. While gamification can effectively initiate engagement, research suggests that extrinsic motivators such as points and streaks may undermine intrinsic motivation over time, particularly when learners perceive the activities as repetitive or disconnected from their communicative goals (Oxford, 1990). Technical and access barriers also merit consideration: while smartphone penetration is increasing globally, disparities in device quality, internet connectivity, and digital literacy continue to limit equitable access to MALL resources. Furthermore, the fragmented attention characteristic of mobile use — frequent interruptions, multitasking, and brief session durations — may be inimical to the deep processing required for genuine lexical acquisition (Kukulska-Hulme & Shield, 2008).

6. Pedagogical Implications and Recommendations

6.1 For EFL Educators

EFL educators can play a pivotal role in maximizing the vocabulary learning potential of mobile apps by guiding learners toward tools that prioritize contextual, multimodal input and meaningful production tasks. Rather than treating mobile apps as autonomous learning systems, teachers should integrate them within a broader pedagogical framework that connects app-based practice to classroom instruction. Educators may encourage learners to keep vocabulary journals in which they record new words encountered through apps, along with contextual sentences and personal associations, thereby deepening the cognitive engagement required for durable retention (Nation, 2001). Teachers should also be mindful of the potential trade-offs between engagement and depth: while gamified apps can be valuable for building motivation and increasing exposure, they should be complemented with activities that require learners to use newly acquired vocabulary in productive, communicative tasks.

6.2 For App Developers

App developers seeking to optimize their tools for incidental vocabulary acquisition should prioritize several design principles grounded in the theoretical and empirical literature. First, apps should provide extensive, contextually rich input by incorporating authentic reading and listening materials at graded difficulty levels, embedding target vocabulary within meaningful narrative or informational contexts to promote deeper semantic processing (Huckin & Coady, 1999). Second, spaced repetition algorithms should be integrated to ensure that learners encounter target words at intervals optimized for long-term retention (Schmitt, 2000). Third, apps should incorporate multimodal presentation of vocabulary items, combining written form, audio pronunciation, visual imagery, and contextual sentences to engage multiple cognitive pathways (Paivio, 1986). Fourth, task design should aim to generate high involvement loads by requiring learners to infer word meanings from context and produce vocabulary in communicative exercises (Laufer & Hulstijn, 2001). Finally, adaptive feedback mechanisms should provide learners with meaningful information about their errors and progress, supporting self-regulation and sustained engagement.

6.3 For Learners

EFL learners can maximize the benefits of mobile vocabulary apps by adopting strategic and reflective approaches. Regular, distributed practice sessions — even of short duration — are more beneficial than infrequent, concentrated study (Thornton & Houser, 2005). Learners should actively seek out apps that expose them to authentic, contextualized language rather than relying solely on isolated word-list tools. Engaging with target language content — news articles, podcasts, social media — in addition to dedicated vocabulary apps creates the breadth of exposure required for robust incidental acquisition (Krashen, 1989). Learners should also approach errors as diagnostic information rather than indicators of failure, using them to guide further study and deepen their understanding of lexical usage.

7. Conclusion

This paper has examined the impact of mobile applications on incidental vocabulary acquisition in EFL contexts, drawing on a synthesis of theoretical frameworks and empirical evidence. The analysis reveals that mobile apps, when thoughtfully designed and strategically deployed, can significantly enhance the conditions for incidental lexical learning by increasing the frequency and quality of meaningful encounters with target vocabulary, delivering multimodal and contextually rich input, and sustaining learner motivation through interactive and gamified features. Theoretical perspectives including the Input Hypothesis, Dual Coding Theory, the Involvement Load Hypothesis, and sociocultural learning theory converge in highlighting the importance of meaningful, contextualized, and cognitively engaging vocabulary encounters — conditions that well-designed mobile applications are uniquely positioned to support.

At the same time, the paper has highlighted important limitations and challenges. Shallow cognitive processing, decontextualized word presentation, motivational attrition, and unequal access to technology remain significant obstacles to realizing the full potential of mobile apps for vocabulary development. Addressing these challenges requires coordinated effort from educators, who must integrate mobile tools within coherent pedagogical frameworks, and developers, who must ground their design decisions in the principles of effective vocabulary learning. Looking forward, the continued evolution of mobile technology — including advances in artificial intelligence, natural language processing, and augmented reality — promises to further expand the possibilities for mobile-assisted incidental vocabulary acquisition. Future research should investigate the long-term effects of app-mediated exposure on productive vocabulary knowledge, the differential effectiveness of specific app features across learner profiles, and the optimal integration of mobile learning within formal EFL curricula.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: B.H.; Methodology: B.H.; Investigation: B.H.; Writing – original draft: B.H.; Writing – review & editing: B.H.

References

Baddeley, A. D. (1990). Human memory: Theory and practice. Allyn & Bacon.

Başal, A., Yılmaz, S., Tanrıverdi, A., & Sari, L. (2016). The effectiveness of mobile applications in vocabulary teaching. Contemporary Educational Technology, 7(1), 47–59.

Chen, C.-M., & Li, Y.-L. (2010). Personalised context-aware ubiquitous learning system for supporting effective English vocabulary learning. Interactive Learning Environments, 18(4), 341–364. https://doi.org/10.1080/10494820802602329

Coady, J., & Huckin, T. (Eds.). (1997). Second language vocabulary acquisition: A rationale for pedagogy. Cambridge University Press.

Godwin-Jones, R. (2011). Emerging technologies: Mobile apps for language learning. Language Learning & Technology, 15(2), 2–11.

Huckin, T., & Coady, J. (1999). Incidental vocabulary acquisition in a second language: A review. Studies in Second Language Acquisition, 21(2), 181–193. https://doi.org/10.1017/S027226319900203X

Hulstijn, J. H. (2001). Intentional and incidental second-language vocabulary learning: A reappraisal of elaboration, rehearsal and automaticity. In P. Robinson (Ed.), Cognition and second language instruction (pp. 258–286). Cambridge University Press.

Krashen, S. D. (1989). We acquire vocabulary and spelling by reading: Additional evidence for the input hypothesis. The Modern Language Journal, 73(4), 440–464. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-4781.1989.tb05325.x

Kukulska-Hulme, A., & Shield, L. (2008). An overview of mobile assisted language learning: From content delivery to supported collaboration and interaction. ReCALL, 20(3), 271–289. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0958344008000335

Laufer, B., & Hulstijn, J. (2001). Incidental vocabulary acquisition in a second language: The construct of task-induced involvement. Applied Linguistics, 22(1), 1–26. https://doi.org/10.1093/applin/22.1.1

Lu, M. (2008). Effectiveness of vocabulary learning via mobile phone. Journal of Computer Assisted Learning, 24(6), 515–525. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2729.2008.00289.x

Nation, I. S. P. (2001). Learning vocabulary in another language. Cambridge University Press.

Oxford, R. L. (1990). Language learning strategies: What every teacher should know. Heinle & Heinle.

Paivio, A. (1986). Mental representations: A dual coding approach. Oxford University Press.

Peters, E. (2012). Learning German formulaic sequences: The effect of two attention-drawing techniques. Language Learning Journal, 40(1), 65–79. https://doi.org/10.1080/09571736.2012.658224

Pica, T. (1994). Research on negotiation: What does it reveal about second-language learning conditions, processes, and outcomes? Language Learning, 44(3), 493–527. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-1770.1994.tb01115.x

Schmitt, N. (2000). Vocabulary in language teaching. Cambridge University Press.

Stockwell, G. (2010). Using mobile phones for vocabulary activities: Examining the effect of the platform. Language Learning & Technology, 14(2), 95–110.

Swain, M. (1985). Communicative competence: Some roles of comprehensible input and comprehensible output in its development. In S. Gass & C. Madden (Eds.), Input in second language acquisition (pp. 235–253). Newbury House.

Thornton, P., & Houser, C. (2005). Using mobile phones in English education in Japan. Journal of Computer Assisted Learning, 21(3), 217–228. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2729.2005.00129.x

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Webb, S. (2007). The effects of repetition on vocabulary knowledge. Applied Linguistics, 28(1), 46–65. https://doi.org/10.1093/applin/aml048

Received: 1 March 2026
Accepted: 7 April 2026
Published: 8 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Beyond the Ideal of Childhood: Structural Inequality, Conflict, and the Lived Realities of Vulnerable Children

[1] **Afsana Orujlu,** [2] **Rabbiya Quliyeva**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602008

Abstract. *In societal, juridical, and cultural discourse, childhood is frequently defined as a protected phase of growth marked by safety, education, emotional support, and equitable developmental opportunities. Nevertheless, the lived circumstances of millions of children globally differ significantly from this idealistic notion. This article critically examines the structural variables that transform childhood from a time of protection into one characterized by vulnerability, exploitation, and premature responsibility. Drawing on empirical evidence and reports from global organizations including UNICEF, the International Labour Organization (ILO), and the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR), the study examines how poverty, systemic inequality, child labor, armed conflict, forced migration, and institutional failures negatively impact children's psychological welfare and developmental trajectories. The scope of the issue is illustrated by key statistics: approximately 417 million children worldwide live below the poverty line, over 1.4 billion lack access to adequate social protection systems, and around 160 million are engaged in child labor, often in hazardous conditions. The research also examines the detrimental effects of armed conflict and humanitarian crises, incorporating findings from developmental psychology and neuroscience to demonstrate how toxic stress and long-term trauma affect brain development and impair cognitive and emotional functioning. The study further analyzes institutional gaps in international child protection frameworks and concludes with policy recommendations for coordinated, multi-level interventions.*

Keywords: *child vulnerability, structural inequality, child labor, forced displacement, trauma, international human rights, child protection*

1. Introduction

Childhood is commonly regarded as a critical stage of human development in which individuals acquire the cognitive, emotional, and social skills required for adult life. In normative social, legal, and cultural discourse, childhood is associated with safety, education, care, and opportunity for play — conditions considered essential for healthy psychological development. International

[1] Orujlu, A. M. Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: afsanaoruclu@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-9137-2964

[2] Guliyeva, R. H. Student, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: rabiyaq2008@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0009-5366-5579

human rights frameworks, notably the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child (1989), affirm that every child has the right to survive, develop, be protected, and participate in a supportive and secure environment. According to developmental psychology and sociology, this is a vital phase in which family structures, educational opportunities, and social protection systems shape individuals' ongoing welfare and life chances.

The worldwide reality, however, stands in sharp contrast to this idealized image. For millions of vulnerable children throughout the world, childhood is not a sheltered developmental stage but a time of deprivation, suffering, and premature responsibility. Empirical evidence from global organizations underscores the magnitude of this disparity. According to UNICEF, approximately 417 million children worldwide live in extreme or moderate poverty, with inadequate access to nutrition, education, healthcare, and social protection. The International Labour Organization reports that around 160 million children are involved in child labor, with a substantial proportion working in hazardous conditions that endanger their physical and mental health (ILO, 2021). According to UNHCR data, children account for more than 40% of the world's forcibly displaced population, many of whom face violence, family separation, and prolonged instability.

These conditions cannot be viewed as isolated or transient phenomena; rather, they reflect deeply entrenched structural inequities that perpetuate cycles of poverty and social marginalization. When socioeconomic disparity, inadequate educational access, humanitarian crises, and weak governance intersect, they create environments in which children's developmental needs and fundamental rights are systematically neglected. The present study aims to critically examine the structural, social, and humanitarian factors that undermine child rights protection globally. It analyzes how poverty, child labor, armed conflict, forced displacement, and institutional failures interact to erode the protective framework ideally associated with childhood, and concludes with recommendations for comprehensive, multi-level policy interventions.

2. Structural Inequality and Child Poverty

Socioeconomic inequality is one of the most pervasive structural determinants of child vulnerability. Children growing up in poverty are systematically denied the developmental resources — stable housing, nutritious food, quality education, and healthcare — that are essential for healthy cognitive, emotional, and social development. A joint analysis by UNICEF and the ILO indicates that more than 1.4 billion children worldwide lack adequate social protection coverage, leaving them exposed to a range of social risks including malnutrition, educational exclusion, and exploitation (UNICEF, 2023).

Inequality should not be understood solely in financial terms. It operates as a complex phenomenon governed by structural factors that limit access to opportunities and social mobility. International organizations increasingly conceptualize child poverty as a form of structural violence — a condition in which institutional inequities systematically harm particular groups and impede their capacity to exercise their rights (Patterson, 2024). Children raised in deprived and socially isolated environments experience significant impacts on their psychological stability, self-esteem, and sense of security. Biological, social, and contextual factors interact to shape developmental outcomes, and children in poverty are frequently denied the family stability, community support, and access to public welfare systems that provide the foundations for healthy development.

The continuance of child poverty is strongly linked to the absence or inadequacy of social protection systems. Many low- and middle-income countries maintain welfare systems that reach only a fraction of their populations. Families without access to social security programs — income support, unemployment benefits, child welfare services — are more likely to depend on children's economic contributions for survival, reinforcing intergenerational cycles of poverty and educational exclusion (ILO, 2002). Addressing these inequities requires not only expanded access to healthcare and education but sustained structural reforms targeting the socioeconomic conditions that perpetuate deprivation.

3. Child Labor: Structural Causes and Developmental Consequences

The prevalence of child labor cannot be adequately explained by individual household decisions or family circumstances alone. It is deeply embedded in wider structural conditions that create systemic vulnerability for large portions of the global child population. Socioeconomic inequality, inadequate social protection, and restricted access to quality education combine to produce environments in which children's participation in labor markets occurs not as an isolated incident but as a structural consequence of persistent poverty and institutional failure (Burgan, 2012).

One of the most significant structural determinants of child labor is household poverty. Families facing economic hardship frequently rely on every available member, including children, to contribute to household income or subsistence. In such contexts, children may be regarded not only as dependents but as economic actors whose labor alleviates financial pressure. This dynamic reinforces intergenerational poverty, as children who enter the labor market prematurely are denied the educational opportunities that could improve their long-term socioeconomic prospects. Educational barriers compound these dynamics: the direct and indirect costs of schooling — tuition, materials, transportation, and foregone household income — place formal education beyond the reach of many children from low-income families (ILO, 2021).

Child labor carries severe developmental consequences. Children engaged in labor, particularly in agriculture, mining, domestic service, and informal urban sectors, are frequently exposed to physically demanding conditions, psychological stress, and social environments that are harmful to wellbeing. Participation in labor deprives children of access to education, play, and emotional support, resulting in restricted future prospects and reinforced patterns of social marginalization. Sustained poverty, limited educational access, weak welfare systems, and unregulated labor markets are the primary drivers of child labor; addressing the issue therefore requires comprehensive structural reforms rather than responses focused on individual families or communities (ILO, 2018).

4. Armed Conflict, Forced Displacement, and Psychological Trauma

Armed conflicts and humanitarian crises represent among the most severe structural risk factors for children globally. War fundamentally disrupts the social, political, and economic systems required for the protection and healthy development of children. Unlike stable social environments, conflict-affected regions expose children to persistent instability, violence, and fear, undermining the conventional understanding of childhood as a protected stage of development. According to UNHCR data, children account for more than 40% of the world's forcibly displaced population, with many having been directly or indirectly affected by armed conflict (FAO, 2023).

Forced displacement frequently results in the loss of homes, separation from family members, and extended exposure to precarious living conditions. These experiences profoundly affect children's sense of security and belonging — conditions that are critical for healthy physical and mental development. Armed conflicts also destroy social infrastructure including schools, healthcare facilities, and community services that normally provide stability and safety. Approximately half of refugee children remain out of formal education systems, owing to logistical barriers, language difficulties, and insufficient educational capacity in host communities. The absence of consistent educational opportunities not only interrupts academic development but impairs children's capacity for social integration and the construction of future life prospects (UNHCR & UNICEF data).

Empirical evidence confirms that children exposed to armed conflict face significantly elevated risks of developing mental health disorders. Studies conducted by UNICEF and the World Health Organization indicate that children in conflict zones exhibit higher rates of post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), depression, anxiety disorders, and difficulty with social reintegration. These psychological effects are frequently enduring and may influence individuals well into adulthood, shaping their social relationships, academic achievement, and economic prospects. The absence of structured psychosocial support in humanitarian settings exacerbates these outcomes, as children exposed to prolonged conflict may develop long-term emotional and behavioral challenges without adequate intervention (FAO, 2025).

5. Neurodevelopmental Effects of Toxic Stress and Trauma

Research in developmental neuroscience provides important evidence regarding the biological mechanisms through which early adversity affects child development. Persistent exposure to chronic stress activates the body's stress response systems, leading to elevated levels of cortisol and other stress hormones. When this activation is prolonged and occurs during sensitive periods of brain development, it can damage key neural structures including the prefrontal cortex, hippocampus, and amygdala — regions responsible for executive function, memory, and emotional regulation respectively (Gathia & Gathia, 2015).

Research from the Harvard University Center on the Developing Child has demonstrated that persistent stress during critical periods of early life impairs executive functioning, memory, emotional regulation, and decision-making capacity. These neurodevelopmental disruptions not only compromise children's present mental health but also reduce their capacity to navigate social, educational, and professional challenges later in life, illustrating the long-term consequences of early traumatic experience. Children who experience premature maturity — forced into adult roles by structural violence, prolonged poverty, armed conflict, or forced displacement — frequently develop survival strategies at the cost of their own psychological development, placing significant burdens on their personal resources and reinforcing pre-existing trauma.

Empirical research consistently shows that children raised in these environments are substantially more likely to display symptoms of depression, anxiety, PTSD, and social maladjustment. These challenges impede the capacity to form healthy relationships, participate fully in academic settings, and engage in age-appropriate social activities. The cumulative consequences of toxic stress and premature maturity extend beyond individual developmental outcomes, contributing to wider patterns of intergenerational disadvantage, reduced social mobility, and the perpetuation of poverty cycles.

6. Institutional Failures and International Child Protection Frameworks

Over recent decades, various international legal instruments have been established with the stated aim of protecting children's rights globally. The United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child (CRC), as the most widely ratified international agreement, establishes normative standards for children's protection, development, and welfare. In principle, these frameworks provide a solid foundation for universal child protection. However, practical realities reveal a persistent gap between normative commitments and effective implementation — a fundamental institutional weakness in global child protection systems in which children's rights are formally recognized but inadequately protected in practice.

A primary contributor to this failure is the inconsistent political and institutional commitment of states to implementing international standards. While most governments have ratified the CRC, ratification does not ensure effective compliance. Many states lack the financial, administrative, or technical resources to incorporate international obligations into domestic legal systems. In countries affected by armed conflict, persistent poverty, or humanitarian crises, child protection is frequently deprioritized in favor of immediate political or security concerns. The UN Committee on the Rights of the Child has repeatedly noted that selective implementation of international standards creates an environment in which systematic violations of children's rights occur with limited accountability (ILO, 2018).

A further institutional limitation is the weak enforcement capacity of international organizations, many of which function primarily as advisory or supervisory bodies with limited authority to impose sanctions or enforce compliance. As a result, even when violations are documented, corrective action is frequently delayed or absent. Strengthening child protection therefore requires not only the existence of legal frameworks but coordinated institutional capacity, transparent accountability mechanisms, and genuine political will at local, national, and international levels. Comprehensive child protection must combine legal enforcement with social, economic, and psychosocial interventions, ensuring that children have substantive access to safety, education, healthcare, and developmental opportunities rather than merely formal recognition as rights holders.

7. Conclusion

Childhood, ideally marked by protection, care, education, and play, represents a critical stage of human development. The empirical evidence reviewed in this article demonstrates, however, that for millions of children worldwide, this ideal remains inaccessible. Research from developmental psychology, neuroscience, and social science underscores the substantial and lasting consequences of early exposure to toxic stress, neglect, and premature maturity. Children growing up amid adversity face elevated risks of cognitive, emotional, and social deficits that affect not only their present quality of life but their future capacity for social participation and economic mobility.

Institutional inadequacies compound these structural vulnerabilities. Despite the existence of international frameworks such as the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child, legislative gaps, uneven state implementation, and weak oversight mechanisms leave many children without effective protection. Structural violence — manifested as poverty, armed conflict, and forced displacement — interacts with these institutional failures to deepen vulnerability and impede holistic child rights protection. This analysis underscores the critical need for comprehensive strategies combining legal enforcement, social policy reform, and humanitarian intervention. Sustainable approaches must address the structural roots of vulnerability — socioeconomic inequality, armed conflict, and systemic discrimination — while simultaneously strengthening caregiver and institutional capacity to ensure safe, nurturing, and developmentally supportive environments. Only through such coordinated, multi-level efforts can the international community move from symbolic commitment toward ensuring that all children experience childhood as a period of growth, safety, and psychological flourishing.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: A.O., R.G.; Methodology: A.O.; Investigation: A.O., R.G.; Writing – original draft: A.O., R.G.; Writing – review & editing: A.O.

References

Burgan, M. (2012). Breaker boys: How a photograph helped end child labor. Compass Point Books.

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2023). The relations between climate change and child labour in agriculture: Evidence on children's work trends after climate-related events in Côte d'Ivoire, Ethiopia, Nepal and Peru. FAO.

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. (2025). The status of youth in agrifood systems. FAO.

Gathia, J. A., & Gathia, S. V. (2015). Children rights and wellbeing in India: Law, policy and practice (Vol. 3). Concept Publishing Company.

International Labour Organization. (2002). A future without child labour: Global report under the follow-up to the ILO Declaration on Fundamental Principles and Rights at Work. ILO.

International Labour Organization. (2002). Every child counts: New global estimates on child labour. ILO International Programme on the Elimination of Child Labour.

International Labour Organization. (2018). Ending child labour by 2025: A review of policies and programmes. ILO.

International Labour Organization & UNICEF. (2021). Child labour: Global estimates 2020, trends and the road forward. UNICEF.

Patterson, O. (2024). Enslavement: Past and present. Polity Press.

UNICEF. (2023). The state of the world's children: For every child, vaccination. UNICEF.

United Nations. (1989). Convention on the Rights of the Child. United Nations Treaty Series, 1577, 3.

Received: 15 February 2026
Accepted: 7 April 2026
Published: 8 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Naming Culture: The Linguistic Power of Culturonyms

[1] **Seyyare Sadikhova**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602009

Abstract. *Culturonyms are culturally bound lexical units that encode specific meanings, values, and worldviews unique to particular speech communities. This study examines the linguistic power of culturonyms through a qualitative, comparative analysis grounded in cultural linguistics and translation studies. Drawing on examples from multiple languages, the research explores how culturonyms function as carriers of cultural knowledge, their resistance to direct translation, and their role in intercultural communication. The findings reveal that culturonyms possess high semantic density and are deeply embedded in cultural contexts, making them difficult to translate without loss of meaning. Translators often employ strategies such as borrowing, paraphrasing, and explicitation to convey their significance. Additionally, culturonyms serve as markers of cultural identity and play a dual role in communication, acting both as bridges that introduce new cultural perspectives and as barriers when cultural knowledge is lacking. In a globalized world, the increasing circulation of culturonyms contributes to linguistic hybridity and cultural exchange, while also raising concerns about the preservation of original meanings. The study highlights the importance of integrating cultural competence into linguistic and translational practices. Overall, culturonyms are shown to be essential for understanding the dynamic relationship between language, culture, and communication.*

Keywords: *culturonyms, cultural linguistics, translation studies, intercultural communication, semantic density, cultural identity, linguistic borrowing*

1. Introduction

Language and culture are fundamentally interconnected, with linguistic systems functioning not only as tools for communication but also as repositories of cultural knowledge and social meaning. Within this dynamic relationship, culturonyms — lexical items that denote culturally specific concepts, practices, or artifacts — occupy a central role. These terms encapsulate shared experiences, values, and worldviews that are deeply embedded in particular cultural contexts, often defying direct translation into other languages (Wierzbicka, 1997). As such, culturonyms provide valuable insight into how communities conceptualize reality and encode culturally salient knowledge in language.

[1] Sadikhova, S. Doctor of Philosophy in Art Criticism, Senior Lecturer, Department of Visual Arts, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: seyyaresadixova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-5591-4285

From the perspective of cultural linguistics, language is not merely reflective of culture but constitutive of it, shaping cognition, perception, and social interaction (Sharifian, 2017). In this sense, culturonyms act as cultural schemas — linguistic markers that trigger complex networks of meaning, including beliefs, norms, and emotional associations. Terms such as hygge in Danish or ubuntu in many African languages are not simply lexical units but condensed representations of cultural philosophies emphasizing well-being, social harmony, and communal identity. This aligns with the view that vocabulary can function as a key to understanding cultural conceptualizations, as highlighted in ethnolinguistic research (Wierzbicka, 1997).

The semantic richness of culturonyms raises important questions within translation studies. Traditional models of translation, which prioritize formal or semantic equivalence, often prove inadequate when dealing with culturally bound terms. Nida (1964) introduced the concept of dynamic equivalence to address this issue, emphasizing the importance of conveying meaning in a culturally and functionally appropriate way for the target audience. However, even dynamic equivalence has limitations when the source concept lacks an analogous cultural framework in the target language. As Baker (2018) notes, translators frequently resort to borrowing, paraphrasing, or explanatory notes to bridge these gaps. Newmark (1988) distinguishes between semantic and communicative translation, highlighting the need to balance fidelity to the source text with accessibility for the target audience.

Culturonyms also play a crucial role in intercultural communication. While they can enrich communication by introducing new perspectives and concepts, they can also create misunderstandings when interlocutors lack the necessary cultural knowledge to interpret them accurately (Katan, 2014). This dual function underscores the importance of cultural competence — the ability to understand, interpret, and appropriately respond to culturally specific meanings. Furthermore, the circulation of culturonyms across languages reflects broader processes of cultural exchange and globalization. Borrowed terms often retain their original cultural connotations while acquiring new meanings in the target language, contributing to linguistic hybridity and cultural diffusion (House, 2015). This article investigates the linguistic power of culturonyms by examining how they encode and transmit cultural knowledge, what challenges they present in translation, and how they function in intercultural communication.

2. Methodology

2.1 Research Design

This study adopts a qualitative, descriptive, and comparative research design grounded in cultural linguistics and translation studies. The qualitative approach is appropriate given the study's focus on meaning, interpretation, and cultural context rather than quantifiable variables (Creswell, 2014). A comparative framework was employed to examine how culturonyms function across different linguistic and cultural systems, allowing for the identification of patterns, similarities, and divergences in their usage and translation.

2.2 Data Selection and Analytical Framework

The dataset consists of a purposive sample of 20–30 culturonyms drawn from multiple languages including English, Danish, Japanese, and selected African languages (Zulu and Xhosa), chosen to represent diverse cultural and linguistic traditions. Primary sources included monolingual and bilingual dictionaries, literary texts and essays containing culturally specific expressions, and previously published studies in cultural linguistics and translation studies. Selection criteria required that each term represent a culturally specific concept, lack a direct lexical equivalent in English, and demonstrate relevance in authentic communicative or textual contexts.

The analysis was conducted using a three-tier framework combining semantic, cultural, and translational perspectives. Each culturonym was examined for its denotative and connotative meanings, including semantic components, metaphorical extensions, and pragmatic usage, drawing on Wierzbicka's (1997) concepts of semantic primes and cultural scripts. Cultural contextualization analyzed each term within its socio-cultural context, considering historical background, social practices, and value systems (Sharifian, 2017). Translation strategy analysis then categorized how culturonyms are rendered in English, using frameworks proposed by Baker (2018) and Newmark (1988), covering borrowing, paraphrase, cultural substitution, and use of footnotes or glosses. To enhance analytical rigor, examples were triangulated across multiple sources where possible.

3. Results

3.1 High Semantic Density and Cultural Encoding

One of the most prominent findings is the high degree of semantic density exhibited by culturonyms. Unlike general lexical items, culturonyms encapsulate multilayered meanings that integrate emotional, social, and philosophical dimensions. Terms such as ubuntu or wabi-sabi encode not only descriptive meanings but also culturally specific value systems and worldviews. This supports Wierzbicka's (1997) argument that certain keywords function as cultural scripts, representing shared cognitive and social frameworks within a speech community. The semantic richness of culturonyms often derives from their historical and cultural embeddedness — many are deeply rooted in traditions, rituals, or collective experiences, making their meanings difficult to isolate from their cultural context (Sharifian, 2017).

3.2 Resistance to Direct Translation

The data strongly confirm that culturonyms generally resist direct, one-to-one translation. In most cases, no single lexical equivalent exists in the target language, particularly when translating into English, aligning with Nida's (1964) observation that linguistic equivalence is often unattainable when cultural frameworks differ significantly. Borrowing was frequently observed, especially for widely recognized culturonyms such as hygge, which is increasingly used in English discourse without translation. Paraphrasing and descriptive translation were also common, particularly in academic or explanatory texts where clarity is prioritized over brevity (Baker, 2018). Newmark's (1988) distinction between semantic and communicative translation is particularly relevant: semantic translation preserves the original term and its cultural nuances, while communicative translation prioritizes accessibility, often at the cost of cultural specificity.

3.3 Variation in Translation Strategies Across Contexts

The choice of translation strategy varies significantly depending on textual genre, audience, and purpose. In literary texts, culturonyms are more likely to be retained in their original form — sometimes with minimal explanation — in order to preserve cultural authenticity and stylistic nuance. In academic or pedagogical contexts, explicitation strategies such as glosses or footnotes are more commonly employed to ensure comprehension (House, 2015). In media and popular discourse, certain culturonyms undergo lexical borrowing and integration into the target language, a process through which borrowed terms may lose some of their original cultural specificity or acquire new connotations — what House (2015) describes as cultural filtering.

3.4 Culturonyms as Markers of Cultural Identity

A further key finding is the role of culturonyms as markers of cultural identity. Their use often signals membership within a particular cultural or linguistic community, reinforcing shared knowledge and values. This is particularly evident in diaspora contexts, where maintaining culturally specific vocabulary serves as a means of preserving cultural heritage and identity (Katan, 2014). Speakers may intentionally retain culturonyms even when communicating in a different language as a way of asserting cultural distinctiveness, highlighting the symbolic power of language and its close ties to identity construction and social positioning (Javid & Sadikhova, 2025).

3.5 Dual Role in Intercultural Communication and Hybrid Meanings

Culturonyms were found to play a dual role in intercultural communication, functioning both as facilitators and barriers. They enrich communication by introducing new concepts and expanding the expressive capacity of the target language, while simultaneously hindering understanding when interlocutors lack the cultural background necessary for accurate interpretation (Katan, 2014). The study also identified a trend toward hybrid meanings as culturonyms circulate globally: when borrowed into another language, they may undergo semantic shift, retaining core meanings while developing additional, context-specific interpretations. This process illustrates the dynamic nature of language in a globalized world and demonstrates that cultural exchange leads to both linguistic innovation and the potential dilution of cultural specificity (House, 2015).

4. Discussion

4.1 Culturonyms as Cultural-Cognitive Constructs

The observed semantic density of culturonyms supports the view that language encodes culturally shared conceptualizations rather than merely labeling objective reality. In line with Wierzbicka's (1997) theory of cultural keywords and Sharifian's (2017) framework of cultural conceptualizations, culturonyms can be understood as nodes within a network of cultural meaning that activate culturally specific schemas guiding interpretation, behavior, and social interaction. This perspective challenges purely structural or formal approaches to language, emphasizing the need for culturally informed linguistic analysis. The inability to fully translate culturonyms without loss of meaning highlights the limitations of universalist assumptions about language, reinforcing the argument that linguistic competence must be accompanied by cultural competence.

4.2 Implications for Translation Theory and Practice

The resistance of culturonyms to direct translation has important implications for translation theory. Traditional equivalence-based models — whether formal, semantic, or dynamic — are insufficient to account for the full complexity of culturally bound terms. While Nida's (1964) dynamic equivalence offers a more flexible approach, the findings suggest it may fall short when the target culture lacks comparable conceptual structures. Translation must therefore be viewed as an interpretive and creative process rather than a purely technical one. As Baker (2018) and Newmark (1988) suggest, translators must make strategic decisions that balance fidelity to the source text with communicative needs of the target audience, acting as cultural mediators rather than mere linguistic converters (Babayev & Alaviyya, 2023).

4.3 Intercultural Communication and Globalization

The dual role of culturonyms in intercultural communication emphasizes the need for heightened cultural awareness. As global interactions increase, the ability to recognize and interpret culturally specific language becomes increasingly important: misunderstanding or oversimplifying culturonyms can lead to miscommunication, cultural misrepresentation, or stereotyping. Katan (2014) argues that intercultural communication involves navigating different systems of meaning, and the findings of this study support this view, with practical implications for education, diplomacy, and international business. The emergence of hybrid meanings also highlights the dynamic nature of language in a globalized world: while linguistic borrowing facilitates cross-cultural exchange, it simultaneously raises concerns about the preservation of original meanings and cultural integrity (House, 2015; Sadikhova & Babayev, 2025).

4.4 Future Directions

Building on these findings, future research could explore culturonyms in digital communication, where rapid cultural exchange and informal language use may accelerate processes of borrowing and semantic change. Another productive direction is the role of culturonyms in language learning

— particularly how learners acquire and interpret culturally specific meanings. In the context of machine translation and artificial intelligence, understanding culturonyms presents both a challenge and an opportunity, as current systems often struggle with culturally bound language. Integrating insights from cultural linguistics into technological development could enhance the accuracy and cultural sensitivity of language processing tools. Expanding the dataset to include corpus-based or experimental methods would provide broader generalizations about how culturonyms are processed across different audiences.

5. Conclusion

Culturonyms represent a vital intersection between language and culture, functioning as compact yet powerful carriers of culturally embedded knowledge, values, and social meanings. This study has demonstrated that these linguistically bound elements are characterized by high semantic density, resistance to direct translation, and strong ties to cultural identity. Through qualitative and comparative analysis, it has become evident that culturonyms operate not merely as lexical units but as cultural-cognitive constructs that shape how individuals interpret and communicate experience.

The findings highlight the challenges culturonyms pose for translation and intercultural communication. Their lack of direct equivalents necessitates flexible and context-sensitive translation strategies, reinforcing the importance of cultural competence alongside linguistic proficiency. At the same time, culturonyms contribute to enriching global discourse by introducing new perspectives and fostering cross-cultural understanding. In the context of globalization, the increasing circulation of culturonyms reflects ongoing processes of linguistic borrowing and cultural exchange, often leading to hybrid meanings. Recognizing the linguistic power of culturonyms is therefore essential for advancing both theoretical inquiry and practical engagement in multilingual and multicultural settings.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: S.S.; Methodology: S.S.; Investigation: S.S.; Writing – original draft: S.S.; Writing – review & editing: S.S.

References

Aslanova, U. (2025). Social and cultural factors in the formation of individual style in the German language. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(5), 132–143.

Babayev, J. S., Sadikhova, S. N., Baghirova, M. A., Seidova, E. R., & Mammadova, A. A. (2025). A lexical-stylistic and cross-cultural analysis of vulgarisms and their usage spheres. Universidad y Sociedad, 17(6), e5525.

Babayev, J., & Alaviyya, N. (2023). Translation procedures of culture-bound terms (CBTs). Journal of Science (Lyon), 48.

Baker, M. (2018). In other words: A coursebook on translation (3rd ed.). Routledge.

Creswell, J. W. (2014). Research design: Qualitative, quantitative, and mixed methods approaches (4th ed.). SAGE Publications.

House, J. (2015). Translation quality assessment: Past and present. Routledge.

Javid, B., & Sadikhova, S. (2025). Culturonyms in food and drink: How language reflects cultural identity through cuisine. In Proceedings of the 10th International Scientific Conference «Modern Scientific Technology» (p. 346). Stockholm, Sweden.

Katan, D. (2014). Translating cultures: An introduction for translators, interpreters and mediators (2nd ed.). Routledge.

Newmark, P. (1988). A textbook of translation. Prentice Hall.

Nida, E. A. (1964). Toward a science of translating. Brill.

Nuri, A., Ismayil, Z., Babayeva, M., Guliyev, A., Rzayeva, F., Shiraliyeva, G., & Jahangirli, T. (2025). Artistic expressions as vehicles of cultural memory. Journal of Ethnic and Cultural Studies, 12(5), 258–275.

Sadikhova, S. (2025). Culturonyms in fashion discourse: A linguistic and cultural perspective. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(4), 319–331.

Sadikhova, S., & Babayev, J. (2025). Linguistic analysis of art terms in English. Porta Universorum, 1(3), 214–223.

Seidova, E. (2025). Challenges in the translation of religious culturonyms. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(5), 40–50.

Seidova, E. (2025). Lexical-semantic features of musical culturonyms. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(4), 357–370.

Sharifian, F. (2017). Cultural linguistics. John Benjamins Publishing Company.

Wierzbicka, A. (1997). Understanding cultures through their key words. Oxford University Press.

Received: 20 February 2026
Accepted: 8 April 2026
Published: 11 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Phonetic and Lexical Characteristics of Australian English

[1] Goychek Aliyeva
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602010

Abstract. *Australian English (AusE) represents a distinctive variety of English with unique phonetic and lexical characteristics shaped by historical, social, and cultural factors. This study examines key phonetic features, including vowel shifts, non-rhoticity, intervocalic flapping, glottalization, and rising terminal intonation, as well as lexical characteristics such as diminutives, slang, and semantic shifts. Data were collected from the Australian National Corpus, ICE-AUS, audio recordings of spontaneous speech, and online surveys capturing regional and generational variation. Acoustic analysis and corpus-based frequency counts were employed to identify patterns, while sociolinguistic observation provided insight into usage contexts and social functions. Results demonstrate that Australian English exhibits dynamic phonetic variation and innovative lexical practices that reflect social identity, regional affiliation, and cultural adaptation. These findings highlight the interplay between linguistic structure and sociocultural factors, confirming Australian English as a socially meaningful and evolving variety of global English.*

Keywords: *Australian English, phonetics, lexicon, sociolinguistics, vowel shifts, non-rhoticity, World Englishes*

1. Introduction

Australian English emerged in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries following British colonization. Although largely mutually intelligible with other English varieties, it has developed a recognizable phonetic and lexical identity. The early population consisted largely of speakers from different regions of Britain and Ireland, which led to the formation of a relatively leveled and homogeneous dialect over time (Trudgill & Hannah, 2017). Unlike in Britain, where regional dialects remained strongly differentiated, the mixing of dialects in the Australian colonies contributed to the development of a new variety of English with reduced regional variation (Horvath, 1985).

Geographic isolation also played a crucial role in shaping Australian English. Being separated from other English-speaking regions allowed linguistic features to evolve independently, while still maintaining a core structure similar to British English (Wells, 1982). Over time, internal social factors such as class, education, and urbanization contributed to the emergence of different

[1] Aliyeva, G. First-Year Student, Computer Engineering (English-Medium), Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: gyck2008@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0001-0547-952X

sociolects, commonly categorized as Broad, General, and Cultivated Australian English (Mitchell & Delbridge, 1965). General Australian English is now the most widely used form across the country.

In addition to its phonological development, Australian English has been significantly influenced by contact with Indigenous Australian languages. This contact introduced new lexical items, particularly for flora, fauna, and cultural concepts unfamiliar to European settlers (Moore, 2008). Words such as kangaroo, boomerang, and billabong have become integral parts of the vocabulary and are now recognized internationally. Furthermore, globalization and media have brought ongoing influence from American English, leading to the gradual incorporation of new vocabulary and subtle shifts in pronunciation (Cox & Palethorpe, 2007).

Phonologically, Australian English is characterized by three primary accent types: Broad, General, and Cultivated. Broad accents exhibit features such as vowel lowering, diphthong shifting, and non-rhoticity, while Cultivated accents retain closer alignment with British Received Pronunciation (Wells, 1982). Rising terminal intonation — the High Rising Terminal (HRT) — is a notable prosodic feature, particularly prevalent among younger speakers, often functioning to signal uncertainty, politeness, or conversational engagement (Cruttenden, 2008; Bell, 2016). Lexically, Australian English exhibits extensive use of diminutives, clipped forms, and slang that serve both functional and social purposes (Bauer, 2007). The present study investigates key phonetic patterns and lexical innovations that distinguish Australian English, contributing to broader discussions of World Englishes, language change, and the interaction between linguistic form and social function.

2. Methodology

This study employs a mixed-methods approach combining corpus-based analysis, acoustic phonetic measurement, and sociolinguistic observation. Phonetic data were collected from audio recordings of naturally occurring speech across Australian contexts including radio interviews, podcasts, and informal conversations among speakers of different ages and regions. Acoustic analysis using Praat software measured vowel formant frequencies (F1, F2), consonant articulation, and intonation patterns (Boersma & Weenink, 2023). Structured elicitation tasks were conducted with 100 participants from metropolitan, suburban, and rural areas to capture variation across age, gender, and socio-economic background.

Lexical investigation incorporated frequency analysis and semantic categorization using the Australian National Corpus (ANC) and ICE-AUS, queried for diminutives, slang, and region-specific vocabulary. An online survey of 250 participants across urban and rural regions recorded familiarity and usage of selected lexical items, capturing generational and geographic variation (Davies, 2013). Sociophonetic methods examined correlations between phonetic realizations and social variables including age, education, and regional affiliation (Ash, 2002; Bell, 2016). Ethical procedures were followed throughout, including informed consent, anonymization of recordings, and voluntary participation. Data triangulation across corpora, elicitation tasks, and surveys strengthened the validity of findings.

3. Results

3.1 Phonetic Characteristics

Australian English exhibits three main vowel categories: Broad, General, and Cultivated (Wells, 1982). The diphthongs /aɪ/ and /ɔɪ/ are subject to raising in Broad accents, so words like face may be pronounced [fɛɪs] rather than [feɪs] (Bauer, 2007). The front vowel /e/ in words such as bed is often more centralized in Australian speakers than in British English (Kirkpatrick, 2010). Consonantally, Australian English is largely non-rhotic: the /r/ sound is dropped in post-vocalic positions, making car pronounced [ka:] (Wells, 1982). Intervocalic flapping occurs in /t/ — butter pronounced [ˈbʌɾə] — a phenomenon shared with American English but realized differently in Australian speech (Bauer, 2007). The voiceless plosive /t/ may also be glottalized in casual speech (Ash, 2002). Rising terminal intonation is common, especially in Broad and General accents, with the High Rising Terminal appearing more frequently among younger speakers and serving pragmatic functions including signaling politeness and inclusivity (Cruttenden, 2008; Bell, 2016).

3.2 Lexical Characteristics

Diminutives and clipped forms are widely used in Australian English, including arvo (afternoon), servo (service station), and brekkie (breakfast), functioning to signal familiarity and social solidarity (Bauer, 2007). Unique slang terms such as bogan, fair dinkum, and cark it demonstrate region-specific vocabulary that has become standardized in everyday speech (Moore, 2008). Corpus studies indicate that diminutives and slang appear more frequently in spoken Australian English than in written registers, highlighting the oral-dominant character of lexical innovation (ANC, 2020; ICE-AUS, 2010). Semantic shifts are also evident: biscuit refers to a sweet cookie rather than a savory bread product as in American English, and thongs refers to flip-flop sandals rather than underwear (Kirkpatrick, 2010). These shifts indicate semantic adaptation to local culture and context, potentially posing interpretive challenges for non-Australian speakers.

4. Discussion

The results confirm that Australian English is a dynamic variety with distinctive phonetic and lexical characteristics reflecting both historical development and contemporary sociolinguistic influences. The observed vowel shifts, including the raising of /aɪ/ and /ɔɪ/ in Broad accents, demonstrate divergence from British Received Pronunciation and illustrate the influence of internal vowel chain shifts (Wells, 1982; Bauer, 2007). Non-rhoticity and intervocalic flapping reinforce the distinction from rhotic varieties such as American English, while glottalization of /t/ in casual speech represents ongoing phonetic innovation (Ash, 2002). High Rising Terminal patterns appear to function pragmatically, signaling politeness, solidarity, or uncertainty, particularly among younger speakers (Cruttenden, 2008; Bell, 2016).

Lexically, the frequent use of diminutives and clipped forms highlights social functions of friendliness and solidarity in spoken Australian English (Bauer, 2007). Region-specific slang contributes to a distinctive Australian identity and demonstrates rapid lexical innovation in response to cultural trends (Moore, 2008). The interplay between phonetic and lexical characteristics suggests that Australian English operates as a continuum influenced by social class, age, and regional variation (Wells, 1982). Broad and General accents overlap significantly, while lexical choices signal social identity, regional affiliation, and group membership, consistent with sociolinguistic models of language change (Trudgill, 2000).

Social stratification shapes both pronunciation and word choice: Cultivated accents, historically associated with higher socioeconomic status, show closer alignment with British RP, whereas Broad accents reflect working-class origins and regional identity (Wells, 1982; Bauer, 2007). Media and technology accelerate the diffusion of innovative lexical items across regions, contributing to a leveling effect among younger speakers (Bell, 2016; Kirkpatrick, 2010). The interaction between Indigenous languages and Australian English has also enriched the lexicon: loanwords such as kangaroo, boomerang, and billabong have been integrated into everyday speech, underscoring ongoing cultural contact (Bauer, 2007). Phonetic variation also correlates with gender: women are more likely to use rising terminal intonation in casual conversation, reflecting broader patterns of gendered speech (Cruttenden, 2008; Bell, 2016). Regional differentiation between coastal urban centres and rural areas further complicates the phonetic and lexical landscape, though globalization and media promote convergence (Bauer, 2007; Wells, 1982).

5. Conclusion

Australian English is a distinct and evolving variety of English characterized by unique phonetic and lexical features that differentiate it from other global English varieties. Phonologically, the language demonstrates non-rhoticity, vowel shifts, intervocalic flapping, and glottalization, producing an accent continuum ranging from Broad to Cultivated forms (Wells, 1982; Bauer, 2007). Rising terminal intonation serves pragmatic and social functions and is especially prominent among younger speakers (Cruttenden, 2008; Bell, 2016). Lexically, diminutives, clipped forms, region-specific slang, and semantic shifts function as markers of social identity and cultural adaptation (Bauer, 2007; Moore, 2008; Kirkpatrick, 2010). The integration of phonetic and lexical features demonstrates the interplay between linguistic structure and sociocultural factors. Further research could productively explore regional variation within Australia, the impact of digital media on lexical change, and the ongoing influence of Indigenous languages on the evolving lexicon.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: G.A.; Methodology: G.A.; Investigation: G.A.; Writing – original draft: G.A.; Writing – review & editing: G.A.

References

Alisoy, H. (2026). The 'Tech-Industrial Complex' and the 'Oligarchy' warning: Neologism, intertextuality, and prophetic rhetoric in Biden's 2025 farewell address. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 3(2), 30–44.

Ash, S. (2002). Australian English: Pronunciation and variation. Sydney University Press.

Australian National Corpus (ANC). (2020). Retrieved from http://www.anc.org.au

Babayev, J. (2025). A comparative-linguistic analysis of Australian and New Zealand English. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(5), 20–27.

Babayev, J. (2025). Orthographic challenges in the transliteration of proper names between languages with different spelling. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(4), 345–356.

Babayev, J. S., Sadikhova, S. N., Baghirova, M. A., Seidova, E. R., & Mammadova, A. A. (2025). A lexical-stylistic and cross-cultural analysis of vulgarisms and their usage spheres. Universidad y Sociedad, 17(6), e5525.

Bauer, L. (2007). Australian English: Phonology. Cambridge University Press.

Bell, A. (2016). Pragmatic functions of rising intonation in Australian English. Journal of Pragmatics, 101, 1–12.

Boersma, P., & Weenink, D. (2023). Praat: Doing phonetics by computer [Computer program]. Retrieved from https://www.praat.org

Burridge, K., & Kortmann, B. (Eds.). (2004). A handbook of varieties of English. Mouton de Gruyter.

Cox, F., & Palethorpe, S. (2007). Australian English. In D. Britain (Ed.), Language in the British Isles. Cambridge University Press.

Cruttenden, A. (2008). Gimson's pronunciation of English (7th ed.). Routledge.

Davies, M. (2013). The Corpus of Contemporary American English (COCA): 520 million words, 1990–present. Brigham Young University.

Gataullina, V., Safina, R., Aslanova, U., & Volskaya, A. (2017). Phraseological unit translation peculiarities with the components of non-metric measurement of length, volume and weight in German and Russian languages. National Academy of Managerial Staff of Culture and Arts Herald, (2), 108–111.

Horvath, B. M. (1985). Variation in Australian English: The sociolects of Sydney. Cambridge University Press.

International Corpus of English – Australia (ICE-AUS). (2010). Retrieved from http://www.ucl.ac.uk/english-usage/ice

Kirkpatrick, A. (2010). English in Australia and New Zealand. English Today, 26(4), 34–41.

Mitchell, A. G., & Delbridge, A. (1965). The speech of Australian adolescents. Angus and Robertson.

Moore, B. (Ed.). (2008). Australian Oxford dictionary. Oxford University Press.

Moore, B. (Ed.). (2016). The Australian national dictionary (2nd ed.). Oxford University Press.

Trudgill, P. (2000). Sociolinguistics: An introduction to language and society. Penguin Books.

Trudgill, P., & Hannah, J. (2017). International English: A guide to varieties of standard English (6th ed.). Routledge.

Wells, J. C. (1982). Accents of English (3 vols.). Cambridge University Press.

Received: 2 March 2026
Accepted: 10 April 2026
Published: 18 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

The American Family in Crisis: Socioeconomic Disintegration, Gender Dynamics, and Moral Collapse in Arthur Hailey's Airport

[1] Ilhama Mammadova
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602011

Abstract. *This article examines the representation of the American family in Arthur Hailey's novel Airport (1968) through the intersecting lenses of socioeconomic analysis, gender studies, and literary realism. Drawing on critical frameworks developed within American literary criticism and family sociology, the study investigates how Hailey deploys the dysfunctional family unit as both a narrative device and a vehicle for social critique. The analysis focuses on three principal axes of familial disintegration: economic marginalization and its psychological consequences, as evidenced in the Guerrero household; the corrosive effects of professional alienation and spousal incompatibility, as dramatized through the Bakersfeld marriages; and the redemptive function of loyal femininity as a counterweight to masculine crisis. The article argues that Hailey's realist aesthetics — grounded in meticulous social documentation and psychologically complex characterization — position Airport as a significant literary artifact of mid-twentieth-century American domestic fiction. By situating the novel within the broader tradition of American social realism and engaging with contemporary scholarship on family, gender, and literary form, this study demonstrates that Hailey's treatment of familial crisis constitutes a sustained, structurally embedded critique of post-war American society's failure to protect its most vulnerable members.*

Keywords: *American family, Arthur Hailey, Airport, social realism, gender, literary analysis, domestic fiction, socioeconomic crisis*

1. Introduction

The American family has long occupied an ambiguous position within the national literary imagination — celebrated as the foundational unit of democratic society yet persistently subjected to literary interrogation as a site of tension, compromise, and dissolution. From Nathaniel Hawthorne's Puritan households to John Updike's suburban marriages, American fiction has returned repeatedly to the family as a prism through which broader social contradictions are refracted and made visible (Coontz, 1992; Mintz & Kellogg, 1988). The mid-twentieth century, with its surface ideology of domestic prosperity and its suppressed realities of economic precarity,

[1] Mammadova, I. Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University. Email: ilhamemammadova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-2787-5037

racial stratification, and gender constraint, proved especially fertile ground for literary representations of familial crisis.

Arthur Hailey (1920–2004), though frequently positioned at the intersection of popular and serious fiction, produced in Airport (1968) a novel of considerable sociological and literary ambition. Written in the tradition of American social realism — a tradition extending from Theodore Dreiser and Sinclair Lewis through John Dos Passos and John Steinbeck — Hailey's novel deploys the procedural thriller format as a vehicle for sustained social commentary (Bell, 2014; Hapke, 2001). The airport, as both physical space and symbolic architecture, becomes in Hailey's hands a microcosm of American society: a compressed universe in which characters from radically different socioeconomic backgrounds collide, their personal crises playing out against the backdrop of institutional systems under stress.

At the center of Hailey's social vision lies the family — or more precisely, the American family in various states of disintegration. The novel presents no fewer than four distinct domestic configurations, each representing a different modality of familial failure: the economically devastated household of D.O. Guerrero and his wife Inez; the professionally sundered marriage of airport director Mel Bakersfeld and his socially ambitious wife Cindy; the psychologically scarred domestic life of air traffic controller Keith Bakersfeld; and the resilient, affectively intact partnership of Tanya Livingston and her colleagues. Through this carefully orchestrated array of domestic arrangements, Hailey constructs what amounts to a taxonomy of the mid-century American family and its structural vulnerabilities.

Scholarship on Hailey has tended to focus either on his documentary methodology or on his popular appeal, while his treatment of gender, family, and social stratification has received comparatively little systematic attention (Bloom, 2004; Seed, 2011). This article seeks to address that gap by examining Airport as a work of domestic fiction — one in which the family functions not merely as dramatic backdrop but as the primary analytical category through which American society is understood, judged, and found wanting. Drawing on literary criticism, family sociology, and gender studies, the analysis demonstrates that Hailey's representations of familial crisis are structurally embedded, theoretically coherent, and sociologically precise.

2. Theoretical Framework

The present study draws on three intersecting theoretical traditions. The first is the sociology of the American family, particularly the work of scholars who have examined the structural tensions between the post-war idealization of the nuclear family and the material conditions that systematically undermined it. Coontz's (1992) influential critique of the mythologized 1950s family — the so-called golden age of domestic stability — is especially pertinent here, as is Mintz and Kellogg's (1988) historical analysis of the family as a site of ongoing negotiation between cultural aspiration and socioeconomic reality.

The second tradition is American literary realism and its ideological commitments. As Pizer (2009) has argued, American realism is characterized not merely by stylistic verisimilitude but by a systematic engagement with the social forces — class, economics, institutional power — that shape individual lives and limit individual agency. In this tradition, the individual character functions simultaneously as a psychological subject and as a social type, and narrative resolution is consistently qualified by the recognition of systemic constraint. Hailey's novel operates squarely within this realist tradition, and its family narratives must be read accordingly: not as sentimental studies of personal dysfunction but as socially diagnostic representations of structural failure (Hapke, 2001).

The third tradition is feminist literary criticism and gender studies, which provides the analytical tools necessary to examine Hailey's complex and occasionally contradictory representations of femininity. Showalter's (1977) distinction between the literature of androcentric projection — in which female characters function primarily as mirrors for male anxieties — and gynocentric representation — in which women are granted independent subjectivity — proves useful in navigating Hailey's treatment of Inez, Cindy, and Natalie. More recently, Gilbert and Gubar's (2000) analysis of the angel/monster binary in patriarchal literary culture illuminates the structural logic underlying Hailey's female characterizations and their relation to the novel's broader ideological project.

3. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative, text-analytical methodology grounded in close reading, narrative analysis, and contextual literary criticism. The primary text is Arthur Hailey's Airport (1968), analyzed through the three theoretical frameworks outlined above. Secondary sources comprise peer-reviewed scholarship in American literary criticism, family sociology, and gender studies, drawn from Scopus- and Web of Science-indexed journals and academic monographs. The analytical procedure proceeds in three stages: (1) identification and close reading of the novel's principal family configurations; (2) interpretation of these configurations in relation to the theoretical frameworks of social realism, family sociology, and gender criticism; and (3) synthesis of the findings into an argument about the novel's coherent critical position on the American family. Textual evidence is cited throughout with reference to the 1988 Baku edition of the novel.

4. Socioeconomic Disintegration and the Guerrero Household

The most structurally significant family unit in Airport is undoubtedly that of D.O. Guerrero and his wife Inez, whose progressive economic immiseration is rendered by Hailey with a clinical precision that recalls Dreiser's portrayal of the Hurstwood decline in Sister Carrie. Guerrero's trajectory — from comfortable suburban homeowner to occupant of a wind-exposed, insect-infested two-room shack — traces the arc of downward social mobility that was, as Coontz (1992) demonstrates, a structural feature of American economic life beneath the prosperous surface of the post-war decades. The spatial contraction of the family's living conditions — from suburban house to apartment to shack — functions as a precise architectural index of social exclusion, each stage marking a further withdrawal of the family from the normative domestic space to which American ideology held out the promise of universal access (Hayden, 2002).

What Hailey renders with particular psychological acuity is the way in which economic precarity corrodes not only material comfort but the affective fabric of the family itself. The progressive estrangement between Guerrero and Inez — the growing coldness, the irrational irritability, the physical violence — is not presented as a consequence of personal failing but as a predictable psychological response to systematic social abandonment. In this respect, Hailey's analysis anticipates the findings of subsequent sociological research demonstrating the strong correlation between economic stress and domestic conflict, including the elevated incidence of intimate partner violence in economically marginalized households (Jewkes, 2002; Kessler, Turner, & House, 1988).

Guerrero's decision to destroy a passenger aircraft in order to generate an insurance payout for his family represents, in Hailey's carefully constructed logic, the terminal consequence of social abandonment — the moment at which a human being, deprived of all legitimate means of fulfilling the paternal function that his society assigns to him, crosses into catastrophic transgression. Hailey's moral framing is explicit: it is not Guerrero's character but his circumstances that have produced this outcome. As Hapke (2001) argues in her study of labor and crisis in American literature, the figure of the desperate man driven to extremity by structural forces beyond his control is a recurring type in the social realist tradition, functioning as an indictment of the system rather than of the individual. Hailey's novel participates in this tradition while extending it to the domestic sphere: the family, rather than the factory or the field, becomes the site at which American capitalism's human costs are most intimately registered.

5. Professional Alienation and Marital Dissolution: The Bakersfeld Marriages

If the Guerrero household dramatizes the family's vulnerability to economic forces, the two Bakersfeld marriages illuminate a different but related dimension of American familial crisis: the destructive intersection of professional identity and domestic life. Mel Bakersfeld, the airport's director, is presented as a figure of exemplary professional competence and moral seriousness — qualities that simultaneously define and isolate him within his marriage. His wife Cindy's preference for social entertainment over substantive engagement, her cultivation of Mel's status as a social ornament rather than a partner, and her ultimate infidelity represent, in Hailey's schematic, the failure of the American domestic ideal when its affective foundations are replaced by social performance (Stone, 1990).

The Mel-Cindy marriage encodes a broader cultural tension that feminist scholars have identified as central to mid-century American domestic ideology: the contradiction between the public sphere's demand for masculine professional achievement and the private sphere's demand for masculine domestic presence (Friedan, 1963; May, 1988). Mel cannot simultaneously be the professionally dedicated airport director that his institution requires and the attentive, socially available husband that Cindy demands. The marriage's dissolution is thus not merely a personal failure but a structural one — the predictable outcome of an ideological system that assigns incompatible roles to its male subjects. Hailey's sympathies, it should be noted, lie unambiguously with Mel; but his analysis is sufficiently lucid to expose the systemic rather than personal character of the incompatibility.

Keith Bakersfeld's psychological crisis introduces a further dimension: the way in which professional trauma — specifically, the responsibility for catastrophic accident — penetrates and destabilizes domestic life. The image of the dying child's voice that haunts Keith's sleep and drives him toward suicidal ideation is one of the novel's most psychologically precise passages, anticipating contemporary research on the psychological aftermath of occupational trauma and its domestic consequences (Herman, 1992; Van der Kolk, 1994). Keith's wife Natalie and their children function, in Hailey's narrative, as the affective anchor that delays and ultimately prevents Keith's self-destruction — a function that foregrounds the family's role as psychological safety net in a society that provides no other institutional support for men broken by professional obligation.

6. Gender, Loyalty, and the Redemptive Female

Hailey's representations of femininity in Airport are structurally organized around a binary that has deep roots in Western literary culture and that feminist criticism has extensively theorized: the opposition between the loyal, self-sacrificing wife-mother and the socially ambitious, sexually transgressive woman (Gilbert & Gubar, 2000; Showalter, 1977). Inez Guerrero and Natalie Bakersfeld occupy the positive pole of this binary; Cindy Bakersfeld occupies the negative. This schema is, from a feminist critical perspective, ideologically conservative — it assigns women's value entirely in relation to their service to men and families — and it is important to acknowledge its limitations alongside its narrative function.

Within the terms of Hailey's realist project, however, the figure of the loyal wife performs a more complex function than simple ideological prescription. Inez's response to the discovery of her husband's plan — her immediate, uncalculating rush to prevent the catastrophe he has set in motion — is presented not as dutiful submission but as active moral agency. She acts not because she has been instructed to act but because her knowledge of her husband, her love for him, and her practical intelligence combine to produce decisive intervention. In this respect, Inez anticipates the more explicitly feminist valorization of relational ethics — the ethics of care and responsibility developed by Gilligan (1982) and her successors — that would subsequently challenge the Kantian emphasis on abstract principle as the foundation of moral action.

The contrast between Inez and Cindy encodes what Hailey presents as a fundamental choice available to American women: between an orientation toward relational commitment and an orientation toward individual social advancement. That this choice is presented as a moral rather than a structural choice — that is, as a matter of individual character rather than of social conditioning — represents the ideological limit of Hailey's critical vision. As Friedan (1963) and May (1988) demonstrate, the domestic roles available to American women in the mid-twentieth century were not freely chosen but culturally coerced; and the valorization of the selflessly devoted wife functions, whatever its narrative intentions, to naturalize those coercive arrangements. Hailey's realism is, in this respect, partial: acute in its diagnosis of economic and professional pathology, less critically aware of the gender ideology it simultaneously critiques and reproduces.

7. Hailey's Realist Aesthetics and the Novel's Literary Significance

Airport's literary value is inseparable from Hailey's documentary methodology — his meticulous research into the operational realities of commercial aviation, his precise rendering of institutional procedures, his attention to the material texture of professional life. This documentary dimension, rooted in Hailey's own wartime experience as a military pilot and sustained by extensive research, produces the quality of authenticating specificity that distinguishes social realism from mere melodrama (Bell, 2014; Pizer, 2009). Readers trust Hailey's characters because they inhabit a world rendered with forensic accuracy; and it is precisely this trust that makes the novel's social critique persuasive rather than polemical.

The integration of detective-thriller elements into the narrative structure — the countdown to Guerrero's attempted bombing, the procedural investigation that pursues him, the climactic intervention — provides the genre architecture through which Hailey's social material is organized and energized. As Seed (2011) has noted in his analysis of popular fiction and social critique, the thriller format is not merely a commercial concession but a formal choice with ideological implications: by organizing its social analysis around a crisis that must be resolved, the thriller implicitly affirms the possibility of intervention and the efficacy of institutional response. Airport's resolution — the aircraft lands safely, Guerrero's plan is thwarted — is thus not simply a narrative convenience but an expression of Hailey's qualified faith in the resilience of American institutions, even as those institutions are shown to have failed the individuals — Guerrero above all — whose crises they are constituted to prevent.

8. Conclusion

Arthur Hailey's Airport is, among much else, a systematic literary examination of the American family in crisis — a work that deploys the resources of social realism, psychological characterization, and generic thriller to produce a nuanced, structurally coherent critique of the social conditions under which American families fracture, survive, or collapse. Through the contrasting domestic configurations of the Guerrero and Bakersfeld households, Hailey demonstrates that familial disintegration is not the product of individual moral failure but the predictable consequence of structural forces — economic precarity, professional alienation, institutional neglect — that systematically undermine the conditions necessary for domestic stability.

The novel's gender politics are more ambivalent, simultaneously valorizing female loyalty as a redemptive counterforce to masculine crisis and reproducing the ideological constraints that define women's value in purely relational terms. This tension is itself historically significant, reflecting the unresolved contradictions of mid-century American gender ideology at the precise historical moment when those contradictions were beginning to be named and contested. Future research might productively examine Airport in dialogue with contemporaneous works by women writers — Sylvia Plath, Adrienne Rich, Tillie Olsen — whose representations of domestic life offer a critically different perspective on the same cultural terrain. Further comparative analysis within the broader tradition of popular social realism, and across Hailey's complete oeuvre, would also contribute to a fuller understanding of his literary significance as a chronicler of American institutional and domestic life.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: I.M.; Methodology: I.M.; Investigation: I.M.; Writing – original draft: I.M.; Writing – review & editing: I.M.

References

Bell, M. (2014). The social novel and popular fiction: Arthur Hailey's documentary realism. Journal of Popular Culture, 47(3), 512–528. https://doi.org/10.1111/jpcu.12148

Bloom, H. (Ed.). (2004). Arthur Hailey. Chelsea House Publishers.

Coontz, S. (1992). The way we never were: American families and the nostalgia trap. Basic Books.

Dreiser, T. (1900). Sister Carrie. Doubleday, Page & Co.

Friedan, B. (1963). The feminine mystique. W. W. Norton.

Gilbert, S. M., & Gubar, S. (2000). The madwoman in the attic: The woman writer and the nineteenth-century literary imagination (2nd ed.). Yale University Press.

Gilligan, C. (1982). In a different voice: Psychological theory and women's development. Harvard University Press.

Hailey, A. (1988). Airport. Yazıçı Publishing House. (Original work published 1968)

Hapke, L. (2001). Labor's text: The worker in American fiction. Rutgers University Press.

Hayden, D. (2002). Redesigning the American dream: Gender, housing, and family life. W. W. Norton.

Herman, J. L. (1992). Trauma and recovery: The aftermath of violence. Basic Books.

Jewkes, R. (2002). Intimate partner violence: Causes and prevention. The Lancet, 359(9315), 1423–1429. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(02)08357-5

Kessler, R. C., Turner, J. B., & House, J. S. (1988). Effects of unemployment on health in a community survey. Journal of Social Issues, 44(4), 69–85. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-4560.1988.tb02092.x

May, E. T. (1988). Homeward bound: American families in the cold war era. Basic Books.

Mintz, S., & Kellogg, S. (1988). Domestic revolutions: A social history of American family life. Free Press.

Norton Anthology of American Literature (9th ed.). (2017). W. W. Norton & Company.

Pizer, D. (2009). American literary realism: A collection of essays. University of Nebraska Press.

Seed, D. (2011). Popular fiction and social critique: The thriller in twentieth-century American culture. Modern Fiction Studies, 57(2), 245–268. https://doi.org/10.1353/mfs.2011.0023

Showalter, E. (1977). A literature of their own: British women novelists from Brontë to Lessing. Princeton University Press.

Stone, L. (1990). Road to divorce: England 1530–1987. Oxford University Press.

Van der Kolk, B. A. (1994). The body keeps the score: Memory and the evolving psychobiology of posttraumatic stress. Harvard Review of Psychiatry, 1(5), 253–265. https://doi.org/10.3109/10673229409017088

Received: 8 March 2026
Accepted: 17 April 2026
Published: 18 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Negotiating Meaning in Global Contexts: Strategic Use and Perceptions of English as a Lingua Franca

[1] **Sevinj Aziz Enver qızı**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602012

Abstract. *As the global demographic of English speakers continues to shift — with non-native speakers substantially outnumbering their native counterparts — the traditional pedagogical fixation on native-speaker norms has been subjected to sustained and rigorous academic critique. This article investigates the paradigm of English as a Lingua Franca (ELF), with specific focus on the relationship between the pragmatic strategies deployed by users in intercultural encounters and their underlying perceptions of linguistic identity and legitimacy. Drawing on corpus data, discourse analysis, and qualitative interview evidence, the study identifies and theorizes the communicative strategies — including proactive repair, paraphrasing, accommodation, code-switching, and the avoidance of culturally localized idiomaticity — through which ELF users negotiate meaning across linguistic and cultural boundaries. The findings demonstrate that successful ELF communication is governed less by adherence to a standardized variety and more by the interlocutors' capacity for strategic adaptation. The article further examines the psychological dimension of ELF use, revealing the phenomenon of schizoglossia: the persistent tension between communicative efficacy and the internalized pressure to approximate native-speaker norms. This ideological constraint, rooted in the enduring hegemony of native-speakerism, generates measurable linguistic insecurity even among highly proficient ELF users. The article concludes by arguing for a fundamental reorientation of English Language Teaching (ELT) — from an accuracy-centred model predicated on the imitation of native norms to a capability-centred pedagogy that equips learners with the strategic competence required for effective global communication.*

Keywords: *English as a Lingua Franca, pragmatic strategies, mutual intelligibility, native-speakerism, schizoglossia, linguistic identity, intercultural communication, ELT pedagogy*

1. Introduction

The transition of English from a national language to a genuinely global phenomenon has fundamentally reconfigured the parameters of linguistic competence in the twenty-first century. As the global demographic of English speakers continues to shift, a decisive numerical reality has crystallized: non-native speakers now substantially outnumber native speakers, effectively

[1] Aziz, S. E. PhD in Philology, Faculty of Foreign Languages, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Correspondence: sevincaziz92@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0007-0238-6532

decoupling the language from its traditional Inner Circle origins (Kachru, 1992). This demographic transformation has rendered increasingly untenable the long-standing pedagogical investment in native-speaker norms — the idealized imitation of British or American English that has historically structured English as a Foreign Language (EFL) instruction. The framework of English as a Lingua Franca (ELF) has emerged as the theoretical and pedagogical response to this transformation, reconceptualizing English not as the property of any single speech community but as a flexible communicative resource deployed across linguistic and cultural boundaries (Jenkins, 2007; Seidlhofer, 2011).

ELF scholarship has consistently demonstrated that interactions conducted through English between speakers of different first languages exhibit distinctive pragmatic characteristics that diverge systematically from the norms of any native variety. Rather than treating such divergences as deficiencies, ELF researchers have argued that they constitute purposive adaptations within what Schmitz (2012) terms a multilingua franca context — one in which the primary communicative goal is the successful negotiation of shared meaning rather than the faithful reproduction of monolingual native norms. This reframing has profound implications not only for linguistic theory but for the practice of English Language Teaching (ELT), where the persistent idealization of the native speaker continues to generate measurable psychological and pedagogical harm (Holliday, 2005; Kiczkowiak, 2024).

The present article investigates two interconnected dimensions of ELF communication. The first concerns the pragmatic strategies through which ELF users negotiate meaning in intercultural encounters — the interactional tools and accommodative practices that enable mutual intelligibility in the absence of shared linguistic norms. The second concerns the perceptual and ideological dimension of ELF use — specifically, the persistent tension between users' functional communicative competence and the internalized pressures generated by the hegemony of native-speakerism. By examining both dimensions and their pedagogical implications, the article argues for a fundamental reorientation of ELT toward a capability-centred model that positions strategic competence, rather than native-like accuracy, as the primary index of communicative proficiency.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundations of this study draw on three intersecting bodies of scholarship. The first is the sociolinguistics of World Englishes, particularly Kachru's (1992) concentric circle model, which provides the historical and geopolitical framework for understanding the emergence of ELF as a global communicative phenomenon distinct from the nativized varieties of the Outer Circle and the norm-dependent practices of the Expanding Circle. The model's central insight — that English has been appropriated, localized, and functionalized by diverse speech communities in ways that cannot be adequately described by reference to Inner Circle standards — remains foundational to ELF research.

The second body of scholarship is ELF linguistics proper, as developed by Seidlhofer (2001, 2011), Jenkins (2007), and Cogo and Dewey (2012). This tradition has established through corpus-based research that ELF communication exhibits systematic, recurrent pragmatic and grammatical features that are functional rather than erroneous — features such as the regularization of morphological irregularities, the avoidance of idiomatic opacity, and the deployment of specific interactional strategies for meaning negotiation. Critically, ELF research has demonstrated that these features are not random deviations from a standard but purposive adaptations that enhance rather than impede mutual intelligibility in multilingual contexts (Cogo & Dewey, 2012).

The third theoretical tradition is the critical pedagogy of language teaching, particularly the critique of native-speakerism developed by Holliday (2005) and its extensions in ELT scholarship. Native-speakerism — the ideological construction of the native speaker as the legitimate owner and normative model of the language — has been theorized as a form of linguistic discrimination that systematically disadvantages non-native speakers in professional, academic, and pedagogical contexts (Kiczkowiak, 2024). The concept of schizoglossia, introduced by Haugen (1962) and applied to ELF contexts by Schmitz (2012), provides the psychological vocabulary for describing the lived experience of this ideological constraint: the dissonant condition of communicating effectively in a language while simultaneously perceiving one's own usage as deficient.

3. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative, interpretive research design that synthesizes corpus-based linguistic analysis, discourse-analytic close reading, and critical review of the empirical ELF literature. The methodological approach is consistent with established practice in applied linguistics research that addresses both the structural properties of language use and the ideological dimensions of speakers' attitudes and perceptions (Dörnyei, 2007). Primary analytical evidence is drawn from published corpus studies of ELF interaction, including data from the Vienna-Oxford International Corpus of English (VOICE) and the ELFA corpus of academic ELF, supplemented by qualitative interview evidence reported in the secondary literature. The analytical procedure proceeds through three stages: identification of the principal pragmatic strategies documented in ELF interaction; examination of the perceptual and attitudinal evidence regarding native-speakerism and linguistic insecurity among ELF users; and synthesis of the pedagogical implications arising from the analysis.

4. Pragmatic Strategies for Mutual Intelligibility

In ELF encounters, the primary communicative orientation shifts decisively from linguistic purity to what Wilson (2018) terms a pragmatics of consensus — a communicative mode in which interlocutors prioritize the achievement of shared understanding over the formal correctness of their utterances. Research across diverse professional and academic sectors has identified a repertoire of recurrent strategies through which ELF users maintain communicative fluidity in high-stakes environments (Björkman, 2017; Seidlhofer, 2011).

4.1 Proactive Repair and Paraphrasing

One of the most extensively documented strategies in ELF interaction is proactive repair — the pre-emptive modification or reformulation of an utterance before a potential misunderstanding has materialized. Unlike reactive repair, which addresses communicative breakdown after it has occurred, proactive repair reflects a sophisticated capacity for audience design: an ongoing monitoring of the interlocutor's comprehension level and an anticipatory adjustment of one's own linguistic output. Björkman's (2017) corpus-based analysis of academic ELF interaction documents proactive repair as a defining feature of successful ELF communication in higher education contexts, where the stakes of misunderstanding are particularly consequential.

4.2 Repetition, Confirmation Checks, and Clarification Requests

Strategies of explicit verification — repetition, confirmation checks, and clarification requests — constitute a second major category of ELF pragmatic behavior. McDonough, Liu, and Trofimovich (2023) demonstrate through their analysis of L2 conversational strategies that interlocutors who deploy explicit verification strategies experience significantly fewer communicative breakdowns than those who rely on implicit signaling. In ELF contexts, where the shared inferential background that enables implicit understanding among native speakers cannot be assumed, these strategies assume particular importance. Their systematic use reflects not communicative incompetence but sophisticated metacommunicative awareness — a deliberate orientation toward the management of the interaction as a collaborative achievement.

4.3 Avoidance of Local Idiomaticity

A third characteristic strategy is the deliberate avoidance of culturally specific idioms, opaque metaphors, and localized colloquialisms that could impede understanding for interlocutors without access to the relevant cultural knowledge. Luo (2016) documents this strategy among Taiwanese ELF users, who report conscious monitoring of their own idiomatic usage in interactions with non-native interlocutors from other cultural backgrounds. This practice reflects what Cogo and Dewey (2012) characterize as a fundamental reorientation of communicative goals: in ELF interaction, the speaker's primary allegiance is not to the expressive resources of any particular variety but to the shared communicative project of mutual intelligibility.

4.4 Accommodation and Convergence

Accommodation theory, as developed by Giles (1973) and extended to multilingual contexts by Cogo and Dewey (2012), provides the broader theoretical framework within which these individual strategies are situated. Communicative accommodation — the dynamic adjustment of one's speech to match the characteristics of one's interlocutor — is identified across the ELF literature as the overarching principle that organizes successful multilingual interaction. In ELF contexts, convergence operates across multiple linguistic dimensions simultaneously: phonological, lexical, syntactic, and pragmatic. The ability to accommodate fluidly and responsively to a diverse range of interlocutors constitutes what Canale and Swain (1980) would classify as strategic competence — and it is this capacity, rather than the mastery of any particular variety, that the present analysis identifies as the defining characteristic of the competent ELF user.

5. The Perception Gap: Native-Speakerism, Schizoglossia, and Linguistic Identity

Despite the functional success of ELF communication, the ideological pressure of native-speakerism continues to generate significant psychological costs for non-native English users. Holliday's (2005) analysis of native-speakerism as a form of professional and linguistic discrimination documents the systematic ways in which the native speaker is constructed as the default authority on the language — a construction that positions all non-native users as, by definition, deficient. This ideological framework has been shown to exert measurable influence on ELF users' self-perception, professional confidence, and pedagogical practice (Kiczkowiak, 2024).

The phenomenology of this ideological pressure is captured most precisely by the concept of schizoglossia. Originally deployed by Haugen (1962) to describe the psychological condition of speakers caught between a prestige variety and their everyday vernacular, the term has been productively applied in ELF contexts by Schmitz (2012) to describe the experience of speakers who communicate effectively through English while simultaneously perceiving their own usage as inadequate by native standards. Empirical evidence for schizoglossia among ELF users is substantial: Jantri and Phusawisot (2021) document its effects among Thai EFL teachers, demonstrating correlations between linguistic insecurity and reduced pedagogical risk-taking; Geckinli and Yilmaz (2021) report similar patterns among Turkish EFL students, who despite recognizing ELF as a pragmatically effective tool continue to nominate native-like pronunciation as their primary language learning goal.

The resolution of schizoglossia requires what Galloway and Rose (2018) term a consciousness-raising pedagogy — one that actively challenges the deficit model of non-native English use and cultivates in learners an understanding of their own linguistic practices as legitimate and functional rather than merely approximative. By exposing students to successful ELF role models and theorizing the multilingual resources they bring to communication as assets rather than interferences, such a pedagogy creates the conditions for what Schmitz (2012) describes as the psychological liberation of the non-native speaker: the redirection of cognitive and affective resources from self-monitoring for deviations from native norms toward the productive negotiation of shared meaning.

6. EFL vs. ELF: A Comparative Pedagogical Analysis

The following table summarizes the principal pedagogical distinctions between the EFL and ELF paradigms across six key dimensions. These distinctions reflect not merely different instructional techniques but fundamentally different conceptions of communicative competence, linguistic legitimacy, and the relationship between language, identity, and culture.

Feature	English as a Foreign Language (EFL)	English as a Lingua Franca (ELF)
Primary Goal	Native-like accuracy and correctness	Mutual intelligibility and communicative capability
Target Model	Inner Circle native speaker norms	Successful intercultural communicator
Error Treatment	Deviations from native norms classified as errors	Functional variations recognized as innovations
Cultural Focus	Anglophone cultures (UK, USA)	Global, diverse, and pluricentric cultures
Key Skill	Linguistic competence: grammar and syntax	Strategic competence: accommodation and negotiation
Attitude toward L1	L1 interference to be minimized and avoided	L1 as communicative resource for identity and code-switching

The contrasts outlined in this table reveal the depth of the paradigm shift that the ELF framework demands. The reconceptualization of the target model — from native speaker to successful intercultural communicator — entails a thoroughgoing revision of assessment criteria, curricular objectives, and instructional materials. Similarly, the reframing of L1 as a communicative resource rather than a source of interference requires a fundamentally different orientation toward the multilingual identities that learners bring to the classroom (Galloway & Rose, 2018).

7. Pedagogical Implications: Toward a Capability-Centred ELT

The findings reviewed in this article converge on a clear pedagogical imperative: the transformation of ELT from an accuracy-centred model anchored in native-speaker norms to a capability-centred model that equips learners with the strategic competence required for effective communication in genuinely multilingual environments. This transformation involves several interconnected dimensions.

The first concerns task design. As McDonough, Liu, and Trofimovich (2023) demonstrate, learners benefit most from interactional tasks in which the primary focus is on a shared communicative outcome — solving a problem, completing a project, negotiating a decision — rather than on the formal correctness of the language used. Such tasks create conditions in which learners are compelled to deploy and develop the full range of strategic communicative resources: confirmation checks, clarification requests, paraphrasing, accommodation, and proactive repair. The ability to manage communicative breakdown strategically — to describe a word one does not know, to reframe a concept in simpler terms, to signal non-understanding explicitly — constitutes genuine communicative capability and should be treated as such in assessment frameworks (Jenvey, 2017).

The second dimension concerns exposure to linguistic diversity. A capability-centred pedagogy requires systematic exposure to the full range of English varieties and accents that learners will encounter in global professional and academic contexts — not merely the Inner Circle varieties that continue to dominate ELT materials and assessment (Liu, 2021). Exposure to diverse English varieties demystifies the hegemony of any single standard and cultivates the accommodative flexibility that effective ELF communication requires. It also, critically, validates the diverse linguistic identities that learners bring to the classroom, positioning their own varieties of English as legitimate participants in the global communicative landscape rather than deficient approximations of an inaccessible norm.

The third dimension is the consciousness-raising component identified by Galloway and Rose (2018): the explicit theoretical and critical engagement with questions of linguistic ideology, native-speakerism, and the politics of language ownership. By theorizing the language ideologies that generate linguistic insecurity, educators equip learners not merely with communicative strategies but with the critical frameworks necessary to understand and resist the psychological pressures that impede their communicative confidence and professional agency.

8. Conclusion

The evolution of English into a global lingua franca has rendered the native-speaker model not merely inadequate but actively counterproductive as a pedagogical reference point. As this article has demonstrated, the pragmatic realities of ELF communication are governed by principles — accommodation, strategic repair, the prioritization of mutual intelligibility over formal correctness — that diverge systematically from the norms of any native variety and that constitute a distinct and highly functional communicative competence in their own right. The persistent ideological hegemony of native-speakerism, however, generates the psychological condition of schizoglossia: a corrosive tension between communicative efficacy and the internalized perception of one's own language use as deficient. This tension is not a personal failing but a systemic consequence of an educational ideology that has privileged the imitation of Inner Circle norms at the expense of the strategic capabilities that genuinely multilingual communication demands.

The pedagogical reorientation argued for in this article — from correctness to capability, from native-speaker imitation to strategic competence, from deficit to resource — represents the most adequate response to the communicative realities of the contemporary global context. As English continues to evolve as a pluricentric, community-owned resource rather than a standardized code governed by a single normative authority, the task of ELT is not to produce imperfect approximations of a native ideal but to develop confident, strategically resourceful global communicators who possess the pragmatic flexibility to negotiate meaning across the full diversity of the world's English-speaking communities. Future research should continue to investigate the specific pedagogical interventions most effective in developing strategic competence and mitigating linguistic insecurity, with particular attention to the needs of learners in Expanding Circle contexts where native-speakerism remains most deeply entrenched.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: S.A.; Methodology: S.A.; Investigation: S.A.; Writing – original draft: S.A.; Writing – review & editing: S.A.

References

Björkman, B. (2017). So you think you can ELF: English as a lingua franca as the medium of instruction. HERMES – Journal of Language and Communication in Business, 23(45), 77–96. https://doi.org/10.7146/hjlcb.v23i45.97348

Cogo, A., & Dewey, M. (2012). Analysing English as a lingua franca: A corpus-driven investigation. Continuum.

Geckinli, F., & Yilmaz, C. (2021). Turkish EFL students' perceptions of ELF and its pedagogical implications. Sakarya University Journal of Education, 11(3), 482–500. https://doi.org/10.19126/suje.961513

Kiczkowiak, M. (2024). Who gets to be an ELT course book author? Native-speakerism in English for specific purposes and business English course books. Frontiers in Education, 9. https://doi.org/10.3389/feduc.2024.1473353

McDonough, K., Liu, C., & Trofimovich, P. (2023). Strategies for avoiding misunderstanding in English L2 conversations. ELT Journal, 77(4), 426–434. https://doi.org/10.1093/elt/ccad022

Schmitz, J. R. (2012). 'To ELF or not to ELF?' (English as a lingua franca): That's the question for applied linguistics in a globalized world. Revista Brasileira de Linguística Aplicada, 12(2), 249–284. https://doi.org/10.1590/s1984-63982012000200003

Canale, M., & Swain, M. (1980). Theoretical bases of communicative approaches to second language teaching and testing. Applied Linguistics, 1(1), 1–47. https://doi.org/10.1093/applin/1.1.1

Dörnyei, Z. (2007). Research methods in applied linguistics. Oxford University Press.

Giles, H. (1973). Accent mobility: A model and some data. Anthropological Linguistics, 15(2), 87–105.

Haugen, E. (1962). Schizoglossia and the linguistic norm. Georgetown University Monographs on Language and Linguistics, 15, 63–73.

Jenkins, J. (2007). English as a lingua franca: Attitude and identity. Oxford University Press.

Seidlhofer, B. (2001). Closing a conceptual gap: The case for a description of English as a lingua franca. International Journal of Applied Linguistics, 11(2), 133–158. https://doi.org/10.1111/1473-4192.00011

Seidlhofer, B. (2011). Understanding English as a lingua franca. Oxford University Press.

Galloway, N., & Rose, H. (2018). Global Englishes for language teaching. Cambridge University Press.

Holliday, A. (2005). The struggle to teach English as an international language. Oxford University Press.

Jantri, P., & Phusawisot, P. (2021). The influence of linguistic insecurity on Thai EFL teachers' teaching performance. International Journal of Linguistics, Literature and Translation, 4(8), 35–44. https://doi.org/10.32996/ijllt.2021.4.8.6

Jenvey, J. (2017). Ways forward for developing an ELF-centred ELT pedagogy. CALR Linguistics Journal, 8. https://doi.org/10.60149/javg8495

Kachru, B. B. (1992). The other tongue: English across cultures (2nd ed.). University of Illinois Press.

Liu, J. (2021). Disinventing native speakerism in English language teaching. English Language Teaching, 14(11), 97. https://doi.org/10.5539/elt.v14n11p97

Luo, W. H. (2016). Teacher perceptions of teaching and learning English as a lingua franca in the expanding circle: A study of Taiwan. English Today, 33(1), 2–11. https://doi.org/10.1017/s0266078416000146

Wilson, A. (2018). Adapting English for the specific purpose of tourism: A study of communication strategies in face-to-face encounters in a French tourist office. ASp, 73, 53–73. https://doi.org/10.4000/asp.5118

Received: 2 March 2026
Accepted: 10 April 2026
Published: 18 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Comparative Analysis of Participle I and II in English and Russian: Morphological, Syntactic, and Stylistic Dimensions

[1] Lyudmila Guliyeva
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602013

Abstract. *This study presents a systematic comparative analysis of Participle I and Participle II in English and their functional equivalents in Russian, examining morphological formation, syntactic roles, and stylistic distribution. Participles are investigated as hybrid non-finite verb forms that combine verbal and adjectival properties, enabling them to operate across multiple grammatical contexts with varying degrees of complexity in each language. The research adopts a qualitative descriptive-comparative methodology grounded in contrastive linguistics, drawing on established grammar references and authentic language examples from literary, academic, and media discourse. The findings reveal that English participles are structurally simple and invariant, reflecting the analytic character of the language, whereas Russian participles exhibit high morphological complexity, including systematic agreement in gender, number, and case. Significant differences are also identified in syntactic behavior: Russian participles are more frequently deployed in attributive constructions and function as condensed alternatives to relative clauses, while English participial forms operate flexibly across both written and spoken registers. A further functional divergence concerns adverbial expression: Russian employs a separate grammatical category — the gerund (деепричастие) — for adverbial participial functions, whereas English Participle I covers both adjectival and adverbial domains. These differences are interpreted through the broader typological distinction between analytic and synthetic language structure, and their implications for contrastive linguistics, second language acquisition, and translation practice are discussed.*

Keywords: *participles, non-finite verb forms, contrastive linguistics, English grammar, Russian grammar, morphological typology, syntactic analysis, second language acquisition*

1. Introduction

Participles constitute an essential component of the verbal system in many Indo-European languages, functioning as non-finite verb forms that exhibit a characteristically dual nature — combining verbal properties such as aspect, voice, and temporal reference with adjectival or adverbial characteristics. This hybrid status affords participles a unique position within grammatical systems, enabling speakers and writers to achieve syntactic compression and stylistic variation that finite clause structures cannot replicate with the same economy (Quirk et al., 1985).

[1] Guliyeva, L. Senior Teacher, Department of European Languages, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan.
Email: lyudmilaquliyeva@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0004-2396-5400

In both English and Russian, participial constructions serve as a bridge between clause-level and phrase-level expression, allowing complex semantic relationships to be conveyed within compact structural configurations.

In English grammar, participles are traditionally divided into Participle I (the present participle, formed with the suffix -ing) and Participle II (the past participle, formed with -ed or irregular equivalents). Participle I is widely deployed in progressive aspect constructions (e.g., is writing), in adjectival functions (a smiling child), and in adverbial participial clauses (Walking along the street, he noticed a change). Participle II is central to perfect and passive constructions (has written; was written) and can function attributively (a broken window). Crucially, English participles are invariant forms that do not inflect for gender, number, or case, a morphological minimalism that reflects the fundamentally analytic character of the language (Quirk et al., 1985; Biber et al., 1999).

Russian, by contrast, operates within a synthetic grammatical tradition that encodes grammatical relationships primarily through inflection rather than word order and auxiliary constructions. Its participial system distinguishes four principal categories — present active, past active, present passive, and past passive — each of which inflects fully for gender, number, and case in agreement with the modified noun. Moreover, verbal aspect plays a structurally constitutive role in Russian participial formation: imperfective verbs generate present-tense participial forms while perfective verbs produce past forms, a dependency with no direct parallel in English (Timberlake, 2004). Russian also maintains a categorical distinction between participles (причастия) and gerunds (деепричастия), distributing adjectival and adverbial functions across two separate non-finite categories — a distribution that English collapses into the single Participle I form.

These typological contrasts make English and Russian participles a productive object of contrastive linguistic analysis. The divergences in morphological complexity, syntactic behavior, stylistic distribution, and functional scope generate significant challenges for language learners, translators, and applied linguists working between the two languages. The present study investigates these differences systematically, with the aim of contributing both to the theoretical description of participial systems and to the practical understanding of cross-linguistic variation in this grammatical domain.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundations of this study draw on three principal traditions. The first is typological linguistics, particularly the analytic-synthetic parameter as theorized by Comrie (1981) and developed in subsequent typological research. This parameter provides the primary explanatory framework for the morphological contrasts observed between English and Russian participial systems: the invariant, contextually determined forms of English participles exemplify analytic grammatical organization, while the richly inflected, agreement-governed forms of Russian participles instantiate the synthetic pole of the typological continuum. As Comrie (1981) argues, these typological orientations are not merely descriptive labels but reflect deep-seated organizing principles that permeate the grammatical systems of the languages concerned.

The second theoretical tradition is aspect theory in Slavic linguistics, particularly as developed by Forsyth (1970) and systematized in Timberlake's (2004) reference grammar of Russian. The binary perfectivity distinction in Russian — which organizes virtually the entire verbal lexicon into aspect pairs — has direct consequences for participial morphology, since the aspectual value of the base verb determines which participial categories can be formed from it. An adequate contrastive account of English and Russian participles therefore requires engagement with Slavic aspect theory as well as with the standard description of English verbal morphology.

The third tradition is register-oriented corpus linguistics, as represented by Biber et al.'s (1999) Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English. This work provides the empirical basis for claims about the differential distribution of participial constructions across spoken and written registers — a dimension of analysis that is indispensable for a complete account of how participles function in real discourse, as opposed to how they are described in prescriptive or idealized grammatical accounts.

3. Methodology

This study employs a qualitative, descriptive-comparative research design grounded in the methodology of contrastive linguistics, which aims to identify systematic similarities and differences between grammatical structures across languages through feature-by-feature alignment (James, 1980). The analysis operates at three interconnected levels — morphological, syntactic, and stylistic — ensuring that both form and function are examined in their mutual dependency.

Data were drawn from authoritative grammar references including Quirk et al.'s (1985) A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language, Timberlake's (2004) A Reference Grammar of Russian, and Biber et al.'s (1999) Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English, supplemented by authentic examples from literary texts, academic writing, and media discourse in both languages. A purposive sampling procedure was used to select examples that clearly illustrate specific participial functions across attributive, predicative, and adverbial syntactic contexts and across formal and informal registers. Analytical reliability was enhanced through cross-referencing examples across multiple sources; the study acknowledges that its qualitative orientation and relatively small illustrative sample preclude large-scale quantitative generalizations.

4. Results

4.1 Morphological Features

The analysis confirms the fundamental morphological contrast between the two systems. English Participle I is formed through the suffix -ing (reading, writing) and Participle II through -ed or suppletive/irregular forms (worked; written, gone). Neither form inflects for gender, number, or case; their grammatical interpretation is entirely context-dependent. This invariance reflects what

Quirk et al. (1985) identify as a defining property of the English verb phrase: grammatical relationships are encoded analytically through word order and auxiliary selection rather than through morphological marking of the participle itself.

Russian participles, by contrast, inflect fully across all four principal categories. Present active participles take suffixes in -ущий/-ющий (читающий 'reading'), past active in -вший (читавший 'having read'), present passive in -емый/-омый (читаемый 'being read'), and past passive in -нный/-тый (прочитанный 'having been read'). Each of these forms then inflects for gender (masculine, feminine, neuter), number (singular, plural), and case (six cases), generating paradigms of up to twenty-four forms per base participial stem (Timberlake, 2004). Additionally, past passive participles carry a short form (e.g., написан / написана / написано / написаны) used predicatively, adding a further inflectional dimension without equivalent in English.

The interaction between verbal aspect and participial formation introduces a further layer of morphological complexity. Imperfective verbs generate both present and past active participial forms, while perfective verbs, which express completed action, generate only past participial forms and do not typically yield present active participles — since the concept of ongoing, incomplete action is incompatible with perfectivity. This systematic aspectual constraint on participial paradigms has no counterpart in English, where -ing and -ed forms are formed from verbs regardless of any comparable aspectual distinction.

4.2 Syntactic Functions

Both languages employ participles in attributive, predicative, and participial clause (adverbial) functions, but the frequency, structural elaboration, and functional scope of these uses differ significantly.

In attributive function, both languages allow participial modification of nouns — English: the broken window; Russian: разбитое окно. Russian, however, permits substantially more complex pre-nominal participial phrases that English would typically render as post-nominal relative clauses. The construction читающий книгу человек ('the man reading a book') concentrates an entire relative clause's worth of predication into a pre-nominal modifier. As Timberlake (2004) observes, this construction type is particularly characteristic of Russian formal written style, where participial density serves as a stylistic marker of register elevation. English has no equivalent construction of comparable productivity.

In predicative function, English participles are central to the tense-aspect-voice system: progressive constructions (she is reading) and passive constructions (the letter was written) are built around participial forms. Russian uses comparable finite auxiliary constructions for tense and voice, but past passive participles in predicative position tend to behave as short-form adjectives (письмо написано 'the letter is written'), which blurs the category boundary between verbal and adjectival predication in ways that have no precise English parallel.

The most diagnostically significant functional divergence concerns adverbial expression. English Participle I covers both adjectival modification and adverbial clause functions: Walking down the street, he saw a friend encodes a simultaneous adverbial relationship through the participial clause. Russian distributes these functions categorically across two separate word classes: participles (причастия) handle adjectival modification exclusively, while a distinct grammatical category — the gerund (деепричастие) — handles adverbial participial functions: Идя по улице, он встретил друга. This categorical separation means that Russian learners of English must map a single English category onto two distinct Russian categories, while English learners of Russian must learn to control a category boundary that does not exist in their first language.

4.3 Stylistic and Register Distribution

Biber et al.'s (1999) corpus-based analysis demonstrates that non-finite constructions, including participial clauses, are substantially more frequent in written than in spoken English, but remain attested and pragmatically unmarked across all registers. English participial clauses contribute to textual cohesion and information packaging without carrying strong stylistic markedness.

The stylistic situation in Russian is considerably more constrained. Extended participial phrases — constructions in which a participle heads a phrase containing its own complements and modifiers — are characteristic of formal written registers: academic prose, official documentation, and literary narrative. In spoken Russian, these constructions are widely avoided as cognitively demanding and stylistically inappropriate; the equivalent relative clause (студент, который читает книгу, 'the student who is reading a book') is strongly preferred over the participial equivalent (студент, читающий книгу). The participial form thus carries register-marking information that the English equivalent does not: choosing it in Russian is a stylistic decision with identifiable social meaning, while the English participial clause is stylistically more neutral.

5. Comparative Summary

The following table provides a feature-by-feature comparison of the principal dimensions analyzed in this study.

Feature	**Participle I / II in English**	**Participles in Russian**
Formation	-ing (Part. I); -ed / irregular (Part. II); invariant	Suffixes: -ущий/-ющий, -вший, -емый, -нный/-тый; fully inflected
Agreement	None — no gender, number, or case inflection	Agrees with head noun in gender, number, and case
Aspect dependency	Not constrained by aspect	Perfective → past participles; imperfective → present participles

Attributive use	Pre- and post-nominal (e.g., a broken window)	Pre-nominal; can replace full relative clauses
Adverbial use	Participial clauses (e.g., Walking down the street...)	Gerunds (деепричастия) used instead; participles adjectival only
Register	Used across all registers including spoken language	Extended forms mainly formal/written; spoken prefers finite clauses
Typological basis	Analytic: meaning through word order and auxiliaries	Synthetic: meaning through morphological inflection

6. Discussion

The results situate the English-Russian participial contrast within the broader typological parameter of analytic versus synthetic grammatical organization. English participles instantiate analytic minimalism: two invariant forms whose grammatical contribution is entirely determined by syntactic context. Russian participles instantiate synthetic maximalism: a system in which morphological form encodes multiple intersecting grammatical dimensions simultaneously — voice, tense, aspect, gender, number, and case. This morphological density produces the characteristic Russian capacity for syntactic compression in attributive contexts: information that English distributes across a relative clause structure is concentrated into a single inflected form and its agreement marking (Comrie, 1981).

The role of aspect in constraining Russian participial paradigms represents a structural dependency without English parallel and constitutes one of the most significant challenges for English-speaking learners of Russian. Mastery of the participial system requires prior mastery of the aspect system — a two-stage acquisition challenge compounded by the fact that English provides no reliable structural cue to the relevant distinction (Forsyth, 1970; Timberlake, 2004). Conversely, the functional multi-valence of English Participle I — its capacity to serve both adjectival and adverbial functions that Russian distributes categorically — creates ambiguity challenges for Russian learners and requires attention in both pedagogical and translation contexts.

The stylistic asymmetry between the two systems has important applied consequences. Russian learners of English who produce participial constructions in inappropriate spoken contexts may generate utterances that are grammatically well-formed but stylistically marked as formal or written. English learners of Russian who produce extended participial phrases in conversation may similarly create an impression of register mismatch. Pedagogical approaches must therefore address not only the formal properties of participial constructions but their register distribution and the stylistic inferences that their deployment triggers in each language (Biber et al., 1999; Swan, 2005).

From a translation perspective, the absence of one-to-one correspondence between the two systems necessitates structural transformation rather than form-to-form substitution. Russian participial modifiers are regularly rendered as English relative clauses; English participial adverbial clauses may correspond to Russian gerundial constructions, finite subordinate clauses, or coordinate structures depending on the semantic relationship expressed. Translators must command both the structural options available in each language and the register implications of the choices they make (Quirk et al., 1985).

7. Conclusion

This study has provided a systematic comparative analysis of participial systems in English and Russian across morphological, syntactic, and stylistic dimensions. The findings confirm that while participles in both languages serve comparable core grammatical functions, their structural realization diverges substantially in ways that reflect the fundamental typological difference between analytic and synthetic language organization. English participles are morphologically invariant and functionally expansive, covering both adjectival and adverbial domains within a two-form system; Russian participles are morphologically complex and stylistically marked, operating within a system that distributes adjectival and adverbial non-finite functions across categorically distinct word classes.

These differences carry significant implications for contrastive linguistics, second language acquisition, and translation practice. A thorough comparative account of participial systems must engage not only with morphological and syntactic description but with the register constraints, stylistic conventions, and typological underpinnings that govern participial usage in each language. Future research could productively extend this analysis through large-scale corpus investigation of participial frequency and distribution, and through acquisition studies examining how learners of each language negotiate the structural and stylistic challenges identified in this analysis.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: L.G.; Methodology: L.G.; Investigation: L.G.; Writing – original draft: L.G.; Writing – review & editing: L.G.

References

Alisoy, H. (2023). Reductions in English grammar: Implications for ESL learning. English and Translation Chair, Nakhchivan State University.

Alisoy, H. (2024). Exploring language acquisition: The role of native language interference in ESL learners. Journal of Azerbaijan Language and Education Studies, 1(1), 50–66.

Aslanova, U. (2026). Methods of teaching German at the A1 level to students with heterogeneous proficiency levels in higher education institutions. Porta Universorum, 2(3), 43–56.

Babayev, J. (2024). Characteristics of gerund, Participle I and verbal noun. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 1(2), 124–129.

Biber, D., Johansson, S., Leech, G., Conrad, S., & Finegan, E. (1999). Longman grammar of spoken and written English. Longman.

Comrie, B. (1981). Language universals and linguistic typology: Syntax and morphology. University of Chicago Press.

Forsyth, J. (1970). A grammar of aspect: Usage and meaning in the Russian verb. Cambridge University Press.

Huseyn, Z. I., & Babayev, J. (2025). Effective methods of teaching Azerbaijani to foreign students. Porta Universorum, 1(9), 118–126.

James, C. (1980). Contrastive analysis. Longman.

Javid, B. (2018). Hit the target through English grammar. Ajami Publishing-Polygraph Association.

Javid, B. (2023). Grammatical aspects of translation in English and Azerbaijani. Research Retrieval and Academic Letters, 4.

Quirk, R., Greenbaum, S., Leech, G., & Svartvik, J. (1985). A comprehensive grammar of the English language. Longman.

Swan, M. (2005). Practical English usage (3rd ed.). Oxford University Press.

Timberlake, A. (2004). A reference grammar of Russian. Cambridge University Press.

Received: 11 March 2026
Accepted: 15 April 2026
Published: 20 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Real Objects, Real Language: A Study of Realia in Second Language Acquisition

[1] Khadija Ahmadova
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602014

Abstract. *This study examines the pedagogical role of realia — authentic, tangible objects and materials — in second language acquisition (SLA). Realia-based instruction has been recognized as a powerful approach that connects classroom learning with real-world language use, yet systematic empirical investigation of its measurable effects remains limited. The present research investigates how realia-based instruction influences vocabulary retention, communicative competence, and learner motivation among undergraduate foreign language students. A quasi-experimental mixed-methods design was employed, comparing an experimental group receiving realia-based instruction with a control group receiving traditional textbook-based instruction over an eight-week period. Data were collected through pre- and post-tests, speaking assessments, Likert-scale questionnaires, classroom observations, and a teacher reflective journal. The findings reveal that students in the experimental group demonstrated significantly higher vocabulary retention gains (25% vs. 12%), superior communicative performance, and markedly higher levels of motivation and classroom engagement. Realia also contributed to improved cultural awareness and more spontaneous, contextually appropriate language use. The results are interpreted through the theoretical frameworks of Krashen's Input Hypothesis, Vygotsky's Sociocultural Theory, Depth of Processing Theory, and Self-Determination Theory. The study contributes to the growing literature on authentic materials in SLA and provides practical implications for educators seeking to develop more dynamic, learner-centred language learning environments.*

Keywords: *realia, second language acquisition, authentic materials, vocabulary retention, communicative competence, learner motivation, language pedagogy*

1. Introduction

Second language acquisition (SLA) is a multifaceted process shaped by cognitive, social, and cultural factors. Over the past decades, scholars have emphasized that language learning is most effective when it occurs in meaningful, context-rich environments rather than through isolated grammatical drills. Traditional approaches rooted in grammar-translation or structural methods often prioritize form over use, which may hinder learners' ability to communicate effectively in real-life situations (Brown, 2007). In contrast, communicative and task-based approaches stress

[1] Ahmadova, K. MA Student, Foreign Language Teaching (English), Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: xediceahmedova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-8842-7469

the importance of interaction, authenticity, and purposeful language use as central components of successful language acquisition (Nunan, 2004; Richards, 2006).

One of the key concepts supporting this shift toward meaningful learning is the use of authentic materials, commonly referred to as realia. Realia encompasses real-world objects and texts — such as menus, transport tickets, advertisements, newspapers, and everyday items — that are not originally designed for pedagogical purposes but are introduced into the classroom to facilitate learning. According to Gilmore (2007), authentic materials expose learners to genuine language use, including natural lexical choices, discourse patterns, and cultural nuances that are often absent from simplified textbook materials. This exposure is essential for developing not only linguistic competence but also pragmatic and sociocultural competence.

The theoretical foundations for using realia in SLA can be linked to multiple complementary frameworks. Krashen's (1985) Input Hypothesis posits that learners acquire language most effectively when exposed to comprehensible input slightly above their current proficiency level; realia provides such input in a contextualized and meaningful form. Vygotsky's (1978) Sociocultural Theory emphasizes the role of social interaction and cultural tools in learning — from this perspective, realia functions as a mediating artifact that supports collaborative learning and scaffolding within the zone of proximal development. Additionally, cognitive theories of multimodal and experiential learning highlight the importance of sensory engagement: when learners interact with tangible objects, they activate multiple sensory channels that can enhance memory retention and deepen understanding (Tomlinson, 2011). Depth of Processing Theory further suggests that information encountered through rich, meaningful engagement is more durably retained than information processed through shallow, decontextualized exposure (Craik & Lockhart, 1972).

Despite the theoretical appeal and practical popularity of realia-based instruction, systematic empirical investigation of its measurable effects on vocabulary retention, communicative competence, and learner motivation remains limited. The present study seeks to address this gap through a controlled quasi-experimental investigation in a university foreign language classroom, combining quantitative measurement of learning outcomes with qualitative analysis of learner engagement and attitudes.

2. Methodology

2.1 Research Design

This study adopted a quasi-experimental mixed-methods design integrating both quantitative and qualitative approaches to enable comprehensive evaluation of realia-based instruction. The design included pre-test and post-test comparisons between an experimental group and a control group, allowing for the measurement of learning gains over time. The quantitative component focused on statistical differences in vocabulary acquisition and communicative performance, while the qualitative component explored learner perceptions, engagement, and classroom dynamics. Triangulation of data sources enhanced the validity and reliability of the findings.

2.2 Participants and Setting

A total of 60 undergraduate students enrolled in an intermediate-level foreign language course at a university participated in the study. Participants' ages ranged from 18 to 22, and they shared relatively similar linguistic backgrounds and prior exposure to the target language. Participants were randomly assigned to the experimental group (n = 30) and the control group (n = 30). Prior to the intervention, a placement test was administered to verify proficiency homogeneity across both groups.

2.3 Instructional Materials and Procedure

The instructional content for both groups was based on identical curriculum objectives covering everyday communication topics including shopping, travel, and social interaction (Babayev, 2021). The experimental group received realia-based instruction using authentic materials — restaurant menus, transport tickets, brochures, currency, clothing items, packaging, and cultural artifacts — to simulate real-world communicative situations. The control group used textbook-based materials, worksheets, and scripted dialogues presenting language in a structured but less contextualized format. All sessions were conducted by the same teacher to minimize variability. The study ran for eight weeks with three 60-minute sessions per week, each following a structured warm-up, presentation, practice, and production sequence. Lesson plans were standardized across both groups, differing only in the type of materials used.

2.4 Data Collection and Analysis

Multiple instruments were used to collect data. Vocabulary retention was measured through standardized pre- and post-tests including multiple-choice, matching, and short-answer items. Communicative competence was assessed through role-play tasks and oral interviews evaluated for fluency, accuracy, pronunciation, and pragmatic appropriateness by two independent raters. A Likert-scale questionnaire measured learner motivation, attitudes, and perceived usefulness of instructional materials. Structured classroom observations recorded student participation, interaction patterns, and engagement levels, and the instructor maintained a reflective journal documenting classroom dynamics throughout the intervention. Quantitative data were analyzed using paired-sample and independent-sample t-tests with effect size calculations. Qualitative data from questionnaires, observations, and the journal were analyzed using thematic analysis. Inter-rater reliability for speaking assessments was established through consensus scoring, and internal validity was maintained by keeping all variables constant except the instructional material type.

3. Results

3.1 Vocabulary Retention

The quantitative analysis revealed a statistically significant difference in vocabulary acquisition between the two groups ($p < 0.05$). While both groups demonstrated pre-to-post-test improvement, gains in the realia-based experimental group were substantially higher: experimental group learners improved their vocabulary scores by an average of 25%, compared to 12% in the control group. These findings align with Gilmore's (2007) argument that authentic materials provide richer linguistic environments that facilitate deeper processing of vocabulary, and with Tomlinson's (2011) contention that exposure to real-life language increases long-term retention through cognitive engagement and emotional involvement. The association between words and tangible objects appears to create additional memory pathways that strengthen retention.

3.2 Communicative Competence

Speaking assessment results demonstrated that students in the experimental group outperformed those in the control group across all evaluated dimensions: fluency, accuracy, and pragmatic appropriateness. Realia-group learners were more capable of initiating and sustaining conversations and of responding appropriately in context-specific situations. This outcome is consistent with the principles of communicative language teaching outlined by Richards (2006), which emphasize authentic interaction in developing functional language skills, and with Nunan's (2004) task-based learning framework, where real-world materials encourage more spontaneous and meaningful language production. The presence of realia created situational authenticity that enabled learners to simulate real-life communication more effectively than textbook prompts permitted.

3.3 Learner Motivation and Attitudes

Questionnaire data indicated significantly higher motivation and more positive attitudes among experimental group participants. Approximately 85% of the realia group reported lessons as engaging and relevant to their lives, compared to 60% in the control group. Learners also expressed greater confidence in their ability to use the target language outside the classroom. These findings are consistent with Self-Determination Theory (Deci & Ryan, 2000), which holds that intrinsic motivation is enhanced when learners experience autonomy, perceived competence, and relatedness — all of which realia-based tasks promote by making learning interactive and personally meaningful. Brown (2007) similarly emphasizes the centrality of affective variables in successful language acquisition.

3.4 Classroom Engagement and Interaction

Qualitative observations revealed substantially increased student participation and peer interaction in the experimental group. Learners engaged more frequently in collaborative tasks, spontaneous language use, and self-initiated questioning. Drawing on Vygotsky's (1978) Sociocultural Theory, these findings can be interpreted as evidence that realia functioned as a mediating tool facilitating collaborative meaning-making and scaffolding within the zone of proximal development. The interactive affordances of authentic objects prompted learners to negotiate meaning together, co-construct contextual knowledge, and support each other's learning in ways that scripted textbook tasks did not elicit comparably.

4. Discussion

The findings of this study provide robust empirical support for the pedagogical value of realia in SLA across cognitive, communicative, and affective dimensions. The vocabulary retention advantage observed in the experimental group is explicable through Depth of Processing Theory (Craik & Lockhart, 1972): realia embeds vocabulary within real-life situations, requiring learners to infer meaning through context, visual association, and prior knowledge, thereby generating the deeper semantic processing associated with more durable retention. The tactile and visual properties of physical objects create multiple memory pathways simultaneously, reinforcing lexical encoding in ways that decontextualized word-list study cannot.

The improvement in communicative competence reflects the role of realia in fostering functional language use. Realia-based tasks simulate authentic communicative scenarios that require learners to negotiate meaning, interpret contextual cues, and respond with pragmatic appropriateness — capabilities that correspond to Hymes's (1972) expanded conception of communicative competence extending beyond grammatical knowledge to include sociolinguistic and pragmatic dimensions. The findings suggest that regular interaction with authentic materials equips learners to transfer classroom knowledge to real-world communication more effectively than textbook-based instruction alone.

From a sociocultural perspective, the increased collaborative interaction observed in the experimental group supports Vygotsky's (1978) contention that learning is mediated through cultural artifacts and social engagement. Realia functions as precisely such an artifact: it provides a shared reference point around which collaborative dialogue can be organized, meaning co-constructed, and scaffolded support provided. This social dimension of realia use extends its pedagogical value beyond vocabulary and grammar into the development of communicative confidence and interpersonal language skills.

The motivation findings align with Self-Determination Theory's core proposition that intrinsic motivation depends on the satisfaction of basic psychological needs for autonomy, competence, and relatedness (Deci & Ryan, 2000). Realia-based tasks address all three needs: they give learners agency in meaning-making, provide tangible evidence of growing competence through successful task completion, and create the social relatedness generated by collaborative interaction around shared authentic objects. When learners perceive learning tasks as relevant to their lives outside the classroom, they invest more effort and demonstrate greater persistence — outcomes clearly evidenced in the experimental group data.

Several practical challenges associated with realia use merit acknowledgement. Material selection and preparation require time and institutional support. Cultural interpretation may vary across learner backgrounds, necessitating pre-task contextualization by the teacher. The effectiveness of realia may also vary across proficiency levels: beginner learners may require more structured scaffolding, while advanced learners may benefit from more open-ended authentic tasks. The growing availability of digital technologies offers complementary opportunities: virtual realia — online videos, interactive simulations, and digital cultural artifacts — can extend the range of authentic language input available and accommodate diverse learning contexts where physical realia may be difficult to source.

5. Conclusion

This study has demonstrated that realia-based instruction significantly enhances multiple dimensions of second language acquisition: vocabulary retention, communicative competence, learner motivation, and classroom engagement. By situating language within authentic, tangible contexts, realia activates the cognitive, affective, and social processes that research consistently associates with deep and durable learning. The experimental group's superior performance across all measured outcomes provides compelling evidence for the systematic integration of authentic materials into language instruction.

The results suggest that educators should move beyond textbook-centred instruction toward more dynamic, learner-centred methodologies that reflect the communicative realities learners will encounter outside the classroom. While challenges of preparation, material selection, and cultural contextualization require attention, these are manageable through planning, resource sharing, and the strategic incorporation of digital realia. Future research should investigate the long-term retention effects of realia-based instruction, its differential effectiveness across proficiency levels and age groups, and the pedagogical potential of hybrid approaches combining physical and virtual authentic materials. Realia is not a peripheral supplementary resource but a substantive pedagogical instrument with the capacity to transform the quality of language learning experiences.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: K.A.; Methodology: K.A.; Investigation: K.A.; Data collection: K.A.; Writing – original draft: K.A.; Writing – review & editing: K.A.

References

Alisoy, H. (2025). ESL teaching methods and approaches: Essential strategies for encouraging effective language acquisition. Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities, 1(1), 3–11.

Alisoy, H. (2025). Machine learning approaches for automated vocabulary acquisition in ESL classrooms. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(3), 97–118.

Babayev, J. (2021). The role of instructional materials in language learning. Elmi Xəbərlər: Humanitar Elmlər Seriyası, 2, 29–35.

Babayev, J. (2025). Application of social platforms in language learning. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(3), 141–148.

Brown, H. D. (2007). Principles of language learning and teaching (5th ed.). Pearson Education.

Craik, F. I. M., & Lockhart, R. S. (1972). Levels of processing: A framework for memory research. Journal of Verbal Learning and Verbal Behavior, 11(6), 671–684. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-5371(72)80001-X

Deci, E. L., & Ryan, R. M. (2000). The 'what' and 'why' of goal pursuits: Human needs and the self-determination of behavior. Psychological Inquiry, 11(4), 227–268. https://doi.org/10.1207/S15327965PLI1104_01

Gilmore, A. (2007). Authentic materials and authenticity in foreign language learning. Language Teaching, 40(2), 97–118. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0261444807004144

Huseyn, Z. I., & Babayev, J. (2025). Effective methods of teaching Azerbaijani to foreign students. Porta Universorum, 1(9), 118–126.

Hymes, D. (1972). On communicative competence. In J. B. Pride & J. Holmes (Eds.), Sociolinguistics: Selected readings (pp. 269–293). Penguin.

Javid, B., & Sadikhova, S. (2025). Culturonyms in food and drink: How language reflects cultural identity through cuisine. In Proceedings of the 10th International Scientific Conference «Modern Scientific Technology» (p. 346). Stockholm, Sweden.

Krashen, S. D. (1985). The input hypothesis: Issues and implications. Longman.

Nunan, D. (2004). Task-based language teaching. Cambridge University Press.

Richards, J. C. (2006). Communicative language teaching today. Cambridge University Press.

Sadikhova, S. (2025). Culturonyms in fashion discourse: A linguistic and cultural perspective. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(4), 319–331.

Sadikhova, S. (2026). Naming culture: The linguistic power of culturonyms. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 3(2), 66–72.

Tomlinson, B. (2011). Materials development in language teaching (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Received: 20 March 2026
Accepted: 24 April 2026
Published: 25 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Linguistic Kinship and Lexical Divergence: German-English Shared Vocabulary, Borrowing Patterns, and the Mechanisms of Cross-Linguistic Transfer

[1] **Gunel Memmedova**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602015

Abstract. *English and German, as co-descendants of the Proto-Germanic branch of the Indo-European language family, share a substantial stratum of common vocabulary rooted in their shared genealogical heritage. This article investigates the multi-layered lexical relationship between the two languages through three interconnected analytical dimensions: the identification and classification of cognate vocabulary deriving from their common Proto-Germanic ancestor; the systematic analysis of German loanwords in English and English loanwords in German as distinct borrowing streams; and the examination of the sociohistorical, cultural, and ideological mechanisms that have governed the trajectory of cross-linguistic lexical transfer across different historical periods. Drawing on historical linguistics, contact linguistics, and corpus-based lexicography, the study demonstrates that the German-English lexical relationship is neither symmetrical nor static but is structured by asymmetrical flows of cultural prestige, domain-specific borrowing, and degrees of phonological and orthographic assimilation. The analysis identifies academic, scientific, philosophical, and psychological discourse as particularly dense borrowing domains in English, while contemporary English loanwords into German are concentrated in digital technology, popular culture, and commerce. The article further examines the theoretical implications of German-English lexical contact for models of language change, the role of culturonyms in cross-cultural meaning transfer, and the pedagogical consequences of shared vocabulary for language learners navigating the two systems simultaneously.*

Keywords: *German-English lexical relations, Proto-Germanic cognates, loanwords, language contact, borrowing, historical linguistics, Anglicisms, Germanisms, culturonyms*

1. Introduction

English and German occupy a uniquely privileged position in the history of the Germanic languages: as the two most widely spoken members of the West Germanic branch of Proto-Indo-European, they share a genealogical heritage of extraordinary depth and a history of sustained lexical contact whose effects are visible at every level of both vocabularies. Their common ancestry can be traced to the Proto-Germanic spoken in Scandinavia and northern Europe during

[1] Memmedova, G. Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: memmedova.gunel2230@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0007-1800-2353

the first millennium BCE, and this shared origin manifests in an extensive stratum of cognate vocabulary that constitutes the irreducible core of both languages' lexicons (Ringe, 2006). Yet the two languages have diverged dramatically over fifteen centuries of separate development — shaped by the Norman Conquest that introduced French and Latin into English at the expense of its Germanic heritage, by the Renaissance that enriched both vocabularies with classical borrowings, and by the age of global industrialization and colonialism that established different geopolitical trajectories for each language (Baugh & Cable, 2013).

The result of these parallel and intersecting histories is a lexical relationship of remarkable complexity: one characterized simultaneously by deep genealogical kinship and by substantial structural, phonological, and semantic divergence. English and German share core vocabulary items — words for body parts, basic actions, kinship relations, natural phenomena — that descend from identical Proto-Germanic roots yet have diverged in pronunciation, morphological form, and sometimes meaning in ways that render them cognate but not identical. Alongside this inherited shared stratum, both languages have engaged in substantial mutual borrowing across different historical periods, driven by the prestige of German academic and scientific culture in the nineteenth century, the global dominance of English in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries, and the ongoing contact between the two languages through international scholarship, popular culture, and digital communication (Filipovic & Hawkins, 2013).

This article investigates the German-English lexical relationship through three interconnected analytical dimensions. The first concerns the nature and extent of shared vocabulary deriving from common Proto-Germanic ancestry — the cognate stratum that represents both languages' shared linguistic inheritance. The second concerns the historical and contemporary patterns of lexical borrowing in both directions — German loanwords (Germanisms) in English and English loanwords (Anglicisms) in German — with attention to the domains, mechanisms, and degrees of integration that characterize each borrowing stream. The third concerns the theoretical and pedagogical implications of this lexical relationship: what it reveals about the mechanisms of language change and contact, and what it means for learners navigating the two languages simultaneously. By drawing on historical linguistics, contact linguistics, corpus-based lexicography, and culturonym theory, the study aims to provide the most comprehensive account to date of the German-English lexical relationship in its full historical and structural dimensions.

2. Theoretical Framework

2.1 Historical Linguistics and the Comparative Method

The theoretical foundation of this study rests on the comparative method in historical linguistics, which reconstructs ancestral linguistic states by identifying systematic sound correspondences between related languages and applying Grimm's Law and its subsequent refinements to trace the phonological pathways through which Proto-Germanic words evolved into their modern English and German descendants (Ringe, 2006). Grimm's Law — the systematic consonant shift that distinguishes Germanic languages from other Indo-European branches — provides the primary framework for identifying true cognates and distinguishing them from chance resemblances or later borrowings. The subsequent High German Consonant Shift, which affected Old High German but not Old English, is the principal mechanism responsible for the systematic phonological divergences between cognate pairs in the two languages, such as English water versus German Wasser, English make versus German machen, and English open versus German offen (Waterman, 1991).

The distinction between inherited vocabulary and borrowed vocabulary is conceptually fundamental but practically complex, particularly in a language like English whose history involves stratification through multiple layers of contact — Old Norse, Norman French, Medieval Latin, Renaissance Latin and Greek, and the more recent borrowing from German and other modern languages (Baugh & Cable, 2013). The theoretical tools of contact linguistics, particularly Thomason and Kaufman's (1988) influential typology of language contact phenomena, provide the framework for analyzing the borrowing processes that have introduced German words into English and English words into German, including the distinctions between cultural borrowing (the importation of vocabulary alongside the cultural practices or concepts it denotes) and structural borrowing (the importation of grammatical patterns), and between loanwords, calques, and semantic loans.

2.2 Culturonyms and Cross-Linguistic Meaning Transfer

A particularly productive theoretical lens for analyzing a subset of German-English borrowings is provided by culturonym theory — the study of lexical units that encode culturally specific concepts, practices, or value systems that resist direct translation into languages without the relevant cultural framework (Wierzbicka, 1997). Several of the most widely discussed German loanwords in English — Schadenfreude, Weltanschauung, Zeitgeist, Angst, Gemütlichkeit — function precisely as culturonyms: they have been borrowed not because English lacked a word for the relevant concept but because the German term encoded the concept with a cultural specificity and semantic density that no available English expression could replicate (Sadikhova, 2025). The mechanism of culturonym borrowing — the adoption of a foreign term precisely because its untranslatability preserves culturally specific meaning — is theoretically distinct from ordinary lexical borrowing and demands separate analytical treatment. As Sadikhova (2025) argues in her analysis of culturonyms in contemporary discourse, such terms function not merely as labels but as compact carriers of cultural identity and worldview, and their migration across language boundaries inevitably involves negotiation between the cultural frameworks of source and target language.

2.3 Language Contact and Borrowing Asymmetries

Contact linguistics has established that lexical borrowing between languages is never symmetrical but reflects asymmetries of cultural prestige, institutional power, and communicative need at specific historical moments (Thomason & Kaufman, 1988; Filipovic & Hawkins, 2013). The directionality and intensity of borrowing between German and English have reversed dramatically between the nineteenth century — when German held unparalleled prestige as the language of science, philosophy, and classical scholarship — and the late twentieth and twenty-first centuries, when English as a global lingua franca has established itself as the default source of new vocabulary across virtually all professional and popular domains (Alisoy, 2025; Crystal, 2003). Understanding these asymmetries requires attention not only to the linguistic mechanisms of borrowing but to the sociohistorical conditions — political, institutional, and ideological — that create the conditions of prestige differential in which borrowing occurs (Babayev, 2025).

3. Methodology

This study employs a qualitative, historical-comparative, and corpus-informed methodology. The analysis of Proto-Germanic cognates draws on established comparative reconstructions in Germanic historical linguistics, particularly Ringe (2006) and Waterman (1991), supplemented by etymological data from the Oxford English Dictionary and the Duden Herkunftswörterbuch. The analysis of German loanwords in English draws on historical lexicographic sources including the Oxford English Dictionary's dating of first attestation, supplemented by frequency data from the Corpus of Historical American English (COHA) and the British National Corpus (BNC) to identify patterns of chronological distribution and domain concentration. The analysis of Anglicisms in German draws on the Anglizismenwörterbuch (Carstensen & Busse, 1993–1996) and subsequent corpus-based studies of English influence on contemporary German. The study proceeds in four analytical stages: (1) identification and classification of the Proto-Germanic cognate stratum; (2) historical and synchronic analysis of German loanwords in English by domain and period; (3) analysis of English loanwords in German with attention to contemporary digital and popular culture vocabulary; and (4) synthesis of the theoretical and pedagogical implications.

4. Proto-Germanic Cognates: The Shared Ancestral Stratum

4.1 The Scope and Nature of Cognate Vocabulary

The most fundamental dimension of the German-English lexical relationship is the extensive stratum of vocabulary that both languages inherited from their common Proto-Germanic ancestor. This inherited vocabulary constitutes the irreducible core of both languages' basic lexicons: it encompasses vocabulary for the human body (English hand / German Hand, English foot / German Fuß, English heart / German Herz), for kinship relations (English father / German Vater, English mother / German Mutter, English brother / German Bruder), for basic natural phenomena (English water / German Wasser, English fire / German Feuer, English wind / German Wind), for fundamental actions (English come / German kommen, English go / German gehen, English give / German geben), and for basic qualities (English long / German lang, English old / German alt, English good / German gut) (Ringe, 2006; Waterman, 1991).

The phonological correspondences between English and German cognates are not random but follow the systematic patterns established by Grimm's Law and the subsequent High German Consonant Shift. Grimm's Law established the characteristic consonant inventory of all Germanic languages relative to other Indo-European branches; the High German Consonant Shift further transformed the stop consonants of Proto-Germanic in the dialects that would become German, while Old English remained unaffected. The result is a set of predictable correspondences: English /p/ corresponds to German /pf/ or /ff/ (English open / German offen, English ship / German Schiff), English /t/ corresponds to German /ss/ or /z/ (English water / German Wasser, English eat / German essen), and English /k/ corresponds to German /ch/ or /ck/ (English make / German machen, English break / German brechen). These regular correspondences allow linguists to identify true cognates systematically and to distinguish inherited shared vocabulary from later borrowings (Waterman, 1991).

4.2 Semantic Divergence Among Cognates: False Friends and Semantic Drift

While the phonological correspondences between English and German cognates are systematic, their semantic trajectories have frequently diverged in ways that complicate cross-linguistic comprehension. The phenomenon of false friends — cognate pairs whose phonological similarity masks semantic divergence — is particularly well-documented in English-German comparisons and constitutes a significant source of interference for language learners in both directions (James, 1980). Classic examples include English gift (a present) versus German Gift (poison); English brave (courageous) versus German brav (well-behaved); English become (to come to be) versus German bekommen (to receive); and English sensible (rational, reasonable) versus German sensibel (sensitive, emotionally responsive). These semantic divergences arise through independent processes of semantic narrowing, broadening, amelioration, and pejoration that have operated differently in the two languages' separate historical contexts (Stern, 1931).

Semantic drift among cognates is not merely a lexicographic curiosity but a theoretical window into the mechanisms of language change. The same inherited lexical item, exposed to different social, cultural, and discursive pressures in its respective language environment, undergoes different semantic trajectories — revealing that meaning is not an intrinsic property of linguistic forms but a product of their use within specific cultural and communicative contexts (Traugott & Dasher, 2002). The systematic comparison of English-German cognate pairs and their semantic histories therefore contributes not only to contrastive lexicology but to the broader theoretical understanding of semantic change.

5. German Loanwords in English: Germanisms

5.1 Historical Overview and Periodization

The history of German loanword borrowing into English can be periodized into four principal phases, each reflecting the particular configuration of cultural, political, and intellectual prestige at the relevant moment. The earliest phase, spanning the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, is characterized by borrowings associated with mining and metallurgy — domains in which German technological expertise was unrivalled in Europe. Words such as cobalt (from Kobold, a mischievous spirit believed by miners to contaminate ore), nickel (from Nickel, an abbreviation of Kupfernickel, 'copper demon'), zinc (from Zink), and quartz (from Quarz) entered English through the specialized vocabulary of German-speaking miners and metallurgists (Baugh & Cable, 2013). The second phase, in the eighteenth century, brought borrowings connected to military affairs — reflecting Prussia's emergence as a major European military power — including words such as plunder (from plündern), saber (from Säbel), and shako (from Tschako).

The most substantial and intellectually consequential phase of German borrowing into English occurred in the nineteenth century, driven by the unparalleled prestige of German-language science, philosophy, and scholarship. During this period, German universities were the premier sites of advanced research in chemistry, physics, medicine, philosophy, and philology, and the resulting flow of German-origin vocabulary into English academic and scientific discourse was enormous (Cannon, 1987). In chemistry alone, the English vocabulary was enriched by German-derived terms including protein (from Protein), polymer (from Polymer), paraffin (from Paraffin), and numerous others. Psychology and psychiatry imported Freudian and post-Freudian vocabulary — including ego, id, libido, angst, neurosis, and gestalt — either directly from German or through the German-mediated transmission of classical concepts. Philosophy contributed weltanschauung, zeitgeist, leitmotiv, and doppelganger. The humanities and social sciences absorbed kindergarten, seminar, and wanderlust, among many others.

The fourth phase, extending from the twentieth century to the present, has been shaped by a combination of cultural and intellectual factors. The emigration of German-speaking scholars to Britain and America following the rise of National Socialism transferred significant intellectual capital and associated vocabulary to the anglophone world, while the ongoing prestige of German philosophical, musicological, and psychoanalytic traditions has sustained the borrowing of culturally dense German terms — including schadenfreude, weltschmerz, realpolitik, and gemütlichkeit — as culturonyms encoding concepts for which English lacks adequate near-equivalents (Sadikhova, 2025).

5.2 Domain Analysis and Degrees of Integration

The analysis of German loanwords in English reveals strong domain concentration: the most densely represented fields are psychology and psychiatry, philosophy, music, mining and chemistry, military affairs, and cultural discourse. This domain pattern reflects the epistemological and cultural domains in which German intellectual culture exercised the greatest international prestige and in which the concepts developed were genuinely novel rather than duplicative of existing English vocabulary (Cannon, 1987). The degree of phonological and orthographic integration of German loanwords into English varies considerably. Fully integrated borrowings —

such as kindergarten, rucksack, and nickel — have undergone anglicized pronunciation and are treated as ordinary English words by contemporary speakers who are typically unaware of their German origin. Partially integrated borrowings — such as schadenfreude and zeitgeist — retain German spelling but are pronounced with approximated English phonology. Unintegrated borrowings — such as weltanschauung — retain German capitalization, spelling, and pronunciation and function as marked foreign terms even in professional discourse.

The following table presents a representative selection of German loanwords in English, organized by domain and approximate period of entry.

German Source	English Borrowing	Domain	Period of Entry
Kindergarten	kindergarten	Education	19th century
Rucksack	rucksack	Material culture	19th century
Zeitgeist	zeitgeist	Philosophy/culture	19th century
Angst	angst	Psychology	Early 20th century
Schadenfreude	schadenfreude	Psychology/emotion	Late 20th century
Wanderlust	wanderlust	Travel/culture	19th century
Doppelgänger	doppelganger	Literature/psychology	19th century
Gestalt	gestalt	Psychology	Early 20th century
Leitmotiv	leitmotif/leitmotiv	Music/literature	Late 19th century
Wunderkind	wunderkind	General/education	Late 19th century

6. English Loanwords in German: Anglicisms

6.1 The Anglicism Wave and Its Sociolinguistic Context

The flow of borrowing between German and English reversed decisively in the second half of the twentieth century, as the global dominance of American English — in science, technology, popular culture, and international commerce — established English as the de facto source language for new vocabulary in virtually all modern domains. The penetration of English loanwords into

German, collectively designated Anglicismen (Anglicisms), has been one of the most extensively documented phenomena in contemporary German linguistics (Carstensen & Busse, 1993–1996; Busse & Görlach, 2002). The pace of Anglicism adoption accelerated dramatically from the 1990s onward, driven by the digitization of communication, the globalization of youth culture, and the increasing use of English as the working language of multinational corporations headquartered in or trading with German-speaking countries (Alisoy, 2025).

The domain distribution of contemporary Anglicisms in German is strikingly concentrated in digital technology and computing (downloaden, updaten, chatten, googeln, spammen), popular culture and entertainment (der Film, der Star, das Selfie, der Thriller, das Streaming), business and commerce (das Meeting, das Feedback, der Manager, das Branding, das Networking), and sport and leisure (der Trainer, das Jogging, das Surfing, der Penalty). This concentration reflects precisely those domains in which American English culture exercises the greatest global influence and in which new concepts, practices, and technologies originate predominantly in anglophone contexts before diffusing globally (Busse & Görlach, 2002). The linguistic adaptation of English borrowings into German follows predictable patterns: nouns receive obligatory grammatical gender assignment (das Internet, der Computer, die App), verbs are adapted to German morphological patterns (googeln, downloaden), and many borrowed nouns can be compounded with native German elements following German compounding conventions (the Computermaus, die Smartphone-Hülle).

6.2 The Purism Debate and Language Policy

The substantial influx of English vocabulary into German has generated sustained public and institutional debate about linguistic purism and the integrity of the German language. The Verein Deutsche Sprache (Society for the German Language), founded in 1997, has campaigned actively against what it terms the Anglicization of German, proposing native German substitutes for English borrowings — Handy for mobile phone (which is itself a pseudo-Anglicism, as English speakers do not use the word 'handy' to mean mobile phone), Rechner for Computer, and Netz for Internet — with varying degrees of popular acceptance (Durrell, 2004). The language policy debate reflects broader tensions between linguistic nationalism and the pragmatic accommodation to global communicative norms that characterizes most contemporary language communities. As contact linguistics research has consistently demonstrated, these purist interventions have limited effect on the actual trajectory of language change, which is driven by communicative need, prestige, and the social dynamics of language use rather than by institutional prescription (Thomason & Kaufman, 1988).

7. Pedagogical Implications

The German-English lexical relationship has substantial implications for language pedagogy, particularly in contexts where learners are acquiring one of these languages with prior knowledge of the other. The extensive shared cognate stratum constitutes a powerful positive transfer resource:

learners of German with English L1 can exploit systematic sound correspondences — applying Grimm's Law in reverse, as it were — to identify probable German cognates for known English words, substantially accelerating vocabulary acquisition in both directions (James, 1980). Pedagogical approaches that make these correspondences explicit — teaching learners to recognize that English words with initial /p/, /t/, or /k/ often have German cognates with /pf/, /ss/tz, or /ch/ respectively — can dramatically reduce the cognitive load associated with Germanic vocabulary acquisition.

At the same time, the false friends documented in the cognate stratum constitute a persistent source of negative transfer that systematic pedagogical attention can mitigate. Explicit instruction in the most common false cognate pairs, grounded in the historical mechanisms of semantic divergence, equips learners to navigate the interference zone between the two languages more confidently (Filipovic & Hawkins, 2013). For advanced learners, attention to the culturonym layer of German-English borrowing — the semantically dense German terms that have been adopted into English precisely because they encode concepts without adequate native-language equivalents — provides valuable insight into both the cross-linguistic mechanisms of meaning transfer and the cultural knowledge systems that each language encodes (Sadikhova, 2025; Wierzbicka, 1997). As Babayev (2025) argues in his analysis of cross-cultural terminology, understanding the cultural embeddedness of such terms is essential for genuinely competent use, as opposed to superficial familiarity with their denotative content.

8. Conclusion

This article has demonstrated that the lexical relationship between German and English constitutes one of the most richly documented and theoretically productive instances of cross-linguistic kinship and contact in the history of the European languages. The two languages share an extensive Proto-Germanic cognate stratum whose systematic phonological correspondences, despite centuries of independent development, remain identifiable through the regular application of Grimm's Law and the High German Consonant Shift. Alongside this inherited vocabulary, the two languages have engaged in sustained mutual borrowing across different historical periods — German to English primarily in the domains of nineteenth-century science, philosophy, psychology, and cultural discourse; English to German predominantly in the domains of twentieth and twenty-first century digital technology, popular culture, and global commerce.

The directionality and intensity of these borrowing flows reflects the asymmetrical distribution of cultural prestige and epistemic authority at different historical moments, confirming contact linguistics' fundamental insight that borrowing is socially and ideologically structured rather than linguistically determined. The analysis of culturonyms — German terms borrowed into English precisely because their semantic density resists translation — reveals the most theoretically interesting dimension of the German-English relationship: the way in which lexical borrowing can function as a mechanism for the cross-cultural transfer of conceptual frameworks and value systems, not merely of labels. Future research should continue to exploit the rich documentation of German-English contact to advance theoretical understanding of language change, and should attend to the accelerating contemporary influx of English into German as a case study in real-time lexical change under conditions of global communicative dominance.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: G.M.; Methodology: G.M.; Investigation: G.M.; Writing – original draft: G.M.; Writing – review & editing: G.M.

References

Alisoy, H. (2025). From Echo Chambers to Critical Dialogue: A Comparative Case Study of Social Media-Based Pedagogy For Addressing Scientific Misinformation. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities* , *2*(4), 35-47. https://doi.org/10.69760/gsrh.0250203002

Babayev, J. S., Sadikhova , S. N., Baghirova, M. A., Seidova , E. R., & Mammadova , A. A. (2025). Un análisis léxico-estilístico e intercultural de los vulgarismos y sus ámbitos de uso . *Universidad Y Sociedad*, *17*(6), e5525. Recuperado a partir de https://rus.ucf.edu.cu/index.php/rus/article/view/5525

Filipovic, L., & Hawkins, J. A. (2013). The ideology of globalization in English and German. Language and Intercultural Communication, 13(3), 254–271. https://doi.org/10.1080/14708477.2013.789931

Sadigzade, Z. (2025). Dialect Diversity and Social Change: New Approaches in Sociolinguistics. *Journal of Azerbaijan Language and Education Studies*, *2*(3), 91-107. https://doi.org/10.69760/jales.2025002017

Thomason, S. G., & Kaufman, T. (1988). Language contact, creolization, and genetic linguistics. University of California Press.

Traugott, E. C., & Dasher, R. B. (2002). Regularity in semantic change. Cambridge University Press. https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9780511486500

Baugh, A. C., & Cable, T. (2013). A history of the English language (6th ed.). Routledge.

Busse, U., & Görlach, M. (2002). German. In M. Görlach (Ed.), English in Europe (pp. 13–36). Oxford University Press.

Cannon, G. (1987). Historical change and English word-formation: Recent vocabulary. Peter Lang.

Crystal, D. (2003). English as a global language (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Durrell, M. (2004). Using German: A guide to contemporary usage (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Ringe, D. (2006). A linguistic history of English: Vol. 1. From Proto-Indo-European to Proto-Germanic. Oxford University Press.

Stern, G. (1931). Meaning and change of meaning. Indiana University Press.

Waterman, J. T. (1991). A history of the German language (rev. ed.). Waveland Press.

Wierzbicka, A. (1997). Understanding cultures through their key words. Oxford University Press.

Babayev, J. (2025). A comparative-linguistic analysis of Australian and New Zealand English. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(5), 20–27.

Carstensen, B., & Busse, U. (1993–1996). Anglizismen-Wörterbuch: Der Einfluss des Englischen auf den deutschen Wortschatz nach 1945 (3 vols.). De Gruyter.

James, C. (1980). Contrastive analysis. Longman.

Received: 12 March 2026
Accepted: 24 April 2026
Published: 25 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Digital Technologies in English Language Teaching: Transformative Potential, Pedagogical Frameworks, and Implementation Challenges

[1] Musharraf Memmedova, [2] Lale Ahmedova
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602016

Abstract. *The accelerating integration of digital technologies into educational practice has fundamentally reconstituted the landscape of English language teaching (ELT), creating new possibilities for immersive, personalized, and globally connected language learning that were inconceivable within the constraints of the traditional classroom. This article examines the transformative potential of digital technologies in ELT across four principal dimensions: the simulation of authentic language environments through multimedia and virtual reality platforms; the personalization of learning trajectories through artificial intelligence and adaptive systems; the enhancement of learner motivation and participation through gamification; and the dissolution of spatial and temporal barriers to language learning through mobile and online platforms. Drawing on a synthesis of recent empirical research and theoretical frameworks from educational technology, second language acquisition, and applied linguistics, the study analyzes both the documented benefits and the structural challenges associated with technology-mediated language instruction. The findings indicate that digital technologies, when integrated within pedagogically coherent frameworks, substantially enhance vocabulary acquisition, communicative competence, learner motivation, and autonomous learning capacity. However, outcomes are critically dependent on the quality of pedagogical design, teacher digital literacy, equitable access to technological infrastructure, and the thoughtful alignment of digital tools with broader curricular objectives. The article concludes by proposing a framework for effective technology integration in ELT that places pedagogical intentionality rather than technological novelty at the center of instructional design.*

Keywords: *digital technologies, English language teaching, mobile-assisted language learning, artificial intelligence, gamification, virtual reality, adaptive learning, ELT pedagogy*

1. Introduction

The past two decades have witnessed a profound transformation in the conditions under which English is taught and learned globally. The convergence of ubiquitous mobile connectivity, algorithmically driven adaptive platforms, immersive virtual environments, and artificially

[1] Memmedova, M. Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: mshrfmdv@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-5233-6811

[2] Ahmedova, L. Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: ahmadova_lale@mail.ru. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0007-5192-7454

intelligent feedback systems has created a technological landscape that was wholly absent from the foundational theories of communicative language teaching developed in the 1970s and 1980s (Warschauer & Healey, 1998; Chapelle, 2001). English, as the global language of scientific communication, international commerce, and digital culture, occupies a position of singular importance in this transformation: no other language is taught to as many learners across as diverse a range of linguistic, cultural, and institutional contexts, and no other language has been the subject of as extensive a body of research into technology-mediated instruction (Crystal, 2003; Alisoy, 2025).

The transition from teacher-centered to learner-centered pedagogical models — a transition that communicative language teaching initiated theoretically but that digital technology has made structurally achievable — fundamentally reconceptualizes the roles of teacher, learner, and instructional material (Richards & Rodgers, 2014). In the digitally mediated classroom, the teacher's role shifts from the primary source of linguistic input to a designer of learning environments and a facilitator of meaning-making processes; the learner's role shifts from passive recipient to active constructor of linguistic knowledge; and instructional materials shift from static textbook texts to dynamic, responsive, and authentic multimodal resources. Understanding the conditions under which these shifts produce genuine improvements in language learning outcomes — rather than merely technological novelty — requires rigorous theoretical and empirical analysis.

This article examines the transformative potential of digital technologies in English language teaching across four principal dimensions. The first concerns the use of multimedia and virtual reality platforms to simulate authentic English language environments, addressing the perennial pedagogical challenge of providing learners in non-anglophone contexts with meaningful exposure to genuine language use. The second concerns the application of artificial intelligence and adaptive learning systems to personalize instruction, addressing the equally perennial challenge of accommodating the profound individual variation in learners' linguistic profiles, learning rates, and communicative needs. The third concerns gamification as a strategy for sustaining learner motivation and engagement through pedagogically purposeful interactive design. The fourth concerns the democratization of English language learning through mobile and online platforms that dissolve the spatial and temporal constraints of traditional classroom instruction. Each dimension is analyzed in relation to the theoretical frameworks of second language acquisition, the available empirical evidence of effectiveness, and the structural implementation challenges that condition real-world outcomes.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundation of this study integrates three intersecting bodies of scholarship. The first is the second language acquisition (SLA) research tradition, particularly the theoretical frameworks that have the most direct bearing on technology-mediated instruction: Krashen's (1985) Input Hypothesis, which holds that acquisition occurs through exposure to comprehensible input slightly above the learner's current proficiency level; Swain's (1985) Output Hypothesis, which argues that productive language use plays an irreducible role in acquisition by forcing learners to notice gaps in their competence; Long's (1996) Interaction Hypothesis, which emphasizes the role of meaning negotiation in conversational interaction as a mechanism for acquisition; and Vygotsky's (1978) Sociocultural Theory, which situates learning within social interaction and emphasizes the role of mediated scaffolding in cognitive development.

The second theoretical tradition is educational technology research, particularly the work on technology-enhanced language learning (TELL) and computer-assisted language learning (CALL). Chapelle's (2001) framework for evaluating CALL tasks — assessing their potential to provide comprehensible input, focus learners' attention on form, allow output practice, and facilitate negative feedback — provides a principled basis for evaluating specific digital tools and platforms. Warschauer and Healey's (1998) periodization of CALL development, from behaviourist through communicative to integrative phases, situates contemporary AI-driven and mobile platforms within a historical trajectory of increasingly sophisticated alignment between technological capability and SLA theory.

The third tradition is motivational psychology and self-determination theory (SDT), as developed by Deci and Ryan (2000) and applied to language learning contexts by Dörnyei (2001, 2009). SDT's core proposition — that intrinsic motivation is sustained by the satisfaction of basic psychological needs for autonomy, competence, and relatedness — provides the theoretical framework for understanding why well-designed digital learning environments, including gamified platforms and social language learning communities, demonstrably enhance learner engagement and persistence. Dörnyei's (2009) L2 Motivational Self System, which conceptualizes motivation in terms of the learner's ideal and ought-to L2 self, further illuminates the potential of immersive digital environments to activate the imaginative self-constructions that sustain long-term language learning commitment.

3. Methodology

This article employs a qualitative synthesis methodology, integrating a systematic review of peer-reviewed empirical research published between 2015 and 2025 with theoretical analysis of the relevant SLA and educational technology frameworks. Studies were identified through searches of Scopus, Web of Science, and ERIC using the search terms 'digital technology AND English language teaching', 'MALL AND EFL/ESL', 'artificial intelligence AND language learning', 'gamification AND second language acquisition', and 'virtual reality AND language learning'. Inclusion criteria required peer-reviewed publication in English, focus on English language teaching or learning, use of digital technology as an independent variable or analytical focus, and availability of clearly reported outcomes. The synthesis proceeds analytically rather than statistically, identifying patterns, contradictions, and gaps across the literature to produce a coherent theoretical and empirical account of the four dimensions under investigation.

4. Multimedia and Virtual Reality: Simulating Authentic Language Environments

4.1 Multimedia Input and Multimodal Learning

One of the most persistent structural obstacles to English language acquisition in non-anglophone contexts is the scarcity of authentic exposure to the target language outside the classroom. Learners in settings where English is taught as a foreign language — including the Azerbaijani educational context from which the present study originates — typically lack the naturalistic immersion that characterizes acquisition in anglophone environments, and must therefore rely disproportionately on classroom instruction and pedagogical materials as their primary sources of linguistic input (Ellis, 2015). Digital multimedia technologies — video streaming platforms, podcasts, authentic online texts, and social media in English — provide an unprecedented solution to this problem by making authentic English input available at zero marginal cost to any learner with internet access.

The theoretical justification for multimedia language learning draws on dual coding theory (Paivio, 1986), which proposes that information is encoded and retained more effectively when it is processed through both verbal and non-verbal cognitive channels simultaneously, and on cognitive theory of multimedia learning (Mayer, 2009), which specifies the conditions under which the combination of verbal and visual information enhances learning. Applied to ELT, these frameworks predict — and empirical research broadly confirms — that learners who engage with English through multimodal resources demonstrate superior vocabulary retention, improved listening comprehension, and greater pragmatic awareness than those relying on monomodal text-based materials alone (Mayer, 2009; Alisoy, 2025).

4.2 Virtual Reality and Immersive Language Learning

Virtual reality (VR) technology represents the most ambitious attempt to close the gap between classroom language learning and naturalistic immersion by creating simulated environments in which learners can interact with English in physically present-feeling, contextually rich scenarios. The theoretical rationale for VR in language learning draws on embodied cognition theory, which holds that conceptual knowledge is grounded in sensorimotor experience, and on the observation that genuine communicative competence requires the development of pragmatic and sociolinguistic knowledge that is most effectively acquired through interaction in authentic social contexts (Lan, 2020).

Empirical research on VR in ELT, while still relatively nascent, has produced consistently promising results. Lan's (2020) review of immersive VR language learning studies found evidence of enhanced speaking confidence, reduced foreign language anxiety, and improved pragmatic competence among learners who engaged with English through VR simulations, attributing these outcomes to the combination of authentic communicative challenge and psychologically safe practice environment. The anxiety-reducing dimension is theoretically significant: Krashen's (1985) Affective Filter Hypothesis holds that high anxiety constitutes a barrier to language acquisition, and VR environments appear to lower this filter by providing a consequence-free space for communicative risk-taking. The practical challenges of VR implementation — hardware costs, technical requirements, content development demands, and the pedagogical expertise required to design effective VR learning scenarios — currently constrain its deployment, but the rapid reduction in costs and the growing availability of educational VR content suggest that these barriers will diminish substantially over the coming decade (Lan, 2020).

5. Artificial Intelligence and Adaptive Learning Systems

5.1 AI-Driven Personalization and Adaptive Instruction

The application of artificial intelligence to language learning represents perhaps the most consequential dimension of the digital transformation of ELT, precisely because it addresses the most intractable structural limitation of traditional classroom instruction: the impossibility of simultaneously personalizing instruction to the individual needs, proficiency levels, and learning trajectories of every learner in a class of twenty or thirty students. AI-driven adaptive learning systems overcome this limitation by continuously analyzing learner performance data, identifying individual patterns of strength and difficulty, and dynamically adjusting the content, difficulty, pacing, and sequence of instructional activities to optimize learning outcomes for each individual learner (Alisoy, 2025; Godwin-Jones, 2017).

Intelligent tutoring systems (ITS) represent the most sophisticated instantiation of AI-driven personalization in language learning. Systems such as those developed for platforms including Duolingo, Babbel, and Carnegie Learning's MATHia use machine learning algorithms to model individual learners' knowledge states and to select tasks that challenge learners within their zone of proximal development — the theoretical space between what a learner can achieve independently and what they can achieve with appropriate support (Vygotsky, 1978). Research on adaptive language learning platforms has demonstrated significant advantages over non-adaptive instruction in vocabulary acquisition, grammatical accuracy, and learning efficiency, though outcomes vary considerably across learner profiles and platform designs (Godwin-Jones, 2017).

5.2 Automated Feedback and Natural Language Processing

Automated writing evaluation (AWE) systems and natural language processing (NLP)-based feedback tools represent a second major application of AI to ELT, addressing the chronic limitation of traditional writing instruction: the impossibility of providing timely, detailed, individualized feedback on written output to large numbers of learners. Systems such as Grammarly, Turnitin's writing tools, and research-oriented AWE platforms use NLP algorithms to identify grammatical errors, stylistic infelicities, organizational weaknesses, and vocabulary limitations in learner writing, providing immediate corrective feedback that can theoretically be processed and integrated before the errors become fossilized (Alisoy, 2025).

The pedagogical value of AI-generated feedback is subject to ongoing debate in the SLA literature. Research indicates that automated feedback is effective for improving surface-level accuracy — particularly grammatical and mechanical correctness — but is less effective for developing the discourse-level, pragmatic, and rhetorical dimensions of writing competence that require human interpretive judgment (Warschauer & Grimes, 2008). The most productive pedagogical models appear to be those that use AI feedback as a first-pass tool that learners process independently before engaging with teacher feedback, thereby maximizing the efficiency of teacher time while cultivating learner autonomy and metacognitive engagement with their own writing development.

6. Gamification and Learner Motivation

Gamification — the application of game-design elements, mechanics, and principles to non-game contexts — has emerged as one of the most extensively discussed strategies in contemporary ELT, driven by the documented capacity of well-designed game-based environments to sustain high levels of learner engagement, effort, and persistence (Deterding et al., 2011; Reinders & Wattana, 2015). The theoretical rationale for gamification in language learning draws on self-determination theory's analysis of intrinsic motivation, flow theory's account of the conditions that produce optimal engagement, and the game studies literature's identification of the specific design features — challenge, feedback, goal structures, narrative, social interaction — that generate sustained motivational states (Deci & Ryan, 2000; Csikszentmihalyi, 1990).

Empirical research on gamification in ELT contexts has produced broadly positive findings, with studies documenting improvements in vocabulary retention, grammatical accuracy, speaking confidence, and overall learning engagement in gamified conditions relative to non-gamified controls (Reinders & Wattana, 2015). Platforms such as Kahoot!, Quizlet Live, and Classcraft introduce competitive and collaborative game mechanics into vocabulary and grammar practice, while Duolingo's streak system, experience points, and leaderboard features apply sustained gamification to a comprehensive language learning curriculum. The key design principle emerging from the research literature is that gamification is most effective when game mechanics are genuinely integrated into the learning activity rather than superficially layered on top of it — when the challenge structure of the game aligns with the linguistic challenge structure of the learning objective, rather than providing extrinsic rewards for rote practice (Deterding et al., 2011).

The limitations of gamification in ELT also require acknowledgement. Research suggests that the motivational benefits of gamification can diminish over time as the novelty of game mechanics fades and the underlying difficulty of the learning challenge reasserts itself (Reinders & Wattana, 2015). Competitive gamification structures, in particular, may demotivate lower-performing learners who consistently occupy the bottom of leaderboards, potentially exacerbating existing attainment gaps. And gamification that prioritizes engagement metrics over linguistic challenge risks producing learners who are highly motivated but insufficiently challenged — learning efficiently in terms of time-on-task but insufficiently in terms of linguistic complexity.

7. Mobile-Assisted Language Learning and the Democratization of ELT

The proliferation of smartphones and mobile internet connectivity has created the conditions for what researchers have termed mobile-assisted language learning (MALL) — the use of mobile devices to support language learning across time and space, enabling learners to engage with English in the interstitial moments of daily life rather than exclusively within the bounded time and space of the classroom (Kukulska-Hulme & Shield, 2008). The theoretical significance of MALL lies in its capacity to dramatically increase the total quantity of meaningful language exposure that learners accumulate over time — a dimension of input that SLA research consistently identifies as a critical determinant of acquisition rate and ultimate attainment (Ellis, 2015).

Research on MALL in EFL and ESL contexts has documented a consistent pattern of findings: mobile learners demonstrate superior vocabulary retention compared to desktop or classroom-only learners, primarily attributable to the distributed practice and spaced repetition afforded by mobile platforms; mobile learning environments enhance learner autonomy and self-regulation; and mobile platforms' accessibility reduces the barrier to engagement for learners in resource-constrained educational contexts (Kukulska-Hulme & Shield, 2008; Stockwell, 2010). The availability of high-quality English language learning resources through platforms such as Duolingo, BBC Learning English, TED-Ed, and YouTube has created an unprecedented democratization of access to English language instruction: learners in Nakhchivan, in rural India, or in sub-Saharan Africa can access the same quality of authentic English language input as learners in London or New York, provided they have internet connectivity and a smartphone.

The equity dimensions of this democratization require nuanced analysis. Mobile connectivity and smartphone ownership, while growing rapidly, remain unequally distributed across socioeconomic strata and geographic regions, meaning that the transformative potential of MALL accrues disproportionately to learners who are already advantaged in terms of access to educational resources (Warschauer, 2003). Digital literacy — the capacity to effectively select, evaluate, and learn from the vast range of digital English learning resources available — is itself an acquired competency that disadvantaged learners may lack. And the motivational self-regulation required to sustain autonomous mobile learning over extended periods is a cognitive and affective skill that requires explicit pedagogical development rather than spontaneous emergence.

8. Implementation Challenges and Pedagogical Principles

The transformative potential of digital technologies in ELT is real but conditional: it is realized only when digital tools are deployed within pedagogically coherent frameworks that align technological affordances with clearly specified linguistic learning objectives and that are implemented by teachers with sufficient digital literacy and pedagogical expertise to optimize their use (Chapelle, 2001; Richards & Rodgers, 2014). The evidence base consistently indicates that the technology itself is neither the primary determinant of outcomes nor a reliable predictor of them: the same tool can produce dramatically different outcomes depending on the quality of pedagogical design, the depth of teacher training, the characteristics of the learner population, and the institutional context of implementation (Warschauer & Healey, 1998).

Several implementation challenges require systematic attention. Teacher professional development is a critical bottleneck: research consistently demonstrates that the gap between teachers' technology use and its effective pedagogical integration is a primary factor limiting the impact of digital technologies on learning outcomes (Godwin-Jones, 2017). Technological infrastructure presents a further constraint, particularly in educational contexts — including much of the post-Soviet Caucasus region — where reliable internet connectivity, device availability, and technical support cannot be assumed. Assessment remains an undertheorized dimension of technology-enhanced ELT: most current assessment frameworks were designed for traditional instructional modalities and do not adequately capture the competencies — autonomous learning capacity, digital communication skills, multimodal literacy — that technology-enhanced instruction is designed to develop.

The pedagogical framework proposed by this analysis places intentionality at its center: the selection and deployment of digital technologies in ELT should be driven by clearly articulated learning objectives, informed by evidence-based understanding of how specific tools create conditions for acquisition, and continuously evaluated against measurable outcomes. Technology should serve pedagogy, not displace it. The teacher remains irreplaceable as a designer of learning environments, a responder to learners' communicative initiatives, a mediator of cultural knowledge, and a human presence whose relational engagement with learners creates the affective conditions — trust, safety, sense of belonging — that are necessary for the risk-taking that language acquisition demands.

9. Conclusion

This article has examined the transformative potential of digital technologies in English language teaching across four dimensions: multimedia and virtual reality for authentic language environment simulation, artificial intelligence and adaptive systems for personalized instruction, gamification for motivation enhancement, and mobile platforms for democratizing access. The analysis confirms that digital technologies, when integrated within pedagogically coherent frameworks, offer genuine and substantial enhancements to the conditions for English language acquisition — expanding the quantity and authenticity of linguistic input, personalizing the challenge and feedback dimensions of instruction, sustaining motivation through purposeful interactive design, and dissolving the spatial and temporal constraints of traditional classroom instruction.

The critical qualification that conditions these benefits deserves equal emphasis: outcomes are determined not by the technologies themselves but by the pedagogical intelligence with which they are deployed. Teacher digital literacy, institutional infrastructure, learner digital access, and the coherent alignment of digital tools with linguistic learning objectives are all necessary conditions for realizing the transformative potential that the technology enables. Future research should prioritize longitudinal studies of technology-enhanced ELT outcomes across diverse instructional contexts; investigation of the differential effectiveness of specific digital tools for learners at different proficiency levels and with different learning profiles; and the development of assessment frameworks adequate to the full range of competencies that technology-mediated English learning is designed to cultivate. The future of English language teaching lies not in technology per se but in the creative, pedagogically principled, and learner-centered deployment of the unprecedented resources that digital technology makes available.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: M.M., L.A.; Methodology: M.M.; Investigation: M.M., L.A.; Writing – original draft: M.M., L.A.; Writing – review & editing: M.M.

References

Alisoy, H. (2025). Machine learning approaches for automated vocabulary acquisition in ESL classrooms. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(3), 97–118. https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2500202

Chapelle, C. A. (2001). Computer applications in second language acquisition. Cambridge University Press.

Crystal, D. (2003). English as a global language (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Csikszentmihalyi, M. (1990). Flow: The psychology of optimal experience. Harper & Row.

Deci, E. L., & Ryan, R. M. (2000). The 'what' and 'why' of goal pursuits: Human needs and the self-determination of behavior. Psychological Inquiry, 11(4), 227–268. https://doi.org/10.1207/S15327965PLI1104_01

Deterding, S., Dixon, D., Khaled, R., & Nacke, L. (2011). From game design elements to gamefulness: Defining gamification. In Proceedings of the 15th International Academic MindTrek Conference (pp. 9–15). ACM. https://doi.org/10.1145/2181037.2181040

Dörnyei, Z. (2001). Motivational strategies in the language classroom. Cambridge University Press.

Dörnyei, Z. (2009). The L2 motivational self system. In Z. Dörnyei & E. Ushioda (Eds.), Motivation, language identity and the L2 self (pp. 9–42). Multilingual Matters.

Ellis, R. (2015). Understanding second language acquisition (2nd ed.). Oxford University Press.

Godwin-Jones, R. (2017). Smartphones and language learning. Language Learning & Technology, 21(2), 3–17.

Krashen, S. D. (1985). The input hypothesis: Issues and implications. Longman.

Kukulska-Hulme, A., & Shield, L. (2008). An overview of mobile assisted language learning: From content delivery to supported collaboration and interaction. ReCALL, 20(3), 271–289. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0958344008000335

Lan, Y.-J. (2020). Immersion into virtual reality for language learning. Language Learning & Technology, 24(3), 46–62.

Long, M. H. (1996). The role of the linguistic environment in second language acquisition. In W. C. Ritchie & T. K. Bhatia (Eds.), Handbook of second language acquisition (pp. 413–468). Academic Press.

Mayer, R. E. (2009). Multimedia learning (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Paivio, A. (1986). Mental representations: A dual coding approach. Oxford University Press.

Reinders, H., & Wattana, S. (2015). Affect and willingness to communicate in digital game-based learning. ReCALL, 27(1), 38–57. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0958344014000226

Richards, J. C., & Rodgers, T. S. (2014). Approaches and methods in language teaching (3rd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Stockwell, G. (2010). Using mobile phones for vocabulary activities: Examining the effect of the platform. Language Learning & Technology, 14(2), 95–110.

Swain, M. (1985). Communicative competence: Some roles of comprehensible input and comprehensible output in its development. In S. Gass & C. Madden (Eds.), Input in second language acquisition (pp. 235–253). Newbury House.

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Warschauer, M. (2003). Technology and social inclusion: Rethinking the digital divide. MIT Press.

Warschauer, M., & Grimes, D. (2008). Automated writing assessment in the classroom. Pedagogies: An International Journal, 3(1), 22–36. https://doi.org/10.1080/15544800701771580

Warschauer, M., & Healey, D. (1998). Computers and language learning: An overview. Language Teaching, 31(2), 57–71. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0261444800012970

Received: 6 March 2026
Accepted: 24 April 2026
Published: 25 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Challenges in Learning German as a Foreign Language: Linguistic, Cognitive, and Affective Dimensions

[1] Kovser Abbasova
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602017

Abstract. *German as a foreign language presents learners with a uniquely demanding set of challenges that span the full spectrum of linguistic, cognitive, and affective dimensions of language acquisition. This article provides a systematic analysis of the principal difficulties encountered by learners of German as a foreign language (GFL), with particular attention to the Azerbaijani tertiary educational context. Drawing on second language acquisition theory, cognitive linguistics, and motivational psychology, the study identifies and theorizes four major categories of challenge: the morphological complexity of German case grammar and nominal inflection; the difficulties of German word order, particularly verb-second and verb-final constructions; the affective and motivational challenges associated with acquiring a language perceived as structurally demanding; and the methodological challenges of assessment and evaluation in GFL instruction. The analysis demonstrates that these challenges are not merely incidental difficulties of individual learners but reflect systematic structural properties of German that interact in predictable ways with the typological distance between German and learners' first languages, the cognitive demands of explicit grammatical learning, and the motivational conditions prevailing in foreign language classroom contexts. The article proposes a framework of evidence-based pedagogical responses to each category of challenge, drawing on recent research in contrastive linguistics, task-based language teaching, and learner motivation, and concludes with implications for curriculum design, assessment practice, and teacher development in GFL instruction.*

Keywords: *German as a foreign language, language learning difficulties, case grammar, morphological complexity, learner motivation, contrastive linguistics, second language acquisition, GFL pedagogy*

1. Introduction

German occupies a paradoxical position in the global landscape of foreign language learning. It is simultaneously one of the most widely studied foreign languages in the world — with over fifteen million learners enrolled in formal German language courses globally according to the Goethe-Institut's periodic surveys — and one of the languages most consistently rated by learners as structurally challenging, motivationally demanding, and pedagogically underserved relative to the

[1] Abbasova, K. Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: kevsarabbasova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0002-4929-9536

effort it requires (Bimmel, Kast, & Neuner, 2011). The structural complexity of German — its four-case nominal system, grammatical gender assignment, complex verb-second word order, productive compounding, and lexically conditioned government of prepositions — presents learners with challenges that are qualitatively distinct from those encountered in acquiring languages such as English or Spanish, which have largely shed the morphological complexity that German retains from the common Indo-European ancestor (Eisenberg, 2013).

In the Azerbaijani educational context, German is taught at secondary and tertiary levels as the primary or secondary foreign language alongside English, yet research into the specific challenges Azerbaijani learners face in acquiring German remains limited. Azerbaijani belongs to the Oghuz branch of the Turkic language family and is characterized by agglutinative morphology, postpositional syntax, verb-final word order, and the absence of grammatical gender — a typological profile that diverges substantially from German in virtually every relevant structural dimension (Johanson & Csató, 1998). The typological distance between Azerbaijani and German is thus considerably greater than that between German and related Indo-European languages such as English, Russian, or Persian, and this distance is predictably reflected in the elevated difficulty that Azerbaijani learners experience with German nominal morphology, word order, and gender assignment (Odlin, 1989).

This article provides a systematic analysis of the principal challenges in learning German as a foreign language, integrating insights from second language acquisition theory, contrastive linguistics, cognitive psychology, and motivational research. The analysis is organized around four major categories of challenge: morphological complexity and the German case system; syntactic challenges, particularly German word order; affective and motivational dimensions; and assessment and evaluation challenges. For each category, the article reviews the relevant theoretical and empirical literature, analyzes the specific difficulties involved, and proposes evidence-based pedagogical responses. The study contributes to the growing literature on German as a foreign language instruction in post-Soviet and Turkic-language contexts, and aims to provide practical guidance for teachers, curriculum designers, and learners navigating the demanding but rewarding enterprise of German acquisition.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundations of this analysis draw on three intersecting traditions. The first is contrastive analysis and typological distance research in second language acquisition. Lado's (1957) original contrastive analysis hypothesis proposed that learning difficulty is predictable from the structural differences between the learner's first language and the target language, and while the strong version of this hypothesis — which claimed that all errors are predictable from L1-L2 contrasts — has been substantially revised, the role of typological distance in shaping learning difficulty remains theoretically and empirically well-supported (Odlin, 1989; Kellerman & Sharwood Smith, 1986). Languages that are typologically distant from German — including

Turkic languages such as Azerbaijani, as well as East Asian languages — pose predictably greater challenges in areas of German morphosyntax where the structural distance is greatest.

The second tradition is cognitive approaches to grammar learning, particularly the concept of processing difficulty as theorized by VanPatten (1996) in his Input Processing model. VanPatten argues that learners prioritize the processing of lexical content over grammatical form when attending to input, and that grammatical forms that carry redundant or non-communicatively essential information are particularly susceptible to processing neglect and slow acquisition. Applied to German, this framework predicts — consistently with empirical observation — that the German case system, whose case distinctions are often morphologically redundant with word order cues, will be processed inefficiently by learners whose attentional resources are occupied with lexical content, leading to the characteristic persistence of case errors even at relatively advanced stages of acquisition (Eisenberg, 2013).

The third tradition is motivational psychology, particularly self-determination theory (Deci & Ryan, 2000) and Dörnyei's L2 Motivational Self System (2009), which provide the theoretical framework for analyzing the affective challenges of German learning. The perception of German as a uniquely difficult language — a perception actively cultivated by a long tradition of humorous commentary, most famously Mark Twain's 1880 essay 'The Awful German Language' — creates a pre-learning affective context that can prime learners toward learned helplessness and premature attributions of failure to stable ability factors rather than to modifiable effort and strategy variables (Nuri & Ismayilli, 2025). Understanding and addressing this affective pre-loading is a necessary component of effective GFL pedagogy.

3. Methodology

This study employs a qualitative, literature-based analytical methodology integrating systematic review of the German as a foreign language (GFL) research literature with contrastive linguistic analysis and theoretical synthesis. The literature review encompassed peer-reviewed studies published in Scopus- and Web of Science-indexed journals between 2010 and 2025, identified through searches using the terms 'German as a foreign language', 'DaF', 'German case system acquisition', 'German word order L2', 'learner motivation German', and 'assessment foreign language learning'. Contrastive analysis draws on the grammatical descriptions of German in Eisenberg (2013) and Helbig and Buscha (2001), and of Azerbaijani in Johanson and Csató (1998). The analysis synthesizes findings across these sources to produce a coherent account of the principal challenge dimensions and their pedagogical implications.

4. Morphological Complexity: The German Case System

4.1 Structure and Acquisition Sequence of German Cases

The German nominal case system — comprising nominative, accusative, dative, and genitive cases — is widely regarded as the single most challenging structural feature of German for learners from non-case-marking language backgrounds. Unlike the case systems of Latin or Russian, which are marked primarily through nominal suffixes, German case is marked through a complex interaction of article forms, adjectival agreement suffixes, and nominal suffixes that operates differently across the four grammatical genders (masculine, feminine, neuter) and three numbers (singular, plural), generating a paradigm of considerable complexity and, in the judgement of many learners, frustrating opacity (Eisenberg, 2013). The definite article alone has sixteen distinct surface forms across the case-gender-number combinations, though many of these are formally identical, creating systematic ambiguity that complicates both comprehension and production.

Acquisition research on the German case system has documented a consistent developmental sequence: learners typically acquire nominative case first, followed by accusative, with dative and genitive showing markedly slower acquisition rates that reflect both their morphological complexity and their lower frequency in everyday language use (Baten, 2011). The dative case is particularly problematic for learners, as its marking interacts with preposition government (requiring learners to memorize which prepositions govern dative, which govern accusative, and which govern alternating cases depending on semantic distinctions), verb government (a subset of verbs lexically select dative objects), and specific nominal contexts (the dative of interest, the dative of possession). This multi-layered conditionality makes dative acquisition dependent not only on morphological knowledge but on the gradual accumulation of lexically specific knowledge about preposition and verb government — a process that research suggests can extend over several years of instruction (Baten, 2011).

For Azerbaijani learners, the challenge of German case is compounded by the typological contrast between the two languages' nominal morphology. Azerbaijani, as an agglutinative language, marks grammatical relations primarily through postpositional suffixes applied to nominal stems in a transparent, one-suffix-one-meaning pattern that is structurally quite different from German's portmanteau article system, in which a single article form simultaneously encodes case, gender, and number in a pattern that is neither transparent nor compositional. The Azerbaijani learner must therefore not only acquire a new grammatical category — grammatical gender has no analog in Azerbaijani — but must also learn to process and produce a type of morphological marking that is fundamentally alien to the grammatical logic of their first language (Odlin, 1989; Johanson & Csató, 1998).

4.2 Grammatical Gender: Acquisition and Pedagogical Responses

Grammatical gender in German — the obligatory assignment of all nouns to one of three genders (der, die, das) — presents an additional dimension of morphological challenge that is particularly acute for speakers of genderless languages such as Azerbaijani, Turkish, or Finnish. Unlike the biological sex-linked gender of some Romance languages, German grammatical gender is largely arbitrary from a semantic perspective: das Mädchen (the girl) is neuter, die Gabel (the fork) is feminine, and der Mond (the moon) is masculine, assignments that follow no principle of natural gender and must therefore be individually memorized for each noun. Research suggests that learners from genderless L1 backgrounds are significantly slower to acquire accurate German gender assignment than learners from gendered L1 backgrounds, and that gender errors persist into advanced stages of acquisition in ways that case errors typically do not (Eisenberg, 2013).

Pedagogical research has identified several evidence-based approaches to supporting gender acquisition. The most effective is the explicit teaching of gender-predictive morphological and phonological cues: a substantial proportion of German nouns have gender-predictive suffixes (nouns ending in -ung, -heit, -keit, -schaft are feminine; nouns ending in -chen, -lein are neuter; nouns ending in -er, -ig, -ling are typically masculine), and systematic instruction in these cues substantially reduces the proportion of gender assignments that must be individually memorized (Szagun, Stumper, & Schramm, 2006). The integration of gender as a lexical property to be recorded together with the noun form — presenting vocabulary items as 'die Tür' rather than 'Tür', ensuring that the article form is encoded as part of the lexical entry — is a widely recommended strategy whose effectiveness is supported by the psycholinguistic literature on lexical storage and retrieval.

5. Syntactic Challenges: German Word Order

5.1 Verb-Second and Verb-Final Constructions

German word order is governed by a set of principles that are typologically unusual among European languages and that interact in complex ways to produce surface orders that can appear highly variable and unpredictable to learners accustomed to more rigid word-order languages such as English. The two most fundamental principles are the verb-second (V2) constraint, which requires that the finite verb occupy the second constituent position in main clauses regardless of which constituent occupies first position, and the verb-final constraint, which places the non-finite verbal complex (infinitives, past participles, separable prefixes) at the end of the clause in both main and subordinate clauses (Eisenberg, 2013). The interaction of these two principles produces the characteristic German pattern in which the verbal elements of a clause are split between the second position and the final position — 'Ich habe gestern das Buch gelesen' (I have yesterday the book read) — a pattern that has no close analog in English, Azerbaijani, or any of the other languages most commonly known by Azerbaijani learners.

The challenge of German word order for foreign learners is both productive and receptive. In production, learners must simultaneously manage the fronting of non-subject constituents for topical or contrastive emphasis (which triggers inversion of subject and verb), the placement of the non-finite verb at the end of the clause, and the obligatory verb-final order in embedded clauses introduced by subordinating conjunctions. The cognitive demand of managing all these operations simultaneously — while also attending to case marking, gender agreement, and lexical retrieval — generates the characteristic processing bottlenecks that produce word-order errors even in otherwise proficient learners (VanPatten, 1996). In reception, the verb-final pattern in subordinate clauses means that learners must often hold the syntactic frame of a clause in working memory for an extended period before the verb that closes it — and thus determines the temporal, aspectual, and modal interpretation of the entire clause — is processed.

5.2 Separable and Inseparable Verb Prefixes

A further syntactic challenge specific to German is the system of separable verb prefixes — verbal particles that can either remain attached to the verb stem or be detached and moved to the end of the clause depending on the syntactic context. In 'Er ruft seinen Freund an' (He calls his friend up), the prefix an- is separated from the verb anrufen and appears at the end of the clause; in the infinitive 'Er muss seinen Freund anrufen' (He must call his friend), the prefix remains attached. The rules governing prefix separation — and the distinction between separable and inseparable prefixes, which is partially but not fully predictable from phonological form — constitute a productive source of errors for learners across all proficiency levels and represent a genuine structural complexity of German that is not replicated in any of the languages typically known by Azerbaijani learners (Helbig & Buscha, 2001).

6. Affective and Motivational Challenges

The affective dimensions of learning German as a foreign language are shaped by a cultural narrative of extreme difficulty that surrounds the language in both popular discourse and educational contexts. Mark Twain's essay, humorous textbooks such as 'Der Dativ ist dem Genitiv sein Tod', and the widely circulated claim that German is 'the hardest language in the world' collectively create an affective pre-loading for many learners that primes them for difficulty, failure, and premature cognitive closure. Research in attribution theory suggests that when learners encounter difficulties that they attribute to stable, uncontrollable factors — the inherent impossibility of German grammar, their own inadequate linguistic aptitude — they are more likely to reduce effort, disengage from the learning process, and ultimately abandon the language entirely than when they attribute the same difficulties to controllable, modifiable factors such as insufficient practice time, inappropriate learning strategies, or inadequate exposure (Dörnyei, 2001).

Student motivation plays a critical and multidimensional role in determining outcomes in GFL instruction. Nuri and Ismayilli (2025) emphasize that motivation is not a fixed learner characteristic but a dynamic, context-sensitive process that is actively constructed through learners' interactions with instructional materials, teacher feedback, peer relationships, and the broader social meaning they attach to the target language. In the Azerbaijani educational context, where German lacks the immediate communicative utility and global prestige of English, instrumental motivational orientations — learning German for career advancement, educational access to German-speaking universities, or economic opportunity — must be explicitly cultivated alongside whatever intrinsic interest the language's structural properties and cultural associations can generate (Nuri & Ismayilli, 2025).

The concept of foreign language anxiety (FLA) — the specific anxiety that language learners experience in the foreign language classroom — is particularly relevant to GFL instruction given the structural complexity that makes error-production in German virtually inevitable even for careful and well-prepared learners. Horwitz, Horwitz, and Cope (1986) identified FLA as a distinct form of situational anxiety that is reliably predicted by self-perceived communicative incompetence and fear of negative evaluation. The German classroom, with its demanding grammatical requirements and the high frequency of correctable errors that German morphosyntax generates, creates conditions that are particularly conducive to FLA unless instructional design explicitly addresses the affective environment. Creating what Krashen (1985) terms a low-affective-filter environment — one characterized by psychologically safe error correction, encouragement of communicative risk-taking, and the normalization of difficulty as an expected feature of German acquisition rather than evidence of individual inadequacy — is a necessary condition for effective GFL instruction.

7. Assessment and Evaluation Challenges in GFL

Assessment and evaluation in foreign language learning present challenges that are particularly acute in GFL contexts, where the morphosyntactic complexity of German generates a disproportionately high error frequency even among genuinely progressing learners. Ismayilli (2024) notes that conventional assessment approaches in foreign language instruction — including timed written tests, grammatical accuracy measures, and translation exercises — tend to measure the decontextualized recall of grammatical rules rather than the communicative competence that is the ultimate goal of language instruction, and that this mismatch between assessment practice and instructional goals systematically distorts the feedback signal that both learners and teachers receive about learning progress.

The assessment of German proficiency is further complicated by the need to balance accuracy and fluency dimensions that, in the early and intermediate stages of acquisition, frequently trade off against each other. Learners who prioritize accuracy produce fewer errors but communicate less; learners who prioritize fluency communicate more but produce more grammatical errors. Assessment frameworks that weight accuracy heavily — as many traditional GFL assessment instruments do — may inadvertently discourage the communicative risk-taking and output production that SLA research identifies as necessary conditions for acquisition, creating a systematic perverse incentive that runs counter to the pedagogical goals of communicative language teaching (Ismayilli, 2024; Dörnyei, 2001). Portfolio-based, process-oriented, and task-based assessment approaches that evaluate learners' developing communicative competence across multiple performance contexts and over time, rather than their accuracy on single decontextualized test events, offer more pedagogically valid alternatives that better support the kind of language development that GFL instruction aims to achieve.

8. Pedagogical Responses and Implications

The analysis of the four principal challenge dimensions of GFL learning converges on a set of evidence-based pedagogical principles. In addressing morphological complexity, pedagogical approaches should integrate explicit grammatical instruction with extensive communicative practice, ensuring that grammatical forms are always encountered and practiced within meaningful discourse contexts rather than as isolated paradigms. The explicit teaching of gender-predictive cues, the systematic presentation of vocabulary with their articles, and the use of color-coding systems to distinguish the three genders in written materials have all demonstrated effectiveness in supporting gender acquisition (Szagun, Stumper, & Schramm, 2006). For case acquisition, a task-based approach that exposes learners to case distinctions in communicatively purposeful contexts — rather than requiring them to manipulate case paradigms in decontextualized exercises — aligns more effectively with the processing tendencies identified by VanPatten's (1996) input processing model.

In addressing word-order complexity, extensive exposure to authentic German discourse — both spoken and written — is the most powerful available tool, as it allows learners to develop the implicit procedural knowledge of German word order that explicit rule instruction alone cannot generate. Consciousness-raising activities that direct learners' attention to specific word-order patterns in authentic texts, combined with production tasks that require the deployment of those patterns in communicatively motivated contexts, represent the pedagogical synthesis most strongly supported by the available evidence (Ellis, 2015). For separable prefix verbs, the explicit teaching of the distinction between separable and inseparable prefix classes, combined with the systematic inclusion of prefix verbs in vocabulary learning with their complete citation form, is recommended.

For the affective and motivational dimensions, GFL teachers are well-positioned to reshape the cultural narrative of German difficulty by explicitly foregrounding the rewards and pleasures of German acquisition alongside its challenges, by normalizing the error-rich developmental process as an expected and productive feature of complex language learning, and by cultivating learners' sense of growing competence through carefully designed tasks that allow success at the appropriate level of challenge (Dörnyei, 2009; Nuri & Ismayilli, 2025). The cultivation of what Dörnyei terms the ideal L2 self — a vivid, personally compelling image of oneself as a competent German speaker — is a particularly powerful motivational intervention in contexts where instrumental motivation is limited by the restricted communicative ecology of German in non-German-speaking environments.

9. Conclusion

This article has provided a systematic analysis of the principal challenges in learning German as a foreign language across morphological, syntactic, affective, and assessment dimensions. The findings demonstrate that the difficulties learners encounter in GFL are not random or unpredictable but reflect the systematic structural properties of German in interaction with the typological distance between German and learners' first languages, the cognitive demands of explicit morphosyntactic learning, and the motivational conditions that prevailing cultural narratives and institutional practices create. For Azerbaijani learners specifically, the typological distance between Azerbaijani's agglutinative, verb-final, genderless structure and German's inflectional, verb-second, gendered structure is a central determinant of the particular difficulty profile they face.

The pedagogical implications of this analysis are clear: effective GFL instruction must address all four challenge dimensions simultaneously, integrating explicit morphosyntactic instruction with extensive communicative practice, designing assessment frameworks that capture developing communicative competence rather than decontextualized grammatical accuracy, and actively cultivating the motivational and affective conditions that enable learners to sustain the long-term effort that German acquisition demands. Future research should investigate the specific difficulty profiles of Azerbaijani and other Turkic-language learners of German in more detail, compare the effectiveness of different instructional approaches across these learner populations, and examine the long-term motivational trajectories of GFL learners in contexts where German has limited immediate communicative utility. The challenges of German are real and substantial — but they are pedagogically addressable, and the linguistic, cultural, and professional rewards of German acquisition are commensurate with the effort they require.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: K.A.; Methodology: K.A.; Investigation: K.A.; Writing – original draft: K.A.; Writing – review & editing: K.A.

References

Aslanova, U. (2025). Social and cultural factors in the formation of individual style in the German language. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(5), 132–143.

Baten, K. (2011). German case acquisition: A processability approach. Studies in Second Language Acquisition, 33(3), 383–421. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0272263111000052

Bimmel, P., Kast, B., & Neuner, G. (2011). Deutschunterricht planen: Arbeit mit Lehrwerkslektionen. Goethe-Institut.

Deci, E. L., & Ryan, R. M. (2000). The 'what' and 'why' of goal pursuits: Human needs and the self-determination of behavior. Psychological Inquiry, 11(4), 227–268. https://doi.org/10.1207/S15327965PLI1104_01

Dörnyei, Z. (2001). Motivational strategies in the language classroom. Cambridge University Press.

Dörnyei, Z. (2009). The L2 motivational self system. In Z. Dörnyei & E. Ushioda (Eds.), Motivation, language identity and the L2 self (pp. 9–42). Multilingual Matters.

Eisenberg, P. (2013). Grundriss der deutschen Grammatik: Das Wort (4th ed.). J. B. Metzler.

Ellis, R. (2015). Understanding second language acquisition (2nd ed.). Oxford University Press.

Helbig, G., & Buscha, J. (2001). Deutsche Grammatik: Ein Handbuch für den Ausländerunterricht. Langenscheidt.

Horwitz, E. K., Horwitz, M. B., & Cope, J. (1986). Foreign language classroom anxiety. The Modern Language Journal, 70(2), 125–132. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-4781.1986.tb05256.x

Ismayilli, T. (2024). Assessment and evaluation of foreign language knowledge. Elmi Tədqiqat, 52.

Johanson, L., & Csató, É. Á. (Eds.). (1998). The Turkic languages. Routledge.

Kellerman, E., & Sharwood Smith, M. (Eds.). (1986). Crosslinguistic influence in second language acquisition. Pergamon Press.

Krashen, S. D. (1985). The input hypothesis: Issues and implications. Longman.

Lado, R. (1957). Linguistics across cultures: Applied linguistics for language teachers. University of Michigan Press.

Nuri, A., & Ismayilli, T. (2025). The importance of student motivation. Science, Education and Innovations in the Context of Modern Problems, 8(6), 260–262.

Odlin, T. (1989). Language transfer: Cross-linguistic influence in language learning. Cambridge University Press.

Szagun, G., Stumper, B., & Schramm, S. A. (2006). Acquiring German as a first language: The role of gender marking on nouns. Journal of Child Language, 33(4), 825–857. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0305000906007549

VanPatten, B. (1996). Input processing and grammar instruction: Theory and research. Ablex.

Received: 18 March 2026
Accepted: 22 April 2026
Published: 25 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Restoration of Archetypal Memory in Elchin's Novel Mahmud and Maryam

[1] **Ali Hashimov,** [2] **Zamin Babazade**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602018

Abstract. *This article examines the artistic reconstruction of archetypal memory in Elchin Afandiyev's novel Mahmud and Maryam within a psychoanalytic and mythopoetic framework. Drawing on Carl Gustav Jung's theory of archetypes and the collective unconscious, Mircea Eliade's concept of sacred-profane dichotomy and mythological time, and Joseph Campbell's monomyth theory, the study analyzes how archetypal structures — particularly the mother, hero, wise old man, and cosmic symbolism — are represented and transformed within the novel's poetic system. The research employs close textual analysis supplemented by intertextual and comparative perspectives, tracing the novel's engagement with the Azerbaijani epic tradition of Kitabi-Dede Gorgud and the classical Eastern literary motifs of Nizami's Layla and Majnun. The findings demonstrate that the novel does not merely reproduce traditional archetypes but actively reinterprets them through historical, cultural, and social dimensions specific to sixteenth-century Azerbaijan. The character system functions as a symbolic model of collective memory: Maryam embodies the mother archetype as a figure of sacred origin and regeneration; Mahmud instantiates the hero archetype through his progression from idealistic innocence toward spiritual trial and maturity; and Havalı Ibrahim fulfills the function of the wise old man as a mediator between visible and metaphysical knowledge. The mythopoetic construction of time and space — particularly the city of Ganja as a symbolic locus of collective memory — reinforces the cyclical rather than linear temporality characteristic of mythological narrative. The article argues that Mahmud and Maryam constitutes a complex artistic model in which archetypal memory is reconstructed through the synthesis of mythological, historical, and literary traditions, offering a significant contribution to the study of mythopoetic thinking and collective identity in modern Azerbaijani prose.*

Keywords: *archetypal memory, Elchin Afandiyev, Mahmud and Maryam, Jungian archetypes, mythopoetic analysis, collective unconscious, Azerbaijani literature, comparative literature*

[1] Hashimov, A. Associate Professor, PhD in Philology, Chair of Azerbaijani Literature, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: elihesimov@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-7069-9202

[2] Babazade, Z. Department of Azerbaijani Literature, Faculty of History and Philology, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: zaminbabazade@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-1395-2545

1. Introduction

The issue of the artistic reconstruction of mythopoetic thinking and collective memory in Azerbaijani literature is among the most compelling problems of contemporary literary scholarship. Many works written in the genre of the historical novel not only depict the social and political landscape of a specific period but also transfer the archaic layers of national memory, mythological patterns of thinking, and mechanisms of collective identity into the artistic plane (Eliade, 1963; Seyidov, 1983). In this respect, Mahmud and Maryam by Elchin Afandiyev attracts particular scholarly attention as one of the most significant works reflecting the artistic reconstruction of archetypal memory in Azerbaijani prose. The novel, set against the background of events in early sixteenth-century Azerbaijan during the Safavid period, interweaves political power, religious conflict, individual destiny, and the motif of love within a richly layered structure in which historical realism and mythopoetic symbolism are inseparably fused.

Yet the novel's significance extends beyond its historical and social dimensions. Behind the surface narrative of political intrigue and tragic love lie the archetypal structures of collective memory: configurations of meaning that Carl Gustav Jung identified as the universal contents of the collective unconscious, recurring across myths, religious representations, and literary creativity throughout human history (Jung, 1969). Elchin Afandiyev's novel activates and reinterprets these configurations, transforming the particular historical circumstances of sixteenth-century Azerbaijan into a symbolic model of enduring human experiences — love, spiritual trial, the encounter with fate, the sacred in the natural world — that resonate far beyond their immediate historical occasion.

Existing scholarship on Elchin Afandiyev's work has primarily approached the novel from historical, thematic, and biographical perspectives (Yusifli, 2010; Kazımov, 2009). While these contributions have established the novel's place within the Azerbaijani literary canon and clarified its relationship to documented historical events, they have not systematically engaged with the psychoanalytic and mythopoetic dimensions of the work — the layer of archetypal symbolism that gives the novel its particular density and universality. The present article addresses this gap by applying the theoretical frameworks of Jungian depth psychology and Eliadean mythology to a close reading of the novel's character system, temporal and spatial construction, and intertextual connections. The study aims to demonstrate that Mahmud and Maryam is not merely a historical love story but a complex artistic model in which archetypal memory is reconstructed through the synthesis of mythological, historical, and literary traditions.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundation of this analysis rests on three intersecting traditions. The first and most central is Carl Gustav Jung's analytic psychology, particularly his theory of archetypes and the collective unconscious. Jung proposed that beneath the personal unconscious lies a deeper layer of the psyche — the collective unconscious — that is shared across individuals and cultures and contains universal psychic images or patterns, which he termed archetypes. These archetypes — including the mother, the hero, the wise old man, the shadow, and the self — are not specific to any culture but manifest across the full range of human mythological, religious, and literary production, always adapting their surface form to the specific cultural context while retaining their underlying structural and semantic consistency (Jung, 1969).

The second theoretical tradition is Mircea Eliade's philosophy of religion and mythology. Eliade's central contribution to the interpretation of mythological thinking is his account of the sacred-profane dichotomy and his theory of mythological time — what he calls in illo tempore, the primordial time of origins to which myth and ritual provide renewed access. For Eliade, archaic human existence is characterized by the repetition of archetypal models established in this sacred time: historical acts acquire meaning and validity only insofar as they consciously or unconsciously re-enact primordial patterns (Eliade, 1959). This framework is directly applicable to the narrative structure of Mahmud and Maryam, where the events of sixteenth-century history are simultaneously historical particulars and re-enactments of archetypal patterns embedded in the deeper memory of the culture (Eliade, 1963).

The third tradition is Joseph Campbell's comparative mythology and his theory of the monomyth — the universal structure of the hero's journey that underlies the mythological narratives of diverse cultures. Campbell's hero's journey proceeds through a tripartite sequence of separation, initiation, and return: the hero departs from the ordinary world, undergoes trials in an extraordinary realm, and returns transformed with knowledge or gifts for the community (Campbell, 2004). This pattern provides the structural template against which Mahmud's narrative arc can be interpreted and through which his particular historical and personal circumstances are linked to the universal archetype of heroic self-realization. Together, these three theoretical frameworks constitute a comprehensive interpretive apparatus for analyzing the reconstruction of archetypal memory in Elchin's novel.

3. Methodology

This study employs a qualitative interpretive methodology combining close textual analysis with comparative intertextual investigation. The primary method is close reading — the detailed examination of selected episodes, character representations, and symbolic motifs in the novel that reflect key archetypal patterns and mythological structures. Each element identified through close reading is analyzed in relation to the Jungian and Eliadean theoretical frameworks outlined above, with particular attention to the symbolic functions of characters, the mythopoetic construction of time and space, and the cosmic symbolism embedded in descriptions of natural phenomena. A comparative perspective supplements the close reading by situating the novel within its intertextual context: the Azerbaijani epic tradition of Kitabi-Dede Gorgud, the classical Eastern literary tradition represented by Nizami's Layla and Majnun, and the universal love archetypes of world literature including the Romeo and Juliet motif. This comparative dimension enables the study to trace the specific intertextual pathways through which Elchin activates and transforms collective memory in the novel.

4. Mythopoetic Structure: Time, Space, and Collective Memory

The poetic structure of Mahmud and Maryam is built upon the synthesis of historical reality and mythopoetic models of thinking. Events in the work unfold not only on political and social levels but across archetypal and mythological layers simultaneously. Although the plot is presented against the background of significant events in sixteenth-century Azerbaijani history, the ideological structure of the work is fundamentally based on the artistic interpretation of collective memory and mythological archetypes. The opening scene of the novel establishes this mythopoetic register from the outset through the representation of the minstrel's execution — an episode that simultaneously depicts a historically specific act of political violence and enacts the mythological model of cosmic harmony disrupted:

"Saz suddenly began to speak on its own and played the most sorrowful melody in the world... the sky neighed, and a torrential rain began" (Elchin, 2004, p. 144).

The parallel presentation of natural phenomena with human destiny in this episode is a defining characteristic of the mythological worldview as analyzed by Eliade (1959): natural events are not merely atmospheric background but symbolic participants in the human drama, reflecting the disruption of the cosmic order that acts of injustice bring about. This cosmic responsiveness of nature to human events — what Eliade terms the sympathy between the macrocosm and the microcosm in archaic thought — recurs throughout the novel as a consistent structural device linking individual fate to universal archetypal patterns.

The construction of time in the novel departs deliberately from the linear, progressive temporality of realist historical fiction. Elchin frequently refers to what Eliade (1959) characterizes as mythological time — a cyclical, repetitive temporality in which present events are understood as re-enactments of primordial patterns rather than unique, unrepeatable historical moments. This temporal structure is particularly evident in the novel's treatment of love and sacrifice as recurring archetypal events that transcend their specific sixteenth-century context. Similarly, the city of Ganja functions not merely as a geographical setting but as a symbolic locus of collective memory — a spatial container of accumulated historical time and communal experience:

"Ganja was asleep... the artisans, merchants, and court people of the city, struggling in the heat, had finally fallen asleep" (Elchin, 2004, p. 145).

In this description, the collective rhythm of urban life — with its simultaneous exhaustion and latent vitality — functions as a symbolic carrier of historical time and collective memory. Ganja is presented not as a static backdrop but as a living repository of the cultural and spiritual traditions that the novel's events will both draw on and transform.

5. Archetypal Characters: The System of Collective Memory

5.1 The Mother Archetype: Maryam

The most complex and multilayered archetypal structure in the novel is the mother archetype as embodied in the character of Maryam. Jung identified the mother archetype as one of the most powerful contents of the collective unconscious, encompassing not only biological maternity but the symbolic dimensions of origin, nourishment, spiritual purity, and regenerative power (Jung, 1969). In Mahmud and Maryam, the character of Maryam carries all of these dimensions simultaneously, functioning as both an individual character within the historical narrative and as a symbolic embodiment of archetypal motherhood in its cosmic sense.

The choice of name is semiotically deliberate. Maryam, the Azerbaijani form of Mary, carries resonances of the most sacred maternal figure in the Abrahamic traditions — a figure whose defining characteristics are precisely those that Jung associates with the positive pole of the mother archetype: purity, protective power, and the capacity for miraculous regeneration. The novel makes this symbolic dimension explicit through the episode of the withered date tree:

"In the middle of the desert stood a single dry date tree... suddenly, green leaves sprouted from its withered branches" (Elchin, 2004, p. 169).

This image crystallizes the regenerative aspect of the mother archetype with extraordinary precision. The withered tree — symbolizing spiritual desolation, the exhaustion of life, the apparent triumph of death — is revived through Maryam's presence or proximity, enacting the archetypal maternal function of restoring life where it has been extinguished. As Eliade (1963) demonstrates, the motif of the miraculous tree is one of the most universal symbols of the axis mundi — the cosmic center that connects the terrestrial with the divine — and its association with a female sacred figure is consistent across mythological traditions from the Near East to pre-Islamic Central Asia. In placing Maryam at the center of this episode, Elchin situates his character within this global mythological tradition while grounding it specifically in the Azerbaijani and broader Islamic cultural context.

5.2 The Hero Archetype: Mahmud

The character of Mahmud instantiates the hero archetype in its classical form as theorized by both Jung and Campbell. The hero archetype, as Jung analyzed it, represents the development of the individual ego in its struggle toward self-realization, involving a confrontation with the collective unconscious through its various projections — shadow, anima, wise old man — that ultimately results in psychological integration and spiritual maturity. Campbell's account of the monomyth specifies the structural stages of this journey: the call to adventure, the crossing of the threshold, the road of trials, the supreme ordeal, and the return or transformation (Campbell, 2004).

Mahmud's trajectory in the novel follows this archetypal pattern with considerable fidelity. The novel introduces him at the threshold of his hero's journey — the moment of pure idealism before experience:

"Mahmud was sixteen, yet he was so pure that he believed the world should be exactly like this" (Elchin, 2004, p. 147).

This initial presentation corresponds precisely to what Campbell terms the 'ordinary world' of the hero — the state of innocence and undifferentiated potential that precedes the call to adventure. Mahmud's love for Maryam constitutes this call: it draws him across the threshold into a world where his idealism is tested against the full weight of historical, religious, and social reality. The religious and social obstacles that structure the novel's conflict — the division between Muslim and Christian, the power of the Safavid state, the condemnation of their love by the structures of authority — function as the archetypal 'road of trials' through which Mahmud's heroic character is formed and tested. His ultimate fate, whatever form it takes in the novel's conclusion, constitutes the 'supreme ordeal' that transforms him from an idealistic youth into a figure of collective moral significance.

5.3 The Wise Old Man Archetype: Havalı Ibrahim

The character of Havalı Ibrahim embodies the wise old man archetype — what Jung also termed the senex or the spirit archetype — whose function in both mythological narrative and psychoanalytic theory is to serve as a guide, mediator, and revealer of hidden truths at critical junctures in the hero's journey (Jung, 1969). The wise old man archetype represents the capacity of the collective unconscious to make its wisdom available to the conscious ego at moments of maximum need and maximum receptivity, typically through a figure who appears to operate at the boundary between ordinary and extraordinary reality.

Havalı Ibrahim's characterization in the novel consistently emphasizes this liminal, boundary-crossing quality. His sudden states of revelation, his responsiveness to voices and presences from the invisible world, and his ecstatic physical episodes mark him as a figure who mediates between the visible and metaphysical dimensions of reality:

"Havalı Ibrahim suddenly widened his eyes, hearing voices from the unseen... then he would fall to the ground, writhing" (Elchin, 2004, p. 149).

These episodes recall the classical features of the shaman or spiritual mediator in Turkic and Azerbaijani pre-Islamic tradition — figures whose capacity to enter altered states of consciousness gave them access to knowledge unavailable to ordinary perception (Seyidov, 1983). Elchin's deployment of this figure thus operates simultaneously at two levels: at the universal level of the Jungian wise old man archetype, and at the culturally specific level of the Azerbaijani folkloric and shamanic tradition, grounding the universal in the particular and demonstrating precisely the kind of archetypal reinterpretation through cultural specificity that characterizes the novel's mythopoetic method throughout.

6. Intertextual Dimensions: Epic Tradition and Classical Literature

The restoration of archetypal memory in Mahmud and Maryam is realized not only through the direct deployment of Jungian archetypes but through a sustained intertextual engagement with the literary traditions that carry and transmit collective memory across generations. Two intertextual fields are particularly central: the Azerbaijani epic tradition represented by Kitabi-Dede Gorgud, and the classical Eastern literary tradition represented by Nizami's Layla and Majnun.

The resonances between Mahmud and Maryam and Kitabi-Dede Gorgud operate primarily at the level of the hero archetype and its relationship to collective ideals. The character of Deli Domrul in the epic tradition — a hero whose defiance of fate and struggle against supernatural forces expresses the individual's assertion of value against cosmic indifference — provides a cultural template that Mahmud's character both inherits and transforms. Where Deli Domrul's heroism is expressed through physical confrontation and martial valor, Mahmud's heroism is expressed through emotional fidelity and moral commitment in the face of social and religious prohibition — a transposition that reflects the transformation of collective values from a warrior-tribal society to a more complex, urban, and spiritually stratified historical context (Kazımov, 2009). The epic dimension of Mahmud's character — his embodiment of collective ideals rather than merely personal desires — is thus not simply an individual authorial choice but a deliberate activation of the archetypal heroic model encoded in the Azerbaijani epic tradition.

The intertextual relationship with Nizami's Layla and Majnun operates differently, engaging not with the hero archetype but with the love archetype in its transcendent, spiritualized form. In classical Eastern poetry, love is not merely a biographical or emotional phenomenon but a metaphysical orientation — a form of the soul's movement toward the divine, figured through the experience of longing for an unattainable beloved. Mahmud's love for Maryam inherits this metaphysical dimension: it is, at one level, a particular historical and biographical experience, but at another level a symbolic expression of the soul's orientation toward the sacred, the beautiful, and the transcendent. However, as the analysis has shown, Elchin does not simply reproduce the classical Eastern love archetype but critically transforms it by situating it within concrete historical and social constraints — the religious division between Muslim and Christian, the political violence of the Safavid state — that the idealized transcendence of the classical love narrative suppressed or sublimated. This transformation constitutes one of the novel's most significant literary achievements: the appropriation of a canonical archetypal structure and its reinvestment with historical and social specificity.

7. Discussion

The foregoing analysis demonstrates that the mythological, psychoanalytic, and intertextual dimensions of Mahmud and Maryam are not independent or parallel features of the novel but components of a unified and coherent artistic strategy whose ultimate aim is the reconstruction of archetypal memory — the activation, in the individual reader's consciousness, of the deep structural patterns of collective experience that Azerbaijani culture has accumulated and transmitted across generations. Elchin's method is neither purely traditionalist nor purely modernist: he neither reproduces the archetypal structures of the epic and mystical tradition unchanged, nor abandons them in favor of an exclusively realist historical narrative. Instead, he subjects these structures to a process of critical reinterpretation through which their universal significance is preserved and made newly accessible while their historical specificity is simultaneously acknowledged and respected.

This interpretive strategy has important implications for the broader question of the relationship between literature, collective memory, and cultural identity. Halbwachs (1992), in his foundational analysis of collective memory, argues that communities maintain their identity through the active, ongoing reconstruction of the past in forms that are meaningful to the present — a process in which literature, art, and ritual play irreplaceable roles. Elchin's novel exemplifies this process with particular clarity: by reconstructing the archetypal structures of Azerbaijani collective memory through the artistic medium of the historical novel, it makes that memory available to contemporary readers in a form that is both recognizably rooted in tradition and freshly relevant to present experience. The fact that the novel has achieved canonical status in Azerbaijani literature — and has attracted sustained scholarly and popular attention over two decades — is itself evidence of the success of this reconstructive project.

Propp's (1968) morphological analysis of the folktale, while focused on a different literary form, provides additional analytical support for the structural approach adopted in this article. Propp's demonstration that a limited set of narrative functions underlies the surface diversity of folktale plots is analogous to the Jungian argument that a limited set of archetypes underlies the surface diversity of mythological and literary characters. Both frameworks suggest that the power of narrative to engage collective memory derives precisely from its mobilization of these underlying structural patterns — and both are consistent with the interpretation of Mahmud and Maryam offered here.

8. Conclusion

This psychoanalytic and mythopoetic analysis of Elchin Afandiyev's Mahmud and Maryam has demonstrated that the novel constitutes one of the most significant examples in Azerbaijani prose of the artistic reconstruction of collective memory and archetypal thinking. The ideological and aesthetic structure of the work is built not only on the realistic depiction of historical events but on mythological motifs and a system of archetypal images that give the historical narrative its deeper, universally resonant significance.

The analysis has identified and theorized four principal archetypal structures operative in the novel: the mother archetype embodied in the character of Maryam, through whose association with sacred regeneration and the axis mundi the novel activates the most fundamental human experience of origin and renewal; the hero archetype instantiated in the character of Mahmud, whose journey from idealistic innocence through historical trial follows the universal monomythic pattern while grounding it in specifically Azerbaijani historical and cultural conditions; the wise old man archetype fulfilled by the character of Havalı Ibrahim, who mediates between the visible and invisible worlds in the tradition of the Azerbaijani shamanic healer; and the cosmic symbolism through which nature participates in human destiny as a manifestation of the deeper cosmic order whose disruption and restoration the novel enacts. Through these archetypes, Elchin transforms traditional themes of love, power, fate, and moral choice into artistic expressions of collective memory whose significance extends far beyond the particular historical circumstances of sixteenth-century Azerbaijan.

The intertextual dimensions of the novel — its engagement with the Azerbaijani epic tradition and with the classical Eastern love narrative — further enrich and complicate this archetypal structure by demonstrating that Elchin's reconstruction of collective memory is simultaneously individual, national, and universal: rooted in the specific traditions of Azerbaijani literary culture while opening onto the universal archetypal patterns that those traditions share with the mythological and literary heritage of humanity. Future research might productively extend this analysis to Elchin's other novels and dramatic works, examining whether the reconstructive strategy identified in Mahmud and Maryam constitutes a consistent characteristic of his literary method, and situating this method within the broader context of the recovery of national cultural memory in post-Soviet Azerbaijani literature.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: A.H., Z.B.; Methodology: A.H.; Investigation: A.H., Z.B.; Writing – original draft: A.H., Z.B.; Writing – review & editing: A.H.

References

Afandiyev, E. (2004). Mahmud and Maryam. Azerbaijan Publishing House.

Campbell, J. (2004). The hero with a thousand faces (2nd ed.). Princeton University Press.

Eliade, M. (1959). The sacred and the profane: The nature of religion. Harcourt Brace.

Eliade, M. (1963). Myth and reality. Harper & Row.

Halbwachs, M. (1992). On collective memory (L. A. Coser, Ed. & Trans.). University of Chicago Press.

Jung, C. G. (1969). The archetypes and the collective unconscious (2nd ed., R. F. C. Hull, Trans.). Princeton University Press.

Kazımov, Q. (2009). Azərbaycan folklorunun poetikası [Poetics of Azerbaijani folklore]. Elm.

Kitabi-Dədə Qorqud. (2004). Öndər nəşriyyatı.

Nizami Gəncəvi. (2004). Leyli və Məcnun [Layla and Majnun]. Lider nəşriyyatı.

Propp, V. (1968). Morphology of the folktale (L. Scott, Trans.). University of Texas Press.

Seyidov, M. (1983). Azərbaycan mifoloji düşüncəsinin qaynaqları [The origins of Azerbaijani mythological thinking]. Yazıçı.

Yusifli, V. (2010). Azərbaycan nəsrinin poetikası [Poetics of Azerbaijani prose]. Elm və Təhsil.

Received: 20 March 2026
Accepted: 28 April 2026
Published: 29 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Artificial Intelligence in Language Learning: Opportunities, Challenges, and Pedagogical Implications for EFL Classrooms

[1] **Fatime Ismayilli**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602019

Abstract. *The rapid proliferation of artificial intelligence technologies has introduced transformative possibilities for English as a Foreign Language (EFL) instruction, simultaneously generating complex pedagogical, ethical, and institutional challenges that demand systematic scholarly attention. This article examines the multidimensional role of artificial intelligence in language learning, analyzing its applications across four principal domains: AI-driven personalization and adaptive learning systems, natural language processing tools for writing and grammar development, conversational AI for speaking practice, and AI-assisted assessment and feedback. Drawing on a synthesis of recent empirical research and theoretical frameworks from second language acquisition and educational technology, the study evaluates both the documented benefits and the structural limitations of AI integration in EFL contexts. The findings indicate that AI technologies substantially enhance vocabulary acquisition, grammatical accuracy, learner autonomy, and communicative practice opportunities, particularly for learners in non-anglophone contexts with limited access to authentic English interaction. However, significant challenges persist, including the risk of over-reliance on AI-generated output, the ethical dimensions of AI-assisted academic production, digital equity concerns, and the pedagogical imperative to maintain the irreplaceable human dimensions of language instruction. The article concludes by proposing principles for the pedagogically responsible integration of AI into EFL classrooms, arguing that the most effective approach positions AI as an amplifier of human pedagogical intentionality rather than a substitute for it.*

Keywords: *artificial intelligence, EFL, language learning, natural language processing, adaptive learning, conversational AI, automated feedback, AI literacy*

1. Introduction

Few developments in the history of educational technology have generated as much simultaneous excitement and anxiety as the emergence of large-scale artificial intelligence systems capable of producing fluent, contextually appropriate text in dozens of languages. The release of conversational AI platforms, starting with GPT-3 in 2020 and accelerating dramatically with GPT-4 and subsequent models from 2022 onward, has confronted English as a Foreign Language (EFL) educators with a set of challenges and opportunities whose pedagogical implications are still being

[1] Ismayilli, F. Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: fatimeismayilli@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-9762-7446

actively debated (Baidoo-Anu & Ansah, 2023). On one side of this debate stands the recognition that AI tools offer unprecedented possibilities for personalized, accessible, and autonomous language learning — possibilities that are particularly significant for learners in non-anglophone contexts, such as the Azerbaijani educational environment, where access to authentic English interaction outside the classroom has historically been limited. On the other side stands the concern that uncritical adoption of AI tools may undermine the development of genuine linguistic competence, erode academic integrity, and widen rather than narrow existing educational inequalities.

The integration of artificial intelligence into language education is not, of course, an entirely new phenomenon. Computer-assisted language learning (CALL) has a history extending back to the 1960s, and the development of natural language processing (NLP) technologies through the 1980s and 1990s produced the first generation of automated grammar checkers, vocabulary learning systems, and text-to-speech tools that are still in use today (Warschauer & Healey, 1998; Chapelle, 2001). What is genuinely new about the current generation of AI language tools is their combination of scale, fluency, and interactive capability: contemporary large language models (LLMs) can engage in extended conversations, provide nuanced feedback on written texts, explain grammatical concepts in learner-appropriate language, generate example sentences across the full range of vocabulary and grammar, and simulate the kind of responsive, meaning-focused interaction that SLA research identifies as central to language acquisition (Long, 1996; Krashen, 1985).

This article provides a systematic examination of the role of artificial intelligence in EFL language learning across four principal application domains: AI-driven personalization and adaptive learning; NLP-based writing and grammar tools; conversational AI for speaking and interaction practice; and AI-assisted assessment and feedback. For each domain, the article reviews the relevant theoretical framework, synthesizes the available empirical evidence, and identifies the key opportunities and challenges that EFL educators and learners face. The article concludes by proposing a framework of principles for the pedagogically responsible integration of AI into EFL classrooms — one that positions AI as an instrument in the service of human learning and pedagogical intentionality rather than as a replacement for the essentially human dimensions of language education.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundations of this analysis draw on three intersecting bodies of scholarship. The first is second language acquisition (SLA) theory, particularly the frameworks that have the most direct bearing on technology-mediated instruction. Krashen's (1985) Input Hypothesis remains foundational: the claim that acquisition occurs through exposure to comprehensible input slightly above the learner's current proficiency level provides the theoretical rationale for AI systems that can dynamically adjust the difficulty and complexity of their linguistic output to match individual learner profiles. Long's (1996) Interaction Hypothesis, which emphasizes the role of meaning negotiation in face-to-face interaction as a mechanism for acquisition, underpins the evaluation of conversational AI tools: to the degree that AI conversation partners can simulate the meaning-negotiation dynamics of human interaction, they may provide acquisition-facilitative exposure even in the absence of a human interlocutor. Swain's (1985) Output Hypothesis further supports the pedagogical value of AI-based production tools: if acquisition requires not only input but also the production of output that stretches learners' linguistic resources, then tools that prompt, scaffold, and evaluate written and spoken output make a genuine contribution to the acquisition process.

The second theoretical tradition is educational technology research, particularly the CALL and technology-enhanced language learning (TELL) literature. Chapelle's (2001) framework for evaluating CALL tasks — assessing their potential to provide comprehensible input, draw attention to linguistic form, allow meaning-focused output practice, and facilitate corrective feedback — provides a principled basis for evaluating AI language tools. The framework's emphasis on pedagogical task design as the primary determinant of learning outcomes — rather than the technology itself — is particularly relevant to the current analysis, as it directs attention away from the features of specific AI tools and toward the instructional contexts and pedagogical intentions within which those tools are deployed.

The third tradition is the ethics and equity literature in educational technology, particularly the growing body of scholarship on algorithmic bias, digital divide concerns, and the ethics of AI-generated academic work. Warschauer's (2003) analysis of technology and social inclusion provides the foundational framework for understanding how differential access to AI tools and the digital literacy required to use them effectively may reproduce or amplify existing educational inequalities. More recent contributions from Baidoo-Anu and Ansah (2023) and Ismayilli (2024) address the specific implications of generative AI for academic integrity and the pedagogical challenges of teaching in contexts where AI-generated text is readily available to students.

3. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative synthesis methodology drawing on a systematic review of peer-reviewed research published between 2018 and 2025, identified through searches of Scopus, Web of Science, and ERIC. Search terms included 'artificial intelligence AND language learning', 'ChatGPT AND EFL', 'natural language processing AND second language acquisition', 'conversational AI AND speaking practice', 'automated writing evaluation', and 'AI AND language assessment'. Inclusion criteria required peer-reviewed publication, focus on EFL or ESL contexts, empirical or theoretical engagement with AI tools, and availability in English. The synthesis proceeds analytically, identifying patterns and contradictions across the literature to produce a coherent account of each application domain.

4. AI-Driven Personalization and Adaptive Learning

One of the most theoretically compelling applications of AI in EFL education is the personalization of learning trajectories through adaptive systems that continuously analyze learner performance and dynamically adjust instructional content, difficulty, and pacing to optimize outcomes for each individual. The fundamental pedagogical limitation of traditional classroom instruction — the impossibility of simultaneously attending to the individual needs of twenty or thirty learners with different proficiency levels, learning rates, and linguistic backgrounds — is precisely the limitation that AI adaptive systems are designed to address (Godwin-Jones, 2017).

Intelligent tutoring systems (ITS) and adaptive learning platforms represent the most sophisticated instantiation of this approach. Platforms such as Duolingo, Carnegie Learning, and specialized EFL tools such as ELSA Speak use machine learning algorithms to model individual learners' knowledge states and select instructional tasks calibrated to challenge learners within their zone of proximal development (Vygotsky, 1978). Research on adaptive language learning platforms has consistently demonstrated advantages over non-adaptive instruction in vocabulary acquisition and grammatical accuracy, with several studies reporting 30–40% higher retention rates in adaptive conditions relative to traditional instruction (Godwin-Jones, 2017). Critically, adaptive systems can identify persistent error patterns that human teachers may miss in large class settings, enabling targeted remediation at the level of specific phonological, grammatical, or lexical difficulties.

The theoretical alignment between adaptive AI instruction and SLA research is considerable. Krashen's (1985) concept of comprehensible input — language slightly above the learner's current level — is operationalized in adaptive systems through dynamic difficulty adjustment that ensures learners are consistently challenged without being overwhelmed. VanPatten's (1996) input processing model, which predicts that learners prioritize lexical over grammatical processing when cognitive resources are limited, suggests that adaptive systems that reduce cognitive load through appropriate difficulty calibration may improve the depth of grammatical processing. Dörnyei's (2009) motivational research further supports adaptive instruction: learners who experience consistent success at the appropriate level of challenge report higher motivation, greater persistence, and stronger identification with their ideal L2 self than those who encounter either boredom or excessive difficulty.

5. Natural Language Processing Tools for Writing and Grammar Development

5.1 Automated Writing Evaluation and Grammar Checking

Natural language processing tools for writing support — including grammar checkers, automated writing evaluation (AWE) systems, and large language model-based writing assistants — have become ubiquitous in the EFL learning environment. The theoretical rationale for these tools draws on Swain's (1985) Output Hypothesis and the broader research literature on corrective feedback: if learners benefit from having their linguistic errors identified and explained, and if they benefit from being prompted to revise their output with attention to accuracy, then tools that provide immediate, detailed feedback on written production make a genuine contribution to writing development (Ellis, 2009).

Research on AWE systems such as Turnitin's writing tools and iWrite has demonstrated consistent improvements in surface-level grammatical accuracy — particularly in the reduction of morphological errors, subject-verb agreement violations, and article usage errors — among EFL learners who receive automated feedback (Warschauer & Grimes, 2008). These surface-level gains align with the processing predictions of VanPatten's (1996) model: automated feedback draws learners' attention to grammatical forms that they might otherwise process shallowly, strengthening the form-meaning connections necessary for accurate production. Generative AI tools such as ChatGPT and Claude have extended AWE capabilities substantially, offering not only error identification but also explanation, reformulation, and stylistic suggestion at a level of sophistication and naturalness that earlier rule-based systems could not achieve (Baidoo-Anu & Ansah, 2023).

The pedagogical limitations of AI writing tools require equally careful attention. The most significant concern is the risk of over-reliance: learners who habitually correct their writing with AI assistance may develop accurate output without developing the metacognitive awareness and self-monitoring capacity that are necessary for writing independence. Ferris (2011) argues that the most pedagogically effective corrective feedback is that which prompts learners to notice and correct their own errors rather than simply accepting AI-generated corrections — a principle that implies the need for instructional frameworks that use AI feedback as a scaffold for self-correction rather than a replacement for it. The ethics of AI-assisted academic writing represent a further pedagogical challenge: when AI tools can generate entire paragraphs or essays of high linguistic quality, the traditional essay assessment task loses its validity as a measure of individual linguistic competence, requiring fundamental rethinking of writing pedagogy and assessment design (Ismayilli, 2024).

5.2 Vocabulary Acquisition Support

AI-driven vocabulary learning systems represent a particularly well-developed application of NLP technology to EFL instruction. Spaced repetition algorithms, exemplified by platforms such as Anki and Quizlet, use statistical models of forgetting to schedule vocabulary review at the optimal interval for long-term retention — operationalizing the distributed practice principle that memory research has consistently identified as a critical determinant of retention (Nation, 2001). Research on spaced repetition vocabulary learning has documented significantly superior long-term retention compared to massed practice, with several studies reporting 50–70% higher retention at six-week delayed tests (Webb, 2007). Contemporary AI vocabulary systems extend these gains by integrating contextual sentence examples, audio pronunciation, visual imagery, and semantic network information — engaging the multiple cognitive pathways associated with deeper lexical encoding in dual coding theory (Paivio, 1986).

6. Conversational AI for Speaking and Interaction Practice

The application of conversational AI to speaking practice addresses one of the most intractable challenges of EFL instruction in non-anglophone contexts: the scarcity of opportunities for extended, meaningful English conversation outside the classroom. For learners in settings where English is rarely spoken in the surrounding environment — including most of the Azerbaijani educational context — the classroom may provide the only regular opportunity for spoken English production, and the constraints of large class sizes typically mean that individual speaking time is severely limited. Conversational AI systems offer a potential solution to this problem by providing on-demand, infinitely patient, and linguistically sophisticated conversation partners available at any time and at no marginal cost (Jia, 2009).

Research on the effectiveness of conversational AI for speaking development has produced consistently positive results across several dimensions. Learners who engage in regular conversation with AI partners report significantly reduced foreign language anxiety relative to those practicing exclusively in human interaction contexts, a finding consistent with Krashen's (1985) Affective Filter Hypothesis: the absence of social judgment and the consequencelessness of errors in AI conversation create a low-anxiety environment that lowers the affective barrier to communicative risk-taking. Li et al. (2023) conducted a controlled study of ChatGPT-assisted speaking practice among Chinese EFL university students, finding significant improvements in fluency, complexity, and accuracy over an eight-week period in the AI conversation condition relative to a self-study control group. Huang and Zhong (2023) similarly reported that EFL learners who used AI chatbots for conversation practice demonstrated superior gains in pragmatic competence — the ability to use language appropriately in context — compared to those relying exclusively on textbook-based speaking practice.

The theoretical alignment between conversational AI and SLA research is compelling but requires qualification. Long's (1996) Interaction Hypothesis holds that acquisition is facilitated by negotiation of meaning — the interactional work that occurs when a communication breakdown prompts interlocutors to reformulate, clarify, and confirm understanding. Contemporary large language models are considerably more sophisticated than earlier chatbot systems in their capacity to simulate meaning negotiation, but research suggests that the nature of human-AI negotiation differs qualitatively from human-human negotiation in ways that may limit some of its acquisition-facilitative properties. AI systems tend toward over-accommodation — adjusting their language to match the learner's level rather than maintaining communicative challenge — which may reduce the frequency of the productive misunderstandings that drive acquisition in human interaction (Li et al., 2023). Additionally, conversational AI cannot replicate the sociolinguistic, pragmatic, and paralinguistic dimensions of authentic human communication — including gesture, facial expression, and the social meaning of register choices — that are essential components of full communicative competence.

7. AI-Assisted Assessment and Feedback

Assessment and feedback represent a domain in which AI technologies have made some of the most practically significant contributions to EFL instruction, addressing the perennial pedagogical challenge of providing timely, individualized, and detailed feedback to large numbers of learners. Ismayilli (2024) argues that conventional assessment approaches in foreign language instruction frequently measure the decontextualized recall of grammatical rules rather than the communicative competence that is the ultimate goal of language instruction, and that this mismatch is particularly acute in large-class EFL contexts where the demands of summative assessment may distort the instructional priorities of both teachers and learners.

AI assessment tools address this mismatch in several ways. Automated scoring of written and spoken texts — using machine learning models trained on human-rated examples — enables the rapid, consistent evaluation of large volumes of learner output that human assessment alone cannot achieve efficiently. Research on the reliability and validity of AI-generated scores relative to human rater judgements has demonstrated strong correlation for holistic measures of writing quality (Warschauer & Grimes, 2008), though AI scoring systems show lower reliability for higher-order discourse qualities such as argument coherence, cultural appropriateness, and pragmatic felicity. Diagnostic AI assessment — which goes beyond holistic scoring to identify specific patterns of learner difficulty across linguistic dimensions — offers particularly valuable information for instructional planning, enabling teachers to target instruction at the precise areas where learners are systematically struggling (Godwin-Jones, 2017).

Formative AI feedback — the provision of ongoing, process-oriented feedback during learning rather than summative judgement at its conclusion — represents the most pedagogically valuable application of AI assessment technology. When AI feedback is designed to prompt learner reflection rather than simply provide correct answers, it can develop the metacognitive self-monitoring capacity that distinguishes proficient from developing language users. The most effective pedagogical models appear to combine AI feedback with structured opportunities for learner reflection and revision, using AI as a first-pass feedback tool that draws learners' attention to specific areas of difficulty before they engage with teacher or peer feedback (Ellis, 2009). This hybrid model maximizes the efficiency of teacher time while cultivating the learner autonomy and self-regulation that are hallmarks of successful language acquisition.

8. Challenges and Ethical Considerations

The opportunities presented by AI in EFL instruction are genuine and substantial, but they must be evaluated against a set of challenges and ethical considerations that are equally real and that require systematic pedagogical attention. The most fundamental concern is the risk of over-reliance: learners who depend on AI tools to produce, correct, and improve their language may develop accurate output without developing the underlying competence that would enable them to perform independently in AI-free contexts. This concern is particularly acute for productive skills

— writing and speaking — where AI assistance is most readily available and most capable of producing high-quality output that masks underlying learner difficulty (Baidoo-Anu & Ansah, 2023).

The ethics of AI-assisted language production represent a further challenge of considerable complexity. The availability of AI tools capable of generating grammatically flawless, stylistically polished English text fundamentally destabilizes the traditional essay and written assignment as a measure of individual language competence. If the purpose of writing assignments is to develop and assess learners' productive language ability, then assignments completed with extensive AI assistance fail to serve this purpose regardless of the quality of the final product. EFL educators must therefore reconsider both the design of writing tasks — favoring process-based, in-class, or interactive formats that cannot easily be delegated to AI — and the explicit teaching of AI literacy as a component of language education, ensuring that learners understand both the capabilities and the limitations of AI writing tools and develop principled practices for their responsible use (Ismayilli, 2024).

Digital equity concerns add a further dimension to the ethical analysis. Access to high-quality AI language learning tools is not uniformly distributed: premium features of platforms such as ChatGPT Plus, ELSA Speak, and Grammarly Premium require financial resources that may be unavailable to learners in lower-income contexts. Device availability, internet connectivity, and digital literacy — the capacity to effectively select, evaluate, and learn from AI tools — are themselves unevenly distributed across socioeconomic strata, meaning that AI integration in education has the potential to widen existing achievement gaps rather than narrow them (Warschauer, 2003). Educators and institutions must be mindful of these equity implications when designing AI-integrated instruction, ensuring that AI tools are treated as supplements to rather than replacements for the equitable provision of quality human instruction.

9. Pedagogical Principles for Responsible AI Integration

The analysis of the four principal application domains and their associated challenges converges on a set of principles for the pedagogically responsible integration of AI into EFL classrooms. The first and most fundamental principle is intentionality: AI tools should be selected and deployed in response to clearly articulated pedagogical objectives, with explicit attention to the SLA research on how specific types of AI-mediated interaction contribute to the acquisition of specific linguistic competencies. Technology should serve pedagogy, not displace it — and the selection of any AI tool should be preceded by the question of what specific learning challenge it addresses and what evidence exists for its effectiveness.

The second principle is scaffolded independence: AI tools should be used in ways that develop rather than replace learner autonomy. This means designing instructional sequences that initially provide substantial AI support but progressively withdraw it as learners develop competence, ensuring that learners develop the capacity to perform without AI assistance as well as with it. The metacognitive dimension of this principle — explicitly teaching learners to reflect on how AI feedback can inform their own self-correction and improvement — is particularly important for developing the self-regulation capacities that distinguish successful language learners (Dörnyei, 2009).

The third principle is critical AI literacy: EFL instruction should explicitly develop learners' understanding of how AI language tools work, what their limitations are, and how to use them responsibly and effectively. This includes understanding the ways in which AI can generate plausible but linguistically or factually incorrect output, the ethical dimensions of AI-assisted academic production, and the distinction between using AI as a learning scaffold and using it as a substitute for learning. As Nuri and Ismayilli (2025) argue, developing this kind of critical technological literacy is increasingly a core component of the educational preparation required for full participation in contemporary professional and academic life.

The fourth principle is human-centeredness: no matter how sophisticated AI language tools become, they cannot replicate the irreducibly human dimensions of language education — the relational engagement between teacher and learner, the social meaning of authentic communicative interaction, the cultural knowledge that underlies genuine pragmatic competence, and the motivational significance of learning a language within a community of speakers. AI tools should be positioned as amplifiers of human pedagogical capability rather than replacements for it, freeing teachers from time-consuming routine tasks — grammar checking, vocabulary drilling, routine practice — so that they can invest more deeply in the distinctively human aspects of language instruction that AI cannot provide.

10. Conclusion

This article has examined the role of artificial intelligence in EFL language learning across four principal application domains: adaptive personalization, NLP-based writing and grammar tools, conversational AI for speaking practice, and AI-assisted assessment and feedback. The analysis has demonstrated that AI technologies, when integrated within pedagogically coherent frameworks, offer genuine and substantial enhancements to the conditions for English language acquisition — expanding access to personalized instruction, providing immediate and detailed feedback, enabling speaking practice outside the classroom, and generating diagnostic information that can sharpen instructional targeting. These benefits are particularly significant for learners in non-anglophone contexts with limited access to authentic English interaction, where AI tools can partially compensate for the scarcity of naturalistic language exposure.

At the same time, the analysis has identified significant challenges and ethical considerations that require systematic pedagogical attention: the risk of over-reliance, the destabilization of traditional assessment practices, digital equity concerns, and the imperative to preserve the human dimensions of language instruction that no AI system can replicate. Navigating these challenges requires not only individual pedagogical judgment but institutional frameworks — policies on AI use in assessment, professional development programs for teacher AI literacy, and equitable provision of AI-supported instruction across learner populations. The future of AI in EFL education lies not in the technology itself but in the wisdom, intentionality, and human care with which it is deployed in the service of genuine language learning.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: F.I.; Methodology: F.I.; Investigation: F.I.; Writing – original draft: F.I.; Writing – review & editing: F.I.

References

Baidoo-Anu, D., & Ansah, L. O. (2023). Education in the era of generative artificial intelligence (AI): Understanding the potential benefits of ChatGPT in promoting teaching and learning. Journal of AI, 7(1), 52–62. https://doi.org/10.61969/jai.1337500

Chapelle, C. A. (2001). Computer applications in second language acquisition. Cambridge University Press.

Dörnyei, Z. (2009). The L2 motivational self system. In Z. Dörnyei & E. Ushioda (Eds.), Motivation, language identity and the L2 self (pp. 9–42). Multilingual Matters.

Ellis, R. (2009). A typology of written corrective feedback types. ELT Journal, 63(2), 97–107. https://doi.org/10.1093/elt/ccn023

Ferris, D. R. (2011). Treatment of error in second language student writing (2nd ed.). University of Michigan Press.

Godwin-Jones, R. (2017). Smartphones and language learning. Language Learning & Technology, 21(2), 3–17.

Huang, J., & Zhong, W. (2023). EFL learners' pragmatic development through AI chatbot interaction. System, 112, Article 102985. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.system.2023.102985

Ismayilli, T. (2024). Assessment and evaluation of foreign language knowledge. Elmi Tədqiqat, 52.

Jia, J. (2009). CSIEC: A computer assisted English learning chatbot based on textual knowledge and reasoning. Knowledge-Based Systems, 22(4), 249–255. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.knosys.2008.09.001

Krashen, S. D. (1985). The input hypothesis: Issues and implications. Longman.

Li, R., Meng, Z., Tian, M., Zhang, Z., & Xiao, W. (2023). The effects of ChatGPT-based AI on EFL learners' speaking practice. System, 116, Article 103100. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.system.2023.103100

Long, M. H. (1996). The role of the linguistic environment in second language acquisition. In W. C. Ritchie & T. K. Bhatia (Eds.), Handbook of second language acquisition (pp. 413–468). Academic Press.

Nation, I. S. P. (2001). Learning vocabulary in another language. Cambridge University Press.

Nuri, A., & Ismayilli, T. (2025). The importance of student motivation. Science, Education and Innovations in the Context of Modern Problems, 8(6), 260–262.

Paivio, A. (1986). Mental representations: A dual coding approach. Oxford University Press.

Swain, M. (1985). Communicative competence: Some roles of comprehensible input and comprehensible output in its development. In S. Gass & C. Madden (Eds.), Input in second language acquisition (pp. 235–253). Newbury House.

VanPatten, B. (1996). Input processing and grammar instruction: Theory and research. Ablex.

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Warschauer, M. (2003). Technology and social inclusion: Rethinking the digital divide. MIT Press.

Warschauer, M., & Grimes, D. (2008). Automated writing assessment in the classroom. Pedagogies: An International Journal, 3(1), 22–36. https://doi.org/10.1080/15544800701771580

Warschauer, M., & Healey, D. (1998). Computers and language learning: An overview. Language Teaching, 31(2), 57–71. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0261444800012970

Webb, S. (2007). The effects of repetition on vocabulary knowledge. Applied Linguistics, 28(1), 46–65. https://doi.org/10.1093/applin/aml048

Received: 10 March 2026
Accepted: 28 April 2026
Published: 29 April 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Impact of Gestures on Theatrical Scene Language

[1] **Gulkhara Ahmadova**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602020

Abstract. *This study examines the impact of gestures in theatrical scene language, emphasizing their role as a central component of non-verbal communication in performance. Drawing on theoretical perspectives from scholars such as Adam Kendon and Keir Elam, the research adopts a qualitative-descriptive methodology combining literature review and performance analysis across diverse theatrical styles, including realism, physical theatre, and mime. The findings reveal that gestures function as powerful semiotic tools that enhance emotional expression, clarify narrative structure, and contribute to character development. They also serve as a bridge across linguistic and cultural boundaries, enabling audience comprehension in multilingual or non-verbal contexts. Furthermore, the study highlights the cognitive dimension of gesture interpretation, supporting theories of embodied perception associated with Maurice Merleau-Ponty. The results demonstrate that gestures operate on multiple levels—emotional, symbolic, and spatial—while interacting dynamically with verbal language and other theatrical elements. However, their effectiveness depends on appropriate use and contextual integration within performance. The study concludes that gestures are not merely supplementary but integral to theatrical communication, shaping both meaning production and audience engagement, and should therefore occupy a more prominent place in theatre studies and actor training.*

Keywords: *gestures, theatre, non-verbal communication, performance, semiotics, audience perception*

1. Introduction

Theatre is a multimodal art form that combines verbal and non-verbal elements to construct meaning. Among these elements, gestures play a crucial role in shaping theatrical scene language. Gestures — intentional bodily movements that convey meaning — have been central to performance traditions across cultures and historical periods (Sadikhova & Babayev, 2025). From classical Greek theatre to contemporary experimental performances, actors rely on gestures to communicate emotions, intentions, and narrative developments (Ahmedova, 2025).

Theatre, as a composite art form, integrates verbal language, visual imagery, sound, and bodily expression to construct meaning within a performative space (Ahmedova, 2026). Among these

[1] Ahmadova, G. Doctor of Philosophy in Philology, Associate Professor, Chair of Theatre and Cultural Studies, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Correspondence: gulxareahmedova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0007-7069-4836

components, gestures occupy a central role in shaping what is often referred to as theatrical scene language — the system through which meaning is encoded and transmitted on stage. Gestures can be broadly defined as purposeful movements of the body, particularly of the hands, face, and posture, that communicate emotional states, intentions, and symbolic meanings. In theatrical performance, gestures operate not only as supportive elements to speech but also as independent semiotic resources capable of conveying complex layers of meaning (Kendon, 2004).

From a historical perspective, the significance of gestures in theatre can be traced back to ancient performance traditions. In classical Greek theatre, exaggerated bodily movements were essential for communicating with large audiences in open-air amphitheaters, where subtle facial expressions could not be easily perceived. Similarly, in Asian theatrical traditions such as Japanese Noh and Indian Kathakali, codified gesture systems — often referred to as "gesture languages" — serve as primary narrative tools, with each movement carrying specific symbolic meanings (Fischer-Lichte, 2008). These examples illustrate that gestures are not merely decorative but constitute structured systems of communication embedded within cultural performance practices.

The theoretical foundation for understanding gestures in theatre is strongly influenced by semiotics, the study of signs and sign systems. According to Elam (1980), theatrical performance can be viewed as a network of signs in which gestures function alongside speech, costume, and staging to produce meaning. Gestures may act as iconic signs (resembling what they represent), indexical signs (indicating a relationship), or symbolic signs (conveying culturally learned meanings). This semiotic perspective highlights the complexity of gesture interpretation, as meaning is often co-constructed by performers and audiences within specific cultural and contextual frameworks.

In addition to semiotics, research in non-verbal communication and kinesics provides valuable insights into the function of gestures. Birdwhistell (1970) argues that body movement constitutes a structured system comparable to verbal language, governed by patterns and conventions that can be analyzed and interpreted. In theatrical contexts, this system is often heightened and stylized, enabling performers to amplify meaning and emotional impact. Moreover, Kendon (2004) emphasizes that gestures are closely integrated with speech, forming a unified communicative act rather than functioning as separate channels.

The role of gestures becomes particularly significant in contexts where verbal language is limited or absent. In forms such as mime and physical theatre, gestures serve as the primary mode of storytelling, replacing spoken dialogue entirely. Practitioners like Grotowski (1968) have emphasized the expressive potential of the human body, advocating for a "poor theatre" in which the actor's physicality becomes the central medium of communication. Similarly, Artaud (1958) proposed a theatre of cruelty that prioritizes physical expression and sensory impact over traditional text-based performance, underscoring the power of gestures to evoke visceral audience responses.

From a cognitive perspective, gestures also play a crucial role in audience comprehension and engagement. The theory of embodied cognition suggests that human understanding is deeply rooted in bodily experience, meaning that physical movement can facilitate cognitive processing and emotional resonance (Merleau-Ponty, 1962). In theatrical settings, gestures provide visual cues that help audiences interpret narrative developments, recognize character intentions, and connect emotionally with the performance (Sadikhova & Babayev, 2025). This is particularly important in multicultural or multilingual contexts, where gestures can bridge linguistic gaps and create a shared communicative space.

Despite their importance, gestures have often been underexplored in comparison to textual and linguistic elements of theatre. Traditional theatre studies have tended to prioritize dramatic texts and dialogue, sometimes neglecting the embodied aspects of performance. However, contemporary performance studies have increasingly recognized the need to analyze theatre as a holistic system in which gestures play an integral role (Schechner, 2013). This shift reflects a broader interdisciplinary interest in non-verbal communication across fields such as linguistics, anthropology, and cognitive science.

Furthermore, the relationship between gestures and character construction is a critical area of inquiry. Stanislavski (1936) emphasized the importance of physical actions in developing authentic character portrayals, arguing that internal emotions are often expressed and even generated through external movement. This approach underscores the dynamic interplay between body and mind in acting, where gestures are not merely expressive outputs but also tools for generating meaning and emotional truth.

Given these considerations, the present study seeks to examine the impact of gestures within theatrical scene language, focusing on their communicative, expressive, and interpretative functions (Ahmedova, 2025). By integrating perspectives from semiotics, performance studies, and cognitive theory, this research aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of how gestures contribute to the construction of meaning in theatre. In doing so, it addresses a critical gap in existing literature and highlights the necessity of considering non-verbal elements as central components of theatrical analysis.

2. Methods

This study employs a qualitative-descriptive research design aimed at providing an in-depth exploration of the role of gestures in theatrical scene language. The methodology is grounded in an interdisciplinary framework that draws on performance studies, semiotics, and non-verbal communication theory. By combining multiple data sources and analytical perspectives, the study seeks to ensure a comprehensive and nuanced understanding of how gestures function within theatrical contexts.

2.1 Research Design

A qualitative approach was selected due to the interpretative nature of theatrical performance and the symbolic complexity of gestures. Unlike quantitative methods, which focus on measurement and statistical analysis, qualitative research allows for detailed examination of meaning-making processes and contextual variations (Schechner, 2013). The study adopts a descriptive-analytical model, aiming not only to observe and categorize gestures but also to interpret their communicative and aesthetic functions within specific performance settings.

2.2 Data Sources

The research is based on two primary data sources. First, a systematic review of academic texts related to theatre semiotics, kinesics, and performance theory was conducted. Key works by scholars such as Adam Kendon, Erika Fischer-Lichte, and Richard Schechner were included to establish a theoretical foundation. Additional sources from cognitive science and anthropology were incorporated to contextualize gesture as a broader communicative phenomenon. Second, a purposive sample of theatrical performances was selected for analysis. These included recorded stage productions and documented live performances representing diverse theatrical traditions, such as realism, physical theatre, and mime. The selection criteria ensured diversity in style, cultural background, and reliance on gesture-based communication.

2.3 Sampling Strategy

A purposive sampling method was used to select performances that prominently feature gestures as a communicative tool. The sample included realist theatre productions emphasizing naturalistic gestures, physical theatre performances characterized by exaggerated bodily expression, and non-verbal or minimally verbal performances, including mime. This variation allowed for comparative analysis across different theatrical forms, highlighting how gesture usage adapts to stylistic and cultural contexts.

2.4 Data Collection Procedures

Data were collected through systematic observation and documentation of selected performances. The process involved repeated viewing of recorded performances to ensure accuracy, note-taking focused on gesture types, frequency, and context, and identification of key scenes where gestures significantly contributed to meaning-making. In addition, textual analysis of scripts (where available) was conducted to compare intended dialogue with performed gestures, allowing for examination of alignment or divergence between verbal and non-verbal elements.

2.5 Analytical Framework

The analysis was guided by a combination of semiotic and kinesic frameworks. Drawing on Elam (1980), gestures were examined as signs within a broader theatrical sign system. Each gesture was analyzed based on its type (iconic, indexical, or symbolic), its function (emotional expression, narrative support, or characterization), and its context (interaction with dialogue, staging, and other performance elements). Kinesic analysis, informed by Birdwhistell (1970), was used to identify recurring patterns and structures in body movement. This included examination of posture, facial expression, hand gestures, and spatial positioning.

2.6 Data Coding and Categorization

A thematic coding process was applied to organize the data. Observed gestures were categorized into key themes including emotional amplification, narrative clarification, cultural symbolism, and character construction. Coding was conducted iteratively, allowing categories to emerge and be refined throughout the analysis. This inductive approach ensured that findings were grounded in the data rather than imposed by preconceived assumptions. To enhance the credibility of the study, triangulation was employed by combining literature review and performance analysis to cross-validate findings. Thick description provided detailed accounts of gestures and their contexts to support interpretative claims, and comparative analysis examined multiple theatrical styles to identify consistent patterns and variations. Although qualitative research does not aim for statistical generalizability, these measures help ensure that the findings are robust and transferable to similar contexts.

All performance materials used in this study were publicly available or accessed through academic and institutional sources. Proper acknowledgment of original productions and scholarly works was maintained throughout the research process. No human subjects were directly involved, and therefore no ethical risks related to participant consent or confidentiality were present.

3. Results

The qualitative analysis of theatrical performances and relevant literature revealed that gestures function as a complex and highly structured component of theatrical scene language. Rather than serving as incidental or purely decorative elements, gestures were consistently observed to perform multiple, overlapping communicative functions. These functions contribute to the construction of meaning at emotional, narrative, and symbolic levels.

3.1 Gestures as Amplifiers of Emotional Expression

One of the most prominent findings is the role of gestures in intensifying and externalizing emotional states. Across all examined performance styles, gestures were used to make internal emotions visible and accessible to the audience. In realist theatre, subtle facial expressions and controlled body movements conveyed nuanced psychological states, aligning with principles established by Konstantin Stanislavski, who emphasized the importance of physical actions in expressing inner emotion. In contrast, physical theatre and mime employed exaggerated gestures to magnify emotional impact, ensuring clarity even in the absence of dialogue. This finding supports Kendon's (2004) argument that gestures are integral to meaning-making rather than supplementary to speech. The data indicate that audiences rely heavily on visual cues to interpret emotional content, particularly in scenes with minimal verbal explanation.

3.2 Narrative Structuring and Clarification

Gestures were also found to play a crucial role in structuring and clarifying narrative progression. In complex scenes involving multiple characters or rapid plot developments, gestures functioned as visual markers that guided audience attention. For example, directional movements, pointing, and spatial positioning were frequently used to indicate relationships between characters or shifts in focus. From a semiotic perspective, as outlined by Keir Elam (1980), these gestures operate as indexical signs, linking physical actions to narrative elements. The analysis showed that gestures often anticipate or reinforce spoken dialogue, creating redundancy that enhances comprehension. This redundancy is particularly important in large performance spaces or multicultural audiences where verbal clarity may be limited.

3.3 Gestures as Tools for Character Construction

Another significant finding is the role of gestures in defining and differentiating characters. Each character exhibited a distinct gestural pattern, including posture, movement rhythm, and habitual actions. These patterns contributed to the audience's understanding of personality traits, emotional states, and social roles. For instance, authoritative characters were often associated with upright posture, controlled movements, and deliberate gestures, while submissive or anxious characters displayed constrained or erratic movements. This aligns with the concept of "embodied characterization," where physical behavior becomes a primary indicator of identity (Fischer-Lichte, 2008). The findings suggest that gestures not only reflect character traits but actively construct them within the performance.

3.4 Bridging Linguistic and Cultural Boundaries

The study found that gestures serve as an effective communicative bridge in multilingual and intercultural contexts. In performances where language barriers existed, gestures enabled audiences to grasp essential narrative elements and emotional dynamics. This was particularly evident in non-verbal theatre forms such as mime, where gestures function as the primary storytelling mechanism. Research by Ray Birdwhistell (1970) supports this observation, emphasizing that body movement constitutes a universal yet culturally inflected communication system. While certain gestures are culturally specific, many basic emotional expressions — such as gestures indicating fear, joy, or anger — were found to be widely recognizable, facilitating cross-cultural understanding.

3.5 Symbolic and Metaphorical Functions of Gestures

Beyond their immediate communicative roles, gestures were frequently used to convey symbolic and metaphorical meanings. In stylized performances, certain gestures represented abstract concepts such as power, conflict, or transformation. For example, repeated hand movements or choreographed sequences often symbolized internal struggles or thematic motifs. This symbolic dimension aligns with the theoretical framework proposed by Erika Fischer-Lichte (2008), who argues that theatrical signs operate on multiple levels of meaning simultaneously. The findings demonstrate that gestures can function as symbolic signs, requiring audience interpretation and contributing to the overall depth of the performance.

3.6 Interaction Between Gesture and Verbal Language

The relationship between gestures and spoken dialogue emerged as a dynamic and interdependent system. In many cases, gestures complemented speech by reinforcing meaning; however, instances were also observed where gestures contradicted or subverted verbal statements, creating dramatic irony or tension. For example, a character might verbally express confidence while simultaneously displaying nervous gestures, signaling a discrepancy between outward speech and internal state. This interplay enhances the complexity of theatrical communication and supports Schechner's (2013) view of performance as a multilayered system of signs.

3.7 Spatial and Kinetic Dimensions of Gesture

The analysis further revealed that gestures are closely linked to spatial dynamics within the stage environment. Movement across the stage, proximity between actors, and orientation toward the audience all contributed to the meaning of gestures. These spatial aspects transformed gestures into kinetic expressions that extended beyond isolated body movements. In physical theatre, in particular, the entire body functioned as a gestural instrument, integrating movement, rhythm, and spatial awareness. This finding highlights the importance of considering gestures within the broader context of stage composition and choreography.

3.8 Patterns and Consistency in Gesture Usage

Finally, the study identified consistent patterns in gesture usage across different performances. Despite variations in style and cultural context, certain functions — such as emotional expression, narrative support, and characterization — were universally present. This consistency suggests that gestures constitute a fundamental component of theatrical language, governed by both universal communicative principles and culturally specific conventions. Overall, the results demonstrate that gestures are a multifaceted and indispensable element of theatrical scene language. They operate simultaneously at emotional, narrative, symbolic, and spatial levels, contributing to the richness and effectiveness of theatrical communication.

4. Discussion

The findings of this study reinforce the view that gestures are not peripheral but foundational to theatrical scene language. By functioning simultaneously as communicative, expressive, and symbolic devices, gestures contribute to a multilayered system of meaning that defines theatrical performance. This section interprets the results in light of existing theoretical frameworks and explores their broader implications for theatre studies, actor training, and audience reception.

From a semiotic perspective, the results strongly support the argument that theatre operates as a complex system of signs in which gestures play a central role. As noted by Keir Elam (1980), every element on stage contributes to meaning-making, and gestures serve as dynamic signs that can shift between iconic, indexical, and symbolic functions. The findings demonstrate that gestures rarely operate in isolation; instead, they interact with speech, staging, and visual design to produce a cohesive semiotic structure. This interaction highlights the necessity of analyzing theatrical performances holistically rather than privileging textual elements alone.

The study also aligns with kinesic theories proposed by Ray Birdwhistell (1970), which conceptualize body movement as a structured communication system. The observed consistency in gesture patterns across performances suggests that gestures are governed by implicit conventions that audiences learn to interpret. However, unlike everyday communication, theatrical gestures are often stylized and intensified, enabling them to function more effectively in large performance spaces and diverse audience contexts. This stylization underscores the artistic dimension of gestures, distinguishing theatrical communication from ordinary interaction.

A key insight emerging from the results is the role of gestures in shaping audience cognition and emotional engagement. Drawing on the concept of embodied cognition, as articulated by Maurice Merleau-Ponty (1962), the study suggests that audiences do not merely observe gestures but experience them through embodied perception. Gestures provide visual and kinetic cues that facilitate understanding, allowing spectators to "feel" the performance in addition to interpreting it intellectually. This embodied engagement enhances emotional resonance and contributes to the immersive quality of theatre.

Furthermore, the findings highlight the importance of gestures in character construction and actor training. The work of Konstantin Stanislavski (1936) emphasized the connection between physical action and psychological truth, a principle clearly reflected in the analyzed performances. Gestures were shown to both express and generate emotional states, suggesting a bidirectional relationship between body and mind. This has significant implications for acting pedagogy, as it supports training methods that prioritize physical awareness and movement as essential components of performance.

The contrast between different theatrical styles further enriches the discussion. In realist theatre, gestures tend to be subtle and closely aligned with everyday behavior, reinforcing the illusion of reality. In contrast, stylized forms such as physical theatre and mime rely on exaggerated gestures to communicate meaning in the absence of dialogue. This distinction reflects broader aesthetic principles and supports the arguments of Jerzy Grotowski (1968), who advocated for a performance approach centered on the expressive potential of the actor's body. Similarly, Antonin Artaud (1958) emphasized the sensory and physical impact of performance, positioning gestures as a primary vehicle for conveying intensity and emotion.

Another important dimension concerns the cross-cultural and intercultural functions of gestures. The findings indicate that gestures can bridge linguistic barriers, enabling communication in multilingual or non-verbal contexts. However, this universality should not be overstated. While certain basic gestures may be widely understood, others are culturally specific and require contextual knowledge for accurate interpretation. As highlighted by Erika Fischer-Lichte (2008), meaning in theatre emerges through a dynamic interaction between performers and audiences, shaped by cultural frameworks and expectations. Therefore, gestures can both facilitate and complicate communication, depending on the cultural background of the audience.

The study also raises important considerations regarding the potential limitations and risks associated with gesture use. While gestures enhance clarity and emotional expression, excessive or inappropriate gesturing can lead to overacting or misinterpretation. This is particularly relevant in performances that aim for subtlety and realism, where exaggerated gestures may disrupt the illusion of authenticity. Consequently, effective gesture use requires careful calibration and integration with other performance elements, including voice, timing, and spatial arrangement.

In addition, the increasing integration of digital technologies in theatre presents new contexts for understanding gestures. In virtual or mediated performances, the visibility and interpretation of gestures may be altered by camera angles, screen framing, and technological interfaces. This suggests a need for further research into how gestures function in digital theatre environments and how performers adapt their physical expression to these new conditions.

Finally, the discussion underscores the broader theoretical implication that theatrical meaning is inherently multimodal. Gestures, as part of this multimodality, challenge text-centric approaches to theatre analysis and call for more inclusive frameworks that account for the full range of expressive resources. As argued by Richard Schechner (2013), performance should be understood as an event that encompasses actions, interactions, and embodied practices, all of which contribute to meaning-making. In summary, this study confirms that gestures are a vital and multifaceted component of theatrical scene language. They operate at the intersection of communication, aesthetics, and cognition, shaping both the production and reception of theatrical meaning.

5. Conclusion

Gestures play a vital role in shaping theatrical scene language, serving as a powerful medium for communication, expression, and interpretation. This study demonstrates that gestures are not merely supportive elements but essential components of theatrical performance. They enhance emotional expression, clarify narrative structure, and facilitate audience engagement across linguistic and cultural boundaries.

The findings underscore the need for greater attention to non-verbal communication in theatre studies and actor training. Future research could explore the impact of cultural differences on gesture interpretation or examine the role of gestures in digital and virtual theatre environments.

This study has demonstrated that gestures are a fundamental and indispensable component of theatrical scene language, contributing significantly to the construction and transmission of meaning on stage. Through a qualitative analysis grounded in performance observation and theoretical perspectives, it has become evident that gestures function not merely as supportive elements to spoken dialogue but as autonomous communicative tools that enrich theatrical expression.

The findings highlight that gestures operate across multiple dimensions, including emotional, narrative, symbolic, and spatial levels. They amplify emotional expression by making internal states visible, clarify narrative progression through visual cues, and contribute to character construction by establishing distinct physical identities. Moreover, gestures play a crucial role in bridging linguistic and cultural gaps, enabling audiences from diverse backgrounds to engage with and interpret performances effectively.

The discussion further emphasizes that gestures are deeply embedded in both semiotic and cognitive processes. They function as dynamic signs within a broader system of theatrical communication while simultaneously engaging audiences through embodied perception. This dual role enhances both the intellectual and emotional impact of performance, reinforcing the immersive nature of theatre.

However, the study also acknowledges that the effectiveness of gestures depends on their appropriate use and integration with other theatrical elements. Excessive or poorly executed gestures may hinder rather than enhance communication, underscoring the need for careful calibration in performance practice.

In conclusion, gestures should be recognized as central to theatrical analysis and actor training. Their study offers valuable insights into the complexities of human communication and highlights the inherently multimodal nature of theatrical art (Sadikhova & Babayev, 2025).

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: G.A.; Methodology: G.A.; Investigation: G.A.; Writing – original draft: G.A.; Writing – review & editing: G.A.

References

Ahmedova, G. (2025). Theatrical structures and performance traditions in Azerbaijani folklore. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(3), 74–82.

Ahmedova, G. (2025). Characteristics of theatre language and its translation challenges. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(5), 19–27.

Ahmedova, G. (2026). Modern conceptions in theatre: From dramatic representation to performative event. Porta Universorum, 2(3), 5–14.

Artaud, A. (1958). The theatre and its double. Grove Press.

Birdwhistell, R. L. (1970). Kinesics and context: Essays on body motion communication. University of Pennsylvania Press.

Elam, K. (1980). The semiotics of theatre and drama. Routledge.

Fischer-Lichte, E. (2008). The transformative power of performance. Routledge.

Grotowski, J. (1968). Towards a poor theatre. Methuen.

Kendon, A. (2004). Gesture: Visible action as utterance. Cambridge University Press.

Merleau-Ponty, M. (1962). Phenomenology of perception. Routledge.

Pavis, P. (1998). Dictionary of the theatre: Terms, concepts, and analysis. University of Toronto Press.

Sadikhova, S., & Babayev, J. (2025). Challenges encountered in translation of culture-bound and subject-specific terminology while using Google Translate. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(3), 119–126.

Sadikhova, S., & Babayev, J. (2025). Linguistic analysis of art terms in English. Porta Universorum, 1(3), 214–223.

Sadikhova, S., & Babayev, J. (2026). Transliteration challenges of internationalized art lexicon. Porta Universorum, 2(4), 100–107.

Schechner, R. (2013). Performance studies: An introduction. Routledge.

Stanislavski, K. (1936). An actor prepares. Theatre Arts Books.

Received: 12 March 2026
Accepted: 28 April 2026
Published: 3 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Absolute Goodness and Social Reality: Dostoevsky's Philosophical Idea in The Idiot Through the Image of Prince Myshkin

[1] **Nurida Ganbarova,** [2] **Flora Mirzeyeva,** [3] **Namiq Abbasov**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602021

Abstract. *This article presents a systematic philosophical and literary analysis of Fyodor Dostoevsky's novel The Idiot through the character of Prince Myshkin as the artistic bearer of the idea of the "positively beautiful man." Drawing on an interdisciplinary framework integrating dialogic theory, religious-philosophical hermeneutics, existential philosophy, and structural semiotics, the study examines how Dostoevsky deploys the figure of Prince Myshkin to explore the fundamental contradiction between absolute moral idealism and the ontological conditions of empirical social existence. The analysis demonstrates that Myshkin's tragedy is not a consequence of personal psychological insufficiency but of the constitutive incompatibility between his absolute ethical orientation and the pragmatic, violence-structured world he inhabits. Through close reading supported by the theoretical frameworks of Bakhtin, Berdyaev, Shestov, Lotman, and Jakobson, the article reveals the novel's philosophical thesis: that absolute goodness, taken to its ultimate expression, is not a redemptive force within the social world but the cause of an inevitable rupture with it. The analysis traces this argument across four dimensions — dialogic incompleteness, religious-philosophical testing of the Christian ideal, existential tragedy, and semiotic exclusion — demonstrating that Myshkin's fate constitutes a uniquely complex model of the human moral condition in modernity.*

Keywords: *Dostoevsky, The Idiot, Prince Myshkin, philosophical novel, positively beautiful man, Bakhtin, dialogic theory, existential philosophy, literary semiotics, moral ideal*

1. Introduction

Fyodor Dostoevsky's novel The Idiot (1869) occupies an exceptional position within the history of the philosophical novel. It is a work whose artistic ambition is, by the author's own account, the most demanding he had yet undertaken: the depiction of a "positively beautiful man" — a character

[1] Ganbarova, N. Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University. Email: nuridagenberova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-2215-1459.

[2] Mirzoeva, F. Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: Floramizeyeva@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0001-9683-6720

[3] Abbasov, N. Nakhchivan State University. Email: namiqabbasov65@mail.ru. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0002-2533-9257

of absolute moral goodness — within the conditions of contemporary Russian social reality. In a letter of January 1868, Dostoevsky described this task as extraordinarily difficult, noting that the only comparable figure in world literature was Don Quixote, whose goodness is rendered pathetic by its incompatibility with the world it inhabits, and that Christ himself constitutes the ultimate model for what he was attempting (Frank, 1995). The problem Dostoevsky sets himself is thus simultaneously aesthetic, ethical, and ontological: not merely to portray a morally good man, but to examine what happens when absolute goodness encounters the social world in all its complexity, violence, and self-interest.

The philosophical significance of this question extends far beyond the boundaries of literary criticism. It touches on fundamental issues in ethics, theology, and the philosophy of culture: the relationship between ideal and reality, between transcendent value and immanent existence, between the individual conscience and the social order. The novel's engagement with these issues has generated an exceptionally rich tradition of scholarly interpretation. Bakhtin's (1984) dialogic theory, Berdyaev's (1994) religious-philosophical reading, Shestov's (1993) existential analysis, Lotman's (1998) semiotic approach, and Merezhkovsky's (2000) literary-philosophical interpretation each illuminate different facets of the novel's complex philosophical architecture. Despite their differences, these interpretations converge on a common conclusion: that Myshkin's tragedy is not accidental but constitutively necessary — determined not by his personal failings but by the structural incompatibility between his absolute moral orientation and the world he inhabits.

This article presents a systematic philosophical and literary analysis of The Idiot through the figure of Prince Myshkin, integrating the major scholarly traditions of interpretation within a unified analytical framework. The analysis proceeds across four dimensions: the dialogic dimension of Myshkin's consciousness as theorized by Bakhtin; the religious-philosophical dimension of the Christological ideal in conditions of social existence; the existential dimension of the tragic clash between moral idealism and empirical reality; and the semiotic dimension of Myshkin's communicative exclusion from the cultural sign system. Through this integrated analysis, the article aims to demonstrate the philosophical coherence and contemporary relevance of Dostoevsky's central thesis: that absolute goodness, while constituting the highest form of spiritual existence, is ontologically incompatible with the social world and therefore inevitably acquires a tragic character.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundations of this analysis rest on four intersecting scholarly traditions. The first and most foundational is Bakhtin's (1984) theory of dialogism and the polyphonic novel. Bakhtin argues that Dostoevsky's distinctive artistic achievement is the creation of a genuinely polyphonic novelistic form in which the hero is not a fixed, psychologically determined character but an open, unfinished consciousness existing in perpetual dialogue with other voices. On this account, "in

Dostoevsky, man never coincides with himself" — identity is not a stable essence but a continuous process of self-realization through interaction with other consciousnesses. Applied to Myshkin, this framework allows for an understanding of his absolute openness to others not as psychological naivety but as a philosophical stance: a refusal of the self-enclosure that defines ordinary social subjectivity.

The second tradition is the religious-philosophical interpretation developed by Berdyaev (1994), who reads Dostoevsky's major novels as systematic explorations of the Christian idea under conditions of secular modernity. Berdyaev identifies in Dostoevsky a unique "experiment" with the Christian ideals of love, compassion, and spiritual openness, subjecting them to the testing conditions of contemporary social reality. Myshkin represents the most radical instance of this experiment: a figure who embodies Christian love in its most unconditional form and whose fate demonstrates the consequences of such an orientation in a world governed by competition, egoism, and the logic of power. The third tradition is the existential philosophy applied to Dostoevsky by Shestov (1993) and elaborated by Merezhkovsky (2000). Shestov's reading emphasizes the tragic dimension of the novel, identifying in Dostoevsky a profound awareness of the powerlessness of goodness before the chaos and irrationality of life. The fourth tradition is the structural semiotics of Lotman (1998), which provides a culturological framework for understanding Myshkin's social exclusion as the consequence of his operating outside the sign system through which the social world constitutes meaning and identity.

3. Methodology

This study employs a qualitative, interpretive methodology combining close reading of the primary text with critical engagement with the major scholarly traditions of Dostoevsky interpretation. The methodological approach is interdisciplinary, integrating literary analysis, philosophical hermeneutics, and structural semiotics to produce a multi-dimensional account of the novel's philosophical significance. Close reading provides the evidential foundation: specific episodes, character interactions, and narrative moments are examined in detail to identify the mechanisms through which the novel's philosophical argument is articulated. The scholarly traditions reviewed in the theoretical framework serve as interpretive lenses that illuminate different aspects of this argument. A comparative approach examines the relationships between different scholarly perspectives, identifying their convergences and synthesizing their insights into a coherent account of the novel's philosophical structure.

4. Prince Myshkin and the Paradox of Absolute Goodness

4.1 Dialogic Openness and Unfinished Consciousness

Prince Myshkin's most philosophically distinctive characteristic — his total openness and receptivity to other people — can be understood, within Bakhtin's (1984) theoretical framework, not as a psychological trait but as a philosophical position. Where ordinary social subjectivity is defined by the strategies of self-presentation and self-protection that characterize interaction in a competitive social world, Myshkin's consciousness is constitutively open: he receives others without defensive mediation, responds to them without calculation, and offers himself without reservation. This openness is the source of both his moral beauty and his social vulnerability. Bakhtin identifies in Dostoevsky's major heroes a condition of "unfinishedness" — they are never fully constituted, never identical with themselves, always open to transformation through encounter with other consciousnesses. Myshkin exemplifies this condition most completely: his "idiocy" is, from the perspective of Bakhtinian dialogism, not a cognitive deficit but a form of existential openness that refuses the closures of social convention. The paradox of his character is that this openness, which in a world of genuine dialogue would be a supreme virtue, is in the actual social world a devastating liability.

4.2 The Christological Ideal in the Social World

The religious-philosophical dimension of Myshkin's character has been the most extensively theorized aspect of the novel. Dostoevsky's own identification of Christ as the ultimate model for the "positively beautiful man" establishes the religious framework within which Myshkin's character must be read, and the interpretations of Berdyaev (1994) and Rozanov (1990) develop this framework with considerable sophistication. Berdyaev's analysis is particularly illuminating: he identifies in Dostoevsky's treatment of Myshkin an attempt to examine what becomes of Christian love — unconditional, non-judgmental, oriented toward the spiritual dignity of every person — when it is introduced into the conditions of secular social modernity. The answer that the novel provides is deeply troubling: Myshkin's love and compassion, far from transforming those around him, intensify the conflicts and suffering that already exist. His relationship with Nastasya Filippovna illustrates this dynamic with particular force: he perceives and responds to her inner dignity and suffering with absolute compassion, but his compassion, precisely because it refuses to operate within the pragmatic calculations of social interaction, cannot give Nastasya what she ultimately needs. Rozanov's (1990) description of Myshkin as "Christ among people, unrecognized" captures the essential paradox: the absolute moral ideal, embodied in a social world that does not have the framework to receive it, becomes not redemptive but destructive.

4.3 Existential Tragedy and the Limits of Moral Idealism

Shestov's (1993) existential reading of Dostoevsky identifies the fundamental philosophical significance of The Idiot in its radical demonstration of the limits of moral idealism — its unflinching portrayal of what happens when goodness encounters the chaos, irrationality, and violence of actual human life. Goodness, Shestov argues, does not prevail in Dostoevsky: it suffers defeat before the opacity and intractability of the world. This is not a counsel of despair but a philosophical diagnosis: it identifies the specific form of the tragedy of moral idealism, which consists not in the inadequacy of the ideal itself but in the radical inadequacy of the world to receive and sustain it. Merezhkovsky's (2000) formulation captures the paradoxical logic precisely: Dostoevsky attempts to depict "a saint in conditions that preclude holiness." The conditions that make Myshkin's moral character extraordinary are precisely the conditions that make his existence in the social world untenable: his sincerity reads as naivety, his compassion as weakness, his moral purity as socially illegible strangeness.

4.4 Semiotic Exclusion and Communicative Rupture

Lotman's (1998) semiotic analysis provides the culturological framework that deepens the philosophical accounts reviewed above. If culture is a system of signs within which meaning is constituted and communicated, then Myshkin's behavior — governed by an absolute ethical logic rather than by the conventional sign codes of his social milieu — places him outside the sign system and therefore outside the possibility of genuine communication. His actions cannot be interpreted within the framework of available cultural codes: generosity is read as manipulation, sincerity as deception, compassion as desire. Jakobson's (1987) analysis of the novel's discourse structures adds a linguistic dimension to this semiotic exclusion, identifying in the tensions and discontinuities of the novel's speech patterns a reflection of the crisis of subjectivity that Myshkin's character embodies. The communicative rupture that Myshkin experiences is thus not merely sociological — the misunderstanding of an eccentric individual — but a structural feature of his ontological situation, expressing the constitutive impossibility of translating absolute moral truth into the language of a world organized by different principles. His tragedy can therefore be characterized as simultaneously ethical (the impossibility of realizing goodness), philosophical (the gap between ideal and reality), communicative (fundamental misunderstanding), and ontological (incompatibility of forms of existence).

5. Discussion

The four analytical dimensions examined above converge on a single philosophical conclusion that constitutes the deepest level of the novel's meaning: Prince Myshkin's tragedy is constitutively necessary, determined by the structural incompatibility between the absolute moral orientation he embodies and the conditions of social existence in which he is placed. This is the radical philosophical thesis that Dostoevsky's artistic experiment demonstrates: the world is organized in a way that is fundamentally inhospitable to absolute goodness, and the attempt to realize such goodness within it leads not to redemption but to rupture. This thesis has important implications for the broader tradition of moral idealism in philosophy and literature, representing a profound challenge to the optimistic tradition that holds that moral goodness, properly understood and consistently practiced, is an effective force for the transformation of social reality.

The novel's philosophical argument is, however, more complex than a simple pessimistic negation of moral idealism. As Bakhtin's (1984) dialogic framework suggests, Myshkin's consciousness retains its integrity and its beauty even as it is destroyed by the world. His tragedy is a testimony to the reality and the value of absolute goodness, even as it demonstrates the impossibility of its realization in the world. The novel thus occupies a paradoxical philosophical position: it simultaneously affirms the supreme value of absolute goodness and demonstrates the conditions of its tragic impossibility. This paradox is not a contradiction but the expression of a profound philosophical insight into the relationship between ideal and reality — what Dostoevsky formulates as his key philosophical idea: goodness, taken to its absolute extreme, proves not a saving force but a factor in breaking with reality (Morson & Emerson, 1990).

6. Conclusion

This analysis of Dostoevsky's The Idiot has demonstrated the profound philosophical coherence and contemporary relevance of the novel's central thesis. Through the character of Prince Myshkin, Dostoevsky conducts what Berdyaev (1994) rightly identifies as a unique artistic experiment: the subjection of the absolute moral ideal to the testing conditions of social reality, revealing not its inadequacy but the world's constitutive incapacity to receive it. Myshkin is not defeated because he is weak or naïve; he is destroyed because he is absolutely good, and the social world has no framework within which absolute goodness can survive.

The four analytical dimensions examined — dialogic openness, the Christological ideal in social conditions, existential tragedy, and semiotic exclusion — converge on this central conclusion while each contributing a distinct perspective on its implications. Together, they reveal the novel's philosophical thesis as a paradoxical affirmation: absolute goodness is both the highest form of human existence and the cause of an inevitable rupture with the world that cannot accommodate it. The study confirms that The Idiot remains one of the most philosophically significant works of world literature, raising questions about the relationship between ideal and reality that continue to challenge contemporary reflection on the human condition. Future research should examine the reception of the novel's philosophical argument in post-Soviet and Azerbaijani literary scholarship, and explore comparative dimensions of the "positively beautiful man" motif across world literature.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: F.M., N.G., N.A.; Methodology: F.M., N.G.; Investigation: N.G., N.A.; Writing – original draft: N.G., F.M., N.A.; Writing – review & editing: F.M.

References

Bakhtin, M. M. (1984). Problems of Dostoevsky's poetics (C. Emerson, Trans.). University of Minnesota Press. (Original work published 1972)

Berdyaev, N. A. (1994). Dostoevsky (D. Attwater, Trans.). New American Library.

Dostoevsky, F. M. (2004). The idiot (D. McDuff, Trans.). Penguin Classics. (Original work published 1869)

Frank, J. (1995). Dostoevsky: The miraculous years, 1865–1871. Princeton University Press.

Jakobson, R. (1987). Language in literature (K. Pomorska & S. Rudy, Eds.). Harvard University Press.

Lotman, Yu. M. (1998). Semiosfera [The semiosphere]. Iskusstvo-SPB.

Merezhkovsky, D. S. (2000). L. Tolstoy i Dostoevsky [L. Tolstoy and Dostoevsky]. AST.

Morson, G. S., & Emerson, C. (1990). Mikhail Bakhtin: Creation of a prosaics. Stanford University Press.

Rozanov, V. V. (1990). Legenda o velikom inkvizitore F. M. Dostoevskogo [The legend of the Grand Inquisitor]. Respublika.

Shestov, L. (1993). Dostoevsky and Nietzsche: The philosophy of tragedy. Prism Press.

Thompson, D. O. (1991). The Brothers Karamazov and the poetics of memory. Cambridge University Press.

Received: 12 March 2026
Accepted: 28 April 2026
Published: 3 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Impact of Language and Culture on Tourism: Sympathy Triggering Economic Development

[1] **Elza Mammadova,** [2] **Asif Abdullayev**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602022

Abstract. *This study explores the role of language and culture in shaping tourism experiences and their influence on economic development through emotional engagement, particularly sympathy. As global tourism continues to expand, cultural authenticity and linguistic accessibility have become key determinants of tourist satisfaction. This paper adopts an IMRAD structure to analyze how language and cultural representation contribute to emotional connections between tourists and destinations, encouraging longer stays, repeat visits, and increased spending. Using qualitative analysis of secondary data, including tourism reports, academic literature, and case studies, the research identifies how culturally rich narratives and language inclusivity foster empathy and positive perceptions among tourists. The findings suggest that destinations which successfully integrate linguistic diversity and cultural storytelling tend to generate stronger emotional bonds, which translate into economic benefits. The study concludes that tourism strategies emphasizing cultural sensitivity and multilingual communication can enhance both visitor experience and local economic growth.*

Keywords: *tourism, language, culture, sympathy, economic development*

1. Introduction

Tourism has become one of the most dynamic sectors of the global economy, contributing significantly to employment generation, foreign exchange earnings, and regional development. According to the United Nations World Tourism Organization, international tourism has increasingly shifted from a purely leisure-based activity toward an experience-centered industry in which travelers seek meaningful cultural interaction and authentic engagement with host communities. In this context, language and culture function as central components of tourism development because they mediate communication, shape visitor perceptions, and influence emotional responses (Richards, 2018).

[1] Mammadova, E. Senior Lecturer, Department of Theatre and Cultural Studies, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: elzaferzeliyeva@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-0876-0615

[2] Abdullayev, A. Lecturer, Department of Municipality and Tourism, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: asifabdullayev@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0002-2551-7797

Language plays a fundamental role in tourism as it facilitates interaction between tourists and local communities. Effective communication enables visitors to access information, navigate destinations, and participate in local activities with greater confidence. As argued by Kramsch (1998), language is inseparable from culture because it reflects the values, traditions, and worldviews embedded within a society. In tourism settings, multilingual communication strategies — including translated materials, bilingual staff, and digital language tools — reduce communicative barriers and improve visitor satisfaction (Baker, 2012). Destinations that fail to address linguistic diversity may unintentionally exclude international visitors, reducing their competitive advantage in the global market.

Culture is similarly a major attraction factor in tourism (Mammadova & Abdullayev, 2025). Cultural heritage sites, traditional festivals, cuisine, folklore, music, and local customs attract visitors seeking distinctive experiences unavailable in their home countries (Babayev, 2025; Javid & Sadikhova, 2025; Seidova, 2025). Richards (2018) notes that cultural tourism has evolved from passive sightseeing to participatory experiences where tourists engage directly with local traditions and communities. Such interactions increase tourists' appreciation of cultural diversity while strengthening destination identity.

Beyond practical communication and attraction, language and culture contribute to the emotional dimension of tourism (Farzaliyeva & Abdullayev, 2025). Emotional engagement has become an important concept in tourism studies, as visitors increasingly value experiences that generate empathy, attachment, and personal meaning. Sympathy — defined as concern or emotional resonance with others' experiences — can emerge when tourists encounter compelling cultural narratives, local histories, or social realities (Smith, 2009). For example, heritage tourism involving historical memory, indigenous communities, or post-conflict destinations often evokes strong emotional reactions, encouraging reflective and ethical travel behavior.

The relationship between sympathy and tourism has important economic implications. Emotional attachment to destinations may influence tourists' willingness to spend more on local products, donate to heritage preservation, support community enterprises, and revisit destinations (Hosany & Prayag, 2013). This indicates that emotional tourism experiences are not merely psychological outcomes but also drivers of economic development. In this sense, language acts as a bridge that enables cultural understanding, while culture provides the symbolic content that triggers emotional engagement.

Although previous studies have examined tourism motivation, cultural tourism, and destination branding, limited research has specifically analyzed how language and culture jointly stimulate sympathy and contribute to economic growth. Therefore, this study investigates the impact of linguistic accessibility and cultural representation on tourism experiences, with particular attention to how sympathy functions as an emotional mechanism supporting sustainable economic development.

2. Methods

This study adopts a qualitative-descriptive research design aimed at exploring the interconnected roles of language, culture, and emotional engagement — specifically sympathy — in tourism-driven economic development. A qualitative approach was selected because the research focuses on interpretive analysis of social phenomena, including human emotions, cultural interaction, and communication practices, which are not easily quantifiable (Denzin & Lincoln, 2018).

2.1 Research Design and Approach

The study is based on a systematic literature review combined with comparative thematic analysis. The systematic review follows structured procedures to identify, evaluate, and synthesize relevant academic and institutional sources related to tourism, language use, cultural representation, and emotional engagement. Guidelines proposed by Kitchenham (2004) for systematic reviews were adapted to ensure transparency and replicability.

2.2 Data Sources and Selection Criteria

Data were collected from multiple secondary sources, including peer-reviewed journal articles indexed in major academic databases such as Scopus and Web of Science, reports and publications from international organizations such as the United Nations World Tourism Organization, books and monographs on cultural tourism, sociolinguistics, and tourism economics, and case studies documenting tourism practices in culturally diverse destinations. Inclusion criteria were defined as follows: publications from 2000 to 2024 to ensure contemporary relevance; studies focusing on language, culture, or emotional aspects of tourism; research addressing economic outcomes or development implications; and English-language publications for consistency in analysis. Exclusion criteria included purely quantitative economic models without cultural variables and studies lacking clear methodological transparency.

2.3 Data Analysis Techniques

The collected data were analyzed using thematic content analysis. This method involves identifying, coding, and categorizing recurring patterns and concepts across the literature (Braun & Clarke, 2006). The analysis proceeded in three stages: open coding, in which key concepts related to language use, cultural representation, emotional engagement, and economic impact were identified; axial coding, in which relationships between these concepts were established, with particular focus on how language and culture influence sympathy; and selective coding, in which core themes were refined to construct a coherent framework linking emotional engagement to tourism-driven economic development. Additionally, elements of discourse analysis were incorporated to examine how cultural narratives and linguistic strategies are presented in tourism contexts, drawing on principles developed by Fairclough (1995) and emphasizing the role of language in shaping social meaning and perception.

2.4 Case Study Integration

To enhance analytical depth, selected case studies from culturally rich tourism destinations were integrated into the analysis. These cases were chosen based on their demonstrated use of multilingual communication and strong cultural identity. Comparative analysis allowed for the identification of best practices and common patterns across different geographic and cultural contexts.

2.5 Validity and Reliability

To ensure validity, the study employed data triangulation by using multiple sources and perspectives. Consistency in coding and theme development was maintained through iterative review processes. Reliability was further supported by adhering to established qualitative research standards outlined by Denzin and Lincoln (2018), including transparency in data selection and analytical procedures.

2.6 Limitations

Despite its strengths, the study has certain limitations. The reliance on secondary data may restrict the ability to capture real-time tourist emotions and behaviors. Additionally, cultural interpretations may vary across contexts, which can influence the generalizability of findings. Future research could incorporate primary data collection methods, such as interviews or surveys, to complement the insights generated in this study.

3. Results

The thematic analysis of the selected literature and case studies revealed a complex and interdependent relationship between language, culture, emotional engagement, and economic outcomes in tourism. The results are organized into four major thematic categories that illustrate how these variables interact to stimulate sympathy and contribute to economic development.

3.1 Language Accessibility and Tourist Experience

The findings indicate that language accessibility is a foundational factor influencing tourists' overall experience. Destinations that actively implement multilingual communication strategies — such as translated signage, mobile applications, guided tours, and customer service in multiple languages — report higher levels of visitor satisfaction and engagement. According to United Nations World Tourism Organization reports, language inclusivity enhances tourists' sense of safety, orientation, and participation in local activities. Furthermore, the presence of linguistically competent staff and culturally aware guides reduces misunderstandings and fosters smoother interactions between tourists and local communities. Studies show that when communication barriers are minimized, tourists are more likely to explore beyond standard attractions and engage in local economic activities such as shopping, dining, and cultural events (Baker, 2012). This expanded participation contributes directly to increased tourism revenue.

3.2 Cultural Authenticity and Emotional Engagement

A second key finding emphasizes the importance of cultural authenticity in generating meaningful tourist experiences. Tourists demonstrate stronger emotional responses when exposed to genuine cultural expressions, including traditional rituals, local craftsmanship, indigenous storytelling, and community-based tourism initiatives (Sadikhova, 2025; Seidova, 2025). Richards (2018) highlights that experiential cultural tourism — where visitors actively participate rather than passively observe — enhances emotional immersion. The analysis shows that authenticity acts as a catalyst for emotional engagement, particularly in the form of sympathy. For instance, tourism experiences that present local histories of struggle, resilience, or identity often evoke empathetic responses. This is especially evident in heritage tourism, rural tourism, and visits to marginalized or indigenous communities, where tourists gain insight into local ways of life and challenges.

3.3 Sympathy as a Mediating Emotional Mechanism

One of the most significant findings of this study is the identification of sympathy as a mediating variable between cultural exposure and economic behavior. Tourists who experience emotional resonance with a destination are more likely to demonstrate prosocial behavior, including purchasing locally produced goods and services, supporting small-scale and community-based enterprises, donating to cultural preservation and heritage projects, and engaging in responsible and sustainable tourism practices. Research by Hosany and Prayag (2013) supports the notion that emotional experiences strongly influence behavioral intentions, including willingness to recommend and revisit destinations. The present analysis extends this perspective by demonstrating that sympathy not only affects intentions but also actual economic contributions at the local level.

3.4 Economic Impacts of Language and Cultural Integration

The integration of language and culture into tourism strategies was found to have measurable economic benefits. Destinations that effectively combine multilingual accessibility with strong cultural branding tend to achieve increased tourist arrivals and longer stays, higher per capita tourist expenditure, growth in employment within tourism-related sectors, and enhanced development of local small and medium enterprises. Reports from the World Travel and Tourism Council confirm that culturally rich and inclusive tourism models contribute significantly to GDP growth in many regions. Additionally, culturally driven tourism encourages the diversification of local economies by promoting creative industries such as handicrafts, performing arts, and gastronomy.

3.5 Interrelationship of Key Variables

The results also reveal a cyclical relationship among the main variables. Language facilitates access to culture; culture generates emotional engagement; emotional engagement — particularly sympathy — influences tourist behavior; and this behavior leads to economic outcomes that, in turn, support cultural preservation and further tourism development. This cycle highlights the importance of a holistic approach to tourism planning.

3.6 Emerging Trends

Finally, the analysis identifies several emerging trends: increasing use of digital translation technologies and AI-driven language tools in tourism; growing demand for immersive, community-based cultural experiences; rising importance of ethical and sustainable tourism practices; and greater emphasis on storytelling and narrative-building in destination marketing. These trends suggest that the role of language and culture in tourism will continue to expand, particularly as tourists seek deeper emotional and cultural connections in their travel experiences.

4. Discussion

The findings of this study reinforce the idea that tourism is not merely an economic transaction but a complex socio-cultural process shaped by communication, identity, and emotional exchange. Language and culture emerge as mutually reinforcing elements that influence how tourists perceive, interpret, and emotionally respond to destinations. This aligns with the sociocultural perspective of Vygotsky (1978), who emphasized that meaning is constructed through social interaction and cultural context. In tourism, such interactions are often mediated through language, making linguistic accessibility a critical factor in shaping visitor experience (Sadikhova, 2026).

One of the central insights of this study is the role of language as both a functional and symbolic resource. Functionally, language enables communication and facilitates access to services; symbolically, it conveys cultural identity and authenticity. As noted by Kramsch (1998), language carries cultural meaning and reflects shared values and beliefs. In tourism settings, this dual role allows language to act as a bridge between tourists and host communities, fostering not only understanding but also emotional connection. When tourists can comprehend local narratives — whether through guided tours, storytelling, or digital interpretation — they are more likely to engage deeply with the destination.

The discussion also highlights the growing importance of cultural authenticity in a globalized tourism market. While globalization has increased accessibility and standardization, it has simultaneously intensified demand for unique, localized experiences. MacCannell (1976) introduced the concept of "staged authenticity," suggesting that some tourism experiences are artificially constructed for visitors. The present study confirms that while staged elements may attract initial interest, genuine cultural engagement is more effective in generating emotional responses such as sympathy. This suggests that tourism stakeholders should prioritize preserving and presenting authentic cultural practices rather than commodifying them excessively.

A key contribution of this research is the identification of sympathy as an economic catalyst. Emotional engagement has been widely discussed in tourism literature, but its direct link to economic behavior is often underexplored. The findings indicate that sympathy encourages tourists to act in ways that support local economies, such as purchasing handmade goods, participating in community-based tourism, and contributing to cultural preservation initiatives. This supports the experiential marketing framework proposed by Schmitt (1999), which emphasizes that emotional experiences influence consumer behavior and decision-making. In tourism, these emotional experiences extend beyond consumption to include ethical and socially responsible actions.

Furthermore, the study contributes to discussions on sustainable tourism development. By fostering sympathy and emotional attachment, culturally and linguistically inclusive tourism encourages responsible behavior among tourists. Visitors who feel connected to a destination are more likely to respect local customs, minimize environmental impact, and support long-term sustainability initiatives. This aligns with the principles advocated by the United Nations World Tourism Organization, which emphasize the importance of cultural preservation and community involvement in sustainable tourism.

However, the discussion also points to several challenges. One major concern is the risk of cultural commodification, where traditions and practices are modified or simplified to meet tourist expectations. While this may generate short-term economic benefits, it can undermine cultural integrity and reduce the authenticity that drives emotional engagement. Additionally, the unequal distribution of tourism benefits remains a critical issue. In some cases, economic gains are concentrated among large businesses, while local communities receive limited benefits, weakening the potential positive impact of sympathy-driven tourism.

Another important issue is linguistic inequality. While multilingual services enhance accessibility, not all destinations have the resources to implement comprehensive language strategies. Smaller or less-developed regions may struggle to compete in the global tourism market due to limited linguistic infrastructure. This highlights the need for policy support, investment in language education, and the use of emerging technologies such as AI-based translation tools to bridge communication gaps.

The study also underscores the increasing role of digitalization in shaping tourism experiences. Online platforms, virtual tours, and social media storytelling have transformed how culture and language are presented to global audiences. Digital narratives can amplify emotional engagement and create pre-visit sympathy by exposing potential tourists to local stories and cultural contexts. However, digital representation must remain accurate and respectful to avoid misinterpretation or cultural stereotyping.

In summary, the discussion demonstrates that language and culture are not peripheral elements but central drivers of tourism development. Their ability to generate emotional responses — particularly sympathy — creates a powerful mechanism that links human connection with economic outcomes. A holistic tourism strategy that integrates linguistic accessibility, cultural authenticity, and ethical considerations can maximize both economic benefits and social sustainability.

5. Conclusion

This study has examined the multifaceted relationship between language, culture, and tourism, with a particular focus on how emotional engagement — especially sympathy — can stimulate economic development. The findings confirm that language and culture are not merely supportive elements of tourism but core drivers that shape tourist experiences, perceptions, and behaviors. Through effective communication and authentic cultural representation, destinations can create meaningful interactions that go beyond surface-level engagement.

One of the key conclusions is that language functions as both a practical tool and a cultural bridge. Multilingual accessibility enhances tourists' ability to navigate unfamiliar environments, while also enabling them to understand and appreciate local traditions and values. Culture, in turn, provides the substance of tourism experiences, offering unique narratives, practices, and identities that distinguish one destination from another. When these elements are successfully integrated, they foster emotional connections between visitors and host communities.

A particularly important contribution of this study is the identification of sympathy as a mechanism linking tourism experiences to economic outcomes. Tourists who develop emotional resonance with a destination are more likely to engage in supportive behaviors, including increased spending, participation in local activities, and advocacy through recommendations. These behaviors contribute directly to local economic growth, job creation, and the sustainability of cultural industries.

At the same time, the study highlights the importance of maintaining a balance between economic objectives and cultural integrity. Over-commercialization and cultural commodification may undermine authenticity, reducing the emotional impact that drives tourism success. Therefore, policymakers and tourism stakeholders should prioritize sustainable practices, invest in language education and cultural preservation, and promote community-based tourism models.

In conclusion, tourism that effectively integrates language and culture has the potential to generate not only economic prosperity but also intercultural understanding and social cohesion. By fostering sympathy and meaningful human connections, such tourism models can support long-term, inclusive, and sustainable development.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: E.M., A.A.; Methodology: E.M., A.A.; Investigation: E.M., A.A.; Writing – original draft: E.M., A.A.; Writing – review & editing: E.M.

References

Babayev, J. S. (2025). How music makes you fluent: Learning English through songs. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(4).

Baker, W. (2012). From cultural awareness to intercultural awareness: Culture in ELT. ELT Journal, 66(1), 62–70. https://doi.org/10.1093/elt/ccr017

Braun, V., & Clarke, V. (2006). Using thematic analysis in psychology. Qualitative Research in Psychology, 3(2), 77–101. https://doi.org/10.1191/1478088706qp063oa

Denzin, N. K., & Lincoln, Y. S. (2018). The Sage handbook of qualitative research (5th ed.). Sage Publications.

Fairclough, N. (1995). Critical discourse analysis: The critical study of language. Longman.

Farzaliyeva, E., & Abdullayev, A. (2025). The economic power of culture: How arts and heritage drive employment. Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities, 2(3), 80–91.

Hosany, S., & Prayag, G. (2013). Patterns of tourists' emotional responses, satisfaction, and intention to recommend. Journal of Business Research, 66(6), 730–737. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jbusres.2011.09.011

Javid, B., & Sadikhova, S. (2025). Culturonyms in food and drink: How language reflects cultural identity through cuisine. In Proceedings of the 10th International Scientific Conference «Modern Scientific Technology» (p. 346). Stockholm, Sweden.

Kitchenham, B. (2004). Procedures for performing systematic reviews. Keele University Technical Report TR/SE-0401.

Kramsch, C. (1998). Language and culture. Oxford University Press.

MacCannell, D. (1976). The tourist: A new theory of the leisure class. University of California Press.

Mammadova, E., & Abdullayev, A. (2025). Cultural industries and national economic competitiveness: A global perspective. Porta Universorum, 1(3), 322–344.

Richards, G. (2018). Cultural tourism: A review of recent research and trends. Journal of Hospitality and Tourism Management, 36, 12–21. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhtm.2018.03.005

Sadikhova, S. (2025). Culturonyms in fashion discourse: A linguistic and cultural perspective. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(4), 319–331.

Sadikhova, S. (2026). Naming culture: The linguistic power of culturonyms. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 3(2), 66–72.

Schmitt, B. (1999). Experiential marketing: How to get customers to sense, feel, think, act, and relate to your company and brands. Free Press.

Seidova, E. (2025). Challenges in the translation of religious culturonyms. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(5), 40–50.

Smith, M. K. (2009). Issues in cultural tourism studies (2nd ed.). Routledge.

United Nations World Tourism Organization. (2023). Tourism highlights. UNWTO.

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

World Travel and Tourism Council. (2023). Economic impact report. WTTC.

Received: 10 March 2026
Accepted: 1 May 2026
Published: 4 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

The Evolution of English Pronunciation from the Shakespearean Era to the Present: A Historical Phonological Analysis

[1] **Shehla Salmanova**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602023

Abstract. *The English language has undergone profound phonological transformation since the Elizabethan period, when William Shakespeare composed his dramatic and poetic works in a variety of Early Modern English that would be largely unintelligible to contemporary speakers in its original pronunciation. This article examines the major stages of English phonological evolution from the late sixteenth century to the present day, with particular attention to the completion of the Great Vowel Shift, the development of Received Pronunciation, the divergence of American and British varieties, and the emergence of contemporary accent levelling and new dialect formation. Drawing on historical phonology, dialectology, and variationist sociolinguistics, the study traces the systematic sound changes that transformed Early Modern English phonology into the diverse range of accents and dialects attested in present-day English. The analysis focuses on four major phonological processes: vowel shifting and chain shifts, consonant changes including rhoticity and /h/-dropping, prosodic changes in stress and rhythm, and the sociolinguistic mechanisms driving ongoing change. The article argues that English pronunciation has never been static and that understanding its historical trajectory is essential for both linguistic theory and the broader cultural understanding of the English-speaking world.*

Keywords: *historical phonology, Great Vowel Shift, Early Modern English, Received Pronunciation, accent variation, sound change, English dialects*

1. Introduction

English is one of the most phonologically documented languages in history, yet its sound system has undergone changes so radical that speakers of present-day English would find the pronunciation of Shakespeare's contemporaries largely unintelligible without specialized training. When Shakespeare wrote his sonnets and plays in the late sixteenth and early seventeenth centuries, the English sound system was still in the final stages of the Great Vowel Shift — a series of systematic vowel changes that fundamentally reshaped the phonological structure of the language over roughly three centuries (Labov, 1994; Lass, 1999). The gap between Early Modern

[1] Salmanova, S. Azerbaijan State Pedagogical University, Azerbaijan. Email: shehlasalmanova@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-1692-9996

English pronunciation and contemporary English represents one of the most striking examples of language change in recorded linguistic history.

Historical phonology — the scientific study of sound change over time — provides the theoretical and methodological tools necessary to reconstruct the phonological systems of earlier periods and to trace the pathways of change that connect them to the present (Hock & Joseph, 2009). The reconstruction of Early Modern English pronunciation has been made possible through multiple converging lines of evidence: contemporary spelling practices and their inconsistencies, rhymes and puns in literary texts, contemporary observations by grammarians and orthoepists, loan-word evidence, and comparative reconstruction from related languages and dialects (Dobson, 1968; Kökeritz, 1953).

The phonological distance between Shakespearean English and present-day Standard British or American English encompasses changes in virtually every subsystem of phonology: the vowel system, the consonant inventory, prosodic patterns of stress and rhythm, and the sociolinguistic stratification of accent variation. Understanding these changes is not merely of historical or antiquarian interest; it has direct implications for the interpretation of Early Modern English literary texts, for understanding the divergence of World Englishes, and for theoretical accounts of how and why sound change occurs (Trudgill, 2004; Milroy & Milroy, 2012).

This article provides a systematic analysis of the major phonological changes that have transformed English from the Shakespearean period to the present. The discussion proceeds through four major areas: the Great Vowel Shift and its legacy, consonant changes including the development of rhoticity variation, prosodic change, and the emergence of contemporary dialect diversity. The article concludes with a discussion of the theoretical implications of English phonological history for the study of language change more broadly.

2. Theoretical Framework

The study of historical phonology draws on two primary theoretical traditions: the Neogrammarian hypothesis of regular, exceptionless sound change, and the variationist sociolinguistic framework developed by Labov and his colleagues. The Neogrammarian hypothesis, formulated in the nineteenth century, proposed that sound changes operate regularly and without exception across all words containing the relevant phonological environment, with apparent exceptions explained by analogy or borrowing (Hock & Joseph, 2009). This principle of regularity has been foundational to historical reconstruction and remains central to comparative and internal reconstruction methods.

Labov's (1994, 2001) variationist approach contributed the crucial insight that sound change is not an abstract process operating on linguistic systems but a socially embedded phenomenon that originates in particular communities, social groups, and interactional contexts. Change typically begins as variation — a range of phonetic realizations for a given phoneme — and spreads through the speech community following social vectors of prestige, identity, and network structure

(Trudgill, 2004). This framework explains not only why sounds change but why changes spread unevenly across communities, resulting in dialect differentiation.

The concept of the chain shift, developed by Martinet (1955) and elaborated by Labov (1994), is particularly important for understanding vowel change in English. In a chain shift, the movement of one vowel triggers movement in adjacent vowels, either because the moving vowel encroaches on the phonological space of a neighboring vowel (drag chain) or because a vacancy created by the movement of one vowel is filled by another (push chain). The Great Vowel Shift, the Northern Cities Shift in American English, and the Southern Shift are all instances of chain shift dynamics operating at different historical moments (Labov, Ash, & Boberg, 2006).

Additionally, Trudgill's (2004) dialect contact theory and the related framework of new dialect formation provide important tools for understanding how colonial and post-colonial varieties of English — including American, Australian, and New Zealand English — developed their distinct phonological profiles through the mixing of input dialects from different regions of Britain.

3. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative, historically descriptive methodology grounded in the established methods of historical linguistics and diachronic phonology. Primary evidence for Early Modern English pronunciation is drawn from four main source types: the writings of sixteenth and seventeenth century orthoepists and spelling reformers, whose metalinguistic commentaries provide direct observations on contemporary pronunciation; rhyme and pun evidence in Shakespeare's dramatic and poetic texts, systematically analyzed by Kökeritz (1953) and subsequently reassessed by Cercignani (1981); comparative evidence from related Germanic languages and conservative dialects; and the internal evidence of Early Modern English spelling systems.

For the analysis of subsequent periods, the study draws on the descriptive phonological literature for each major stage of English, including Dobson's (1968) comprehensive account of Early Modern English sound changes, Wells's (1982) definitive three-volume survey of the accents of English, and Labov, Ash, and Boberg's (2006) Atlas of North American English. The analysis proceeds chronologically from the late Shakespearean period through the standardization period of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, the consolidation of Received Pronunciation in the nineteenth century, and the phonological diversification of the twentieth and twenty-first centuries. Phonemic transcriptions follow the conventions of the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA) throughout.

4. The Great Vowel Shift and Its Legacy

4.1 Origins and Chronology

The Great Vowel Shift (GVS) was a series of changes in the long vowels of Middle English that began in the fourteenth century and was largely complete by the end of the seventeenth century, though its effects continued to be felt in orthographic and phonological anomalies well into the modern period (Lass, 1999). The shift affected all seven long vowels of Middle English, raising each by one degree of vowel height in a chain movement. The two highest vowels — /iː/ and /uː/ — could not raise further and instead underwent diphthongization, becoming /aɪ/ and /aʊ/ respectively (Labov, 1994).

The practical consequence of the GVS is that the vowel letters of English now represent entirely different sounds from those they represented in the medieval period, and entirely different sounds from those they represent in other European languages that use the Latin alphabet. The letter <i> in Modern English represents /aɪ/ (as in "mine") rather than the /iː/ of Italian or German; the letter <u> represents /ʌ/ or /juː/ rather than /uː/ (Lass, 1999). This divergence between spelling and pronunciation is the primary reason why English orthography appears so irregular to learners and native speakers alike.

In Shakespeare's time, the GVS was still in progress. Several vowels that are monophthongs in present-day Received Pronunciation were still diphthongs or had different qualities in Elizabethan speech. Original Pronunciation (OP) reconstructions, pioneered by linguist David Crystal and his son Ben Crystal (Crystal, 2005), demonstrate that Shakespearean English had a notably different vowel system from any modern variety, with more open vowels, greater use of the back rounded vowel /ɒ/, and a rhotic quality in many environments where present-day British English has lost /r/.

4.2 Post-Shakespearean Vowel Changes

The century following Shakespeare's death in 1616 saw several important vowel developments. The merger of /aː/ and /æː/ in many environments, the development of the BATH-TRAP split (whereby words like "bath", "dance", and "path" acquired a long /ɑː/ vowel in southern British English but retained short /æ/ in northern British and most American dialects), and the smoothing of earlier diphthongs were among the most significant changes of the late seventeenth and early eighteenth centuries (Wells, 1982; Dobson, 1968).

The BATH-TRAP split is particularly significant for understanding the divergence of British and American English, as it represents one of the most salient phonological differences between the two standard varieties. American English generally preserves the earlier /æ/ in BATH-class words, a conservative feature reflecting the pronunciation of the English colonists who settled North America in the seventeenth century, before the BATH-TRAP split had established itself as a prestige feature in British English (Trudgill, 2004).

5. Consonant Changes: Rhoticity and Beyond

5.1 The Loss of Postvocalic /r/ in British English

One of the most diagnostically significant consonant changes in the history of English is the development of non-rhoticity — the loss of postvocalic /r/ in environments where it is not followed by a vowel. In rhotic varieties of English, including most American dialects, Scottish English, and Irish English, /r/ is pronounced in all positions, as in "car", "bird", and "butter". In non-rhotic varieties, including Received Pronunciation and most southern British dialects, /r/ in these positions was lost, typically in the late eighteenth century, leaving compensatory vowel lengthening as its trace (Wells, 1982).

Shakespeare's English was rhotic: the /r/ in words like "star", "first", and "more" was pronounced as a consonant. The loss of this /r/ in British English is therefore a post-Shakespearean development that contributes significantly to the phonological distance between Early Modern English and present-day RP. The loss of /r/ triggered a series of vowel mergers and developments, including the creation of the NURSE vowel /ɜː/ from the merger of earlier /ir/, /er/, and /ur/ sequences, and the development of the schwa /ə/ as the most frequent vowel in unstressed syllables (Lass, 1999).

5.2 Other Consonant Changes

Several other consonant changes separate Early Modern English from its modern descendants. The initial consonant clusters /kn-/, /gn-/, and /wr-/ were still pronounced in Shakespeare's time: "knight" was pronounced with an initial /k/, "gnaw" with an initial /g/, and "write" with an initial /w/ followed by /r/ (Kökeritz, 1953). The loss of these initial consonants occurred gradually over the seventeenth century. Similarly, the velar fricative /x/ survived in Scottish English (as in "loch") and was still present in some English dialects in the early modern period, but was lost in Standard English (Wells, 1982).

The distinction between /w/ and /ʍ/ (the voiceless counterpart in "which", "where", "white") has been lost in most modern varieties of English, though it survives in Scottish, Irish, and some American dialects. H-dropping — the loss of /h/ in unstressed and some stressed syllables — became increasingly stigmatized in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries as Received Pronunciation crystallized as a prestige variety, though it remained a feature of many regional British dialects.

6. The Rise of Received Pronunciation

Received Pronunciation (RP) — the accent traditionally associated with educated speakers from southern England, BBC broadcasters, and the English public school system — did not exist as a codified variety in Shakespeare's time. Its development as a prestige accent was a gradual process that accelerated in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, driven by the expansion of the English public school system, the growth of a mobile professional class, and the influence of prescriptive grammarians and elocutionists who sought to standardize spoken English on the model of the educated London accent (Mugglestone, 1995).

The phonetician Daniel Jones was the first to systematically describe and codify RP in his English Pronouncing Dictionary (1917) and later works, establishing it as the reference variety for phonetic description and foreign language teaching for much of the twentieth century (Jones, 1917; Wells, 1982). RP is notable for its non-rhoticity, its use of long /ɑː/ in BATH-class words, its realization of the GOAT vowel as a diphthong /əʊ/, and its use of the TRAP vowel /æ/ as a short open front vowel. RP has itself undergone significant change since Jones's description, with the variety spoken by younger educated speakers in the early twenty-first century — sometimes called Contemporary RP or Estuary English — differing in several respects from the traditional RP of the mid-twentieth century (Roach, 2004).

7. American English Phonology: Divergence and Development

The English of North America represents a distinct phonological tradition that diverged from British English over the course of the seventeenth, eighteenth, and nineteenth centuries. The phonological profile of American English reflects the dialect mixing of settlers from different regions of Britain, the influence of contact with other languages, and independent phonological developments in the new environment (Trudgill, 2004). Key features that distinguish General American from RP include rhoticity, the use of short /æ/ in BATH-class words, the LOT-PALM merger (whereby "cot" and "caught" are pronounced identically in many American dialects), and the use of a flap [ɾ] for intervocalic /t/ and /d/ (Wells, 1982).

The twentieth century has seen the development of several major regional chain shifts in American English, most notably the Northern Cities Shift (NCS) and the Southern Shift, both extensively documented by Labov and his colleagues (Labov, Ash, & Boberg, 2006). The NCS, affecting cities such as Chicago, Detroit, Cleveland, and Buffalo, involves a rotation of six vowels in a chain movement that produces characteristic pronunciations such as the raised and fronted /æ/ in "man" and the backed and lowered /ɑ/ in "caught".

8. Contemporary Phonological Change and Dialect Levelling

The late twentieth and early twenty-first centuries have witnessed significant phonological change in many varieties of English, driven by urbanization, increased social mobility, the influence of mass media, and the intensified dialect contact that characterizes modern multicultural societies (Milroy & Milroy, 2012). One of the most widely documented phenomena in contemporary British English is dialect levelling — the reduction of phonological differences between regional dialects, typically through the spread of features associated with the Southeast of England or with supraregional varieties (Trudgill, 1986; Kerswill, 2003).

Estuary English — a variety associated with the Thames Estuary region and spreading outward from London — has been proposed as a convergent variety that represents the outcome of dialect levelling in southern England (Rosewarne, 1994). Features associated with Estuary English include l-vocalization, t-glottalization, and the smoothing of diphthongs (Altendorf, 2003). Multicultural London English (MLE), a variety that has developed among young speakers in ethnically diverse areas of London, represents a new dialect formation process in which features from multiple ethnic and linguistic backgrounds have been integrated into a novel phonological system (Kerswill, Cheshire, Fox, & Torgersen, 2013).

9. Discussion

The phonological history of English from the Shakespearean period to the present illustrates several fundamental principles of language change. First, sound change is continuous: there is no period in the history of English at which the sound system was stable or in equilibrium. Second, sound change is regular but socially conditioned: changes spread through communities according to social vectors of prestige, identity, and network structure, producing the dialect variation that characterizes English in every period of its history (Labov, 1994; Trudgill, 2004).

Third, the relationship between Shakespeare's English and its modern descendants is one of both continuity and radical transformation. The segmental inventory of English has changed considerably since the Elizabethan period — in rhoticity, in the vowel system, in consonant clusters — yet the broad outlines of the English stress system and its morphophonological rules have remained relatively stable (Lass, 1999). Fourth, the divergence of World Englishes — the proliferation of distinct national and regional varieties of English across the globe — represents a continuation of the same processes of dialect contact, dialect mixing, and independent phonological development that produced the American-British divergence documented in this article (Crystal, 2003; Trudgill, 2004).

10. Conclusion

This article has traced the major phonological changes that separate the English of Shakespeare's time from the diverse range of English accents and dialects spoken in the present day. The Great Vowel Shift and its aftermath, the development and spread of non-rhoticity in British English, the rise of Received Pronunciation as a codified prestige variety, the phonological divergence of American English, and the contemporary processes of dialect levelling and new dialect formation together constitute a complex and multi-stranded story of phonological change extending over four centuries.

Several conclusions emerge from this analysis. The phonological distance between Shakespearean and contemporary English is greater than is commonly appreciated: not merely a matter of vocabulary or grammar but of fundamental differences in the vowel system, consonant inventory, and prosodic patterns of the language. The mechanisms driving this change — chain shifts, dialect contact, social stratification, prestige diffusion — are well understood theoretically and operate in consistent ways across different periods and varieties. And the change is ongoing: English phonology in 2026 is not the endpoint of a process that began in the medieval period but a moment in a continuing trajectory of change.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: S.S.; Methodology: S.S.; Investigation: S.S.; Writing – original draft: S.S.; Writing – review & editing: S.S.

References

Altendorf, U. (2003). Estuary English: Levelling at the interface of RP and South-Eastern British English. Gunter Narr Verlag.

Cercignani, F. (1981). Shakespeare's works and Elizabethan pronunciation. Clarendon Press.

Crystal, D. (2003). English as a global language (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Crystal, D. (2005). Pronouncing Shakespeare: The Globe experiment. Cambridge University Press.

Dobson, E. J. (1968). English pronunciation 1500–1700 (2nd ed., 2 vols.). Clarendon Press.

Hock, H. H., & Joseph, B. D. (2009). Language history, language change, and language relationship: An introduction to historical and comparative linguistics (2nd ed.). Mouton de Gruyter.

Jones, D. (1917). English pronouncing dictionary. Dent.

Kerswill, P. (2003). Dialect levelling and geographical diffusion in British English. In D. Britain & J. Cheshire (Eds.), Social dialectology: In honour of Peter Trudgill (pp. 223–243). John Benjamins. https://doi.org/10.1075/impact.16.18ker

Kerswill, P., Cheshire, J., Fox, S., & Torgersen, E. (2013). English as a contact language: The role of children and adolescents. In D. Schreier & M. Hundt (Eds.), English as a contact language (pp. 241–262). Cambridge University Press.

Kökeritz, H. (1953). Shakespeare's pronunciation. Yale University Press.

Labov, W. (1994). Principles of linguistic change: Vol. 1. Internal factors. Blackwell.

Labov, W. (2001). Principles of linguistic change: Vol. 2. Social factors. Blackwell.

Labov, W., Ash, S., & Boberg, C. (2006). The atlas of North American English: Phonetics, phonology and sound change. Mouton de Gruyter.

Lass, R. (1999). Phonology and morphology. In R. Lass (Ed.), The Cambridge history of the English language: Vol. 3. 1476–1776 (pp. 56–186). Cambridge University Press.

Martinet, A. (1955). Économie des changements phonétiques: Traité de phonologie diachronique. Francke.

Milroy, J., & Milroy, L. (2012). Authority in language: Investigating standard English (4th ed.). Routledge.

Mugglestone, L. (1995). Talking proper: The rise of accent as social symbol. Clarendon Press.

Roach, P. (2004). British English: Received Pronunciation. Journal of the International Phonetic Association, 34(2), 239–245. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0025100304001768

Rosewarne, D. (1994). Estuary English: Tomorrow's RP? English Today, 10(1), 3–8. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0266078400007641

Trudgill, P. (1986). Dialects in contact. Blackwell.

Trudgill, P. (2004). New-dialect formation: The inevitability of colonial Englishes. Edinburgh University Press.

Wells, J. C. (1982). Accents of English (3 vols.). Cambridge University Press.

Received: 10 March 2026
Accepted: 1 May 2026
Published: 4 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Morphological Awareness and Word-Formation Morphemes as a Pedagogical Instrument for Vocabulary Semantization in Foreign Language Instruction

[1] Remziyye Esgerova
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602024

Abstract. *Morphological awareness — the conscious understanding of word-formation processes and the semantic and syntactic properties of derivational morphemes — constitutes one of the most productive and transferable competencies available to foreign language learners for autonomous vocabulary development. This article examines the theoretical foundations and pedagogical applications of morpheme-based semantization: the method by which learners derive the meaning of unfamiliar derived words from the meaning of their constituent morphemes, thereby extending their productive and receptive vocabulary without reliance on direct instruction or dictionary consultation. Drawing on morphological awareness research, word-formation theory, vocabulary acquisition studies, and communicative language teaching, the study analyzes the structure of derivational processes in Russian and English, assesses the empirical evidence for morpheme-based vocabulary instruction, and proposes a framework for integrating word-formation analysis into communicatively oriented foreign language curricula. Special attention is paid to the development of word-formation dictionaries as pedagogical instruments that systematically codify the semantic and combinatorial properties of derivational affixes, enabling learners to construct and interpret derived words independently. The findings confirm that systematic morphological awareness instruction produces significant gains in vocabulary breadth, reading comprehension, and metalinguistic awareness, and that word-formation competence is a critically underexploited resource in foreign language vocabulary pedagogy. The article concludes with practical implications for curriculum design, lexicographic resource development, and teacher training in the context of foreign language instruction.*

Keywords: *morphological awareness, word-formation, derivational morphemes, vocabulary semantization, foreign language learning, word-formation dictionary, communicative competence*

1. Introduction

The acquisition of an adequate vocabulary is widely acknowledged as one of the most determinative factors in second and foreign language proficiency, yet the pedagogical strategies available for supporting vocabulary development remain insufficiently diverse and theoretically grounded in many foreign language instructional contexts. Traditional vocabulary pedagogy has

[1] ESGEROVA, R., Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University. Email: remziyye.esgerova@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0006-9629-4139

relied predominantly on what may be characterized as a semasiological approach: learners are presented with a lexical form and its meaning, whether through direct translation, contextual explanation, or dictionary consultation, and are expected to retain this form-meaning association through repetition and practice. While this approach has its place in the initial stages of vocabulary acquisition, it fails to equip learners with the autonomous capacity for vocabulary expansion that advanced proficiency requires — the ability to encounter an unfamiliar derived word and construct its meaning independently from the meanings of its constituent morphemes (Nation, 2001; Schmitt, 2000).

Morphological awareness — defined as conscious knowledge of the internal morphological structure of words and the semantic, syntactic, and phonological properties of derivational morphemes — constitutes precisely this kind of autonomous vocabulary-building capacity (Kieffer & Lesaux, 2008). A learner who understands that the Russian prefix пере- conveys the meaning of repeated or excessive action, or that the English suffix -ness derives abstract nouns from adjectives with a predictable semantic relationship, possesses a generative tool for interpreting and producing an open-ended range of derived words without instruction or dictionary support. The theoretical significance of this capacity has been widely recognized in first language literacy research (Carlisle, 2000), but its systematic integration into foreign language vocabulary pedagogy has proceeded more slowly and unevenly than the evidence warrants.

The theoretical and practical problems at the center of this article concern the conditions under which morphological awareness can be most effectively developed in foreign language instruction, the design of pedagogical instruments — particularly word-formation dictionaries — that systematize and make accessible the semantic properties of derivational morphemes, and the relationship between morpheme-based semantization and the development of communicative competence in foreign language learners. These problems are examined through the lens of word-formation theory, vocabulary acquisition research, and communicative language teaching, with illustrative attention to word-formation processes in Russian as a morphologically rich language whose derivational system is particularly productive and whose pedagogical exploitation in foreign language instruction has been the subject of sustained scholarly investigation.

The article proceeds as follows. Section 2 presents the theoretical framework, integrating morphological awareness research, word-formation theory, and vocabulary acquisition models. Section 3 describes the methodology. Sections 4 and 5 analyze the structure of word-formation processes and the design of word-formation dictionaries as pedagogical instruments. Section 6 examines the communicative dimensions of morpheme-based vocabulary instruction. Section 7 presents discussion and pedagogical implications, and Section 8 concludes the study.

2. Theoretical Framework

2.1 Morphological Awareness in Vocabulary Acquisition

The relationship between morphological awareness and vocabulary development has been extensively investigated in both first and second language research. Carlisle's (2000) influential work demonstrated that morphological awareness at the word level — the ability to analyze words into their constituent morphemes and to understand morphological derivation relationships — is a significant predictor of vocabulary knowledge and reading comprehension in L1 English learners, independent of phonological awareness and general verbal ability. Subsequent research in second language contexts has consistently confirmed and extended these findings. Kieffer and Lesaux (2008) demonstrated that morphological awareness predicts vocabulary knowledge and reading comprehension among Spanish-speaking EFL learners in the United States. Jiang and Zipf (2023) found strong correlations between derivational morphological awareness and both productive and receptive vocabulary knowledge across typologically diverse L2 learner populations.

The theoretical mechanism through which morphological awareness supports vocabulary development is well established. Morphologically complex words — derived words formed through the affixation of prefixes, suffixes, or infixes to base forms — constitute the majority of the vocabulary of morphologically rich languages such as Russian, German, and Turkish, and a substantial proportion of the vocabulary of more analytic languages such as English. When learners can decompose a derived word into its constituent morphemes and retrieve the meanings of those morphemes, they gain access to the meaning of the derived word without the need for direct instruction or dictionary consultation. This decomposition-based semantization process is precisely the mechanism that Esgerova (in preparation) and other word-formation pedagogists describe as the central goal of morphologically oriented vocabulary instruction.

2.2 Word-Formation Theory and Derivational Productivity

Word-formation theory — the branch of morphology concerned with the systematic processes through which new words are created from existing lexical and morphological material — provides the theoretical foundation for understanding both how derived words acquire their meanings and how this knowledge can be exploited pedagogically. Aronoff (1976) established the principle that word-formation processes are governed by morphological rules that operate on base forms to produce derived forms with predictable morphophonological and semantic properties. The productivity of a word-formation rule — the degree to which it is actively deployed to create new words in the language — is a critical variable for vocabulary pedagogy, as highly productive rules generate larger lexical families and therefore offer greater returns on the investment of morphological instruction.

In Russian, a language with one of the most productive and systematically organized derivational systems among the major European languages, word-formation processes account for the majority of the vocabulary available to educated adult speakers. Tikhonov's (1985) comprehensive word-formation dictionary of Russian documents over 145,000 words organized into derivational families, demonstrating the extraordinary scope of Russian morphological productivity and the correspondingly vast vocabulary gains that morphological awareness instruction can yield. The prefix пере- alone participates in the formation of over 300 commonly used verbs with predictable semantic modifications of the base verb meaning — conveying excessive action (переедать, to overeat), repeated action (перечитать, to reread), movement from one place to another (переехать, to move), and mutual action (переговариваться, to exchange words). A learner who has internalized the semantic range of this single prefix has effectively unlocked access to hundreds of lexical items that would otherwise require individual instruction.

2.3 Vocabulary Acquisition Models

Nation's (2001) influential vocabulary acquisition framework provides a complementary theoretical perspective on the role of morphological knowledge in vocabulary development. Nation argues that vocabulary knowledge encompasses multiple dimensions — including word form, meaning, use, grammatical behavior, collocations, and word family relationships — and that productive vocabulary use requires mastery of all of these dimensions rather than form-meaning association alone. From this perspective, morphological knowledge — knowledge of how words in a derivational family are formally and semantically related — constitutes an essential component of deep lexical knowledge that enables learners to use words flexibly and accurately across diverse contexts. Laufer and Goldstein's (2004) work on productive vocabulary use further emphasizes that awareness of derivational relationships enables learners to produce contextually appropriate derived forms in writing and speech, a dimension of productive competence that vocabulary instruction focused exclusively on receptive form-meaning associations fails to develop.

3. Methodology

This study employs a qualitative, descriptive-analytical methodology combining systematic literature review, theoretical analysis of word-formation systems, and the evaluation of existing pedagogical instruments for morpheme-based vocabulary instruction. The literature review encompassed peer-reviewed research in morphological awareness, word-formation theory, and vocabulary acquisition published between 2000 and 2025, identified through Scopus, Web of Science, and ERIC. Secondary analysis of existing word-formation dictionaries — particularly Russian-language pedagogical dictionaries designed for foreign language learners — was conducted to assess their design principles and pedagogical adequacy. The analytical framework integrates word-formation theory, vocabulary acquisition research, and communicative language teaching principles to propose an evidence-based model for morpheme-based vocabulary instruction.

4. The Structure of Derivational Processes and the Semantization of Derived Words

4.1 Derivational Motivation and Semantic Transparency

The central concept for morpheme-based semantization is derivational motivation — the relationship between the meaning of a derived word and the meaning of its base form and affixes. A derived word is said to be morphologically motivated when its meaning is predictable from the meanings of its constituent morphemes; it is demotivated or opaque when this predictability has been lost through semantic drift, lexicalization, or irregularity (Aronoff, 1976). The degree of semantic transparency of derived words varies considerably both across derivational processes and across individual lexical items within the same derivational category, and this variation has important implications for the pedagogical exploitation of morphological knowledge.

In Russian, the derivational system is characterized by a high degree of semantic transparency in the productive word-formation processes that generate the majority of the lexicon available to learners at intermediate and advanced proficiency levels. Prefix-based verbal derivation is particularly regular: the prefixes вы-, за-, на-, по-, пере-, раз-, and others modify base verb meanings according to consistent semantic patterns — directionality, completion, distribution, repetition, separation, and so on — that learners can internalize as rules for interpreting and producing derived forms. Suffix-based nominal and adjectival derivation is similarly regular in many categories: agentive suffixes (-щик/-чик, -тель, -ист) systematically derive agent nouns from verb bases; evaluative suffixes (-ник, -ница) derive nouns denoting characteristic behavior; abstract noun suffixes (-ость, -ение/-ание, -ство) derive abstract nouns from adjective and verb bases with predictable semantic relationships. Mastery of these productive patterns grants learners the capacity to semantize a substantial proportion of derived words they encounter in authentic texts without dictionary consultation.

4.2 The Semantization Method Based on Morpheme Meaning

The semantization method that places the derivational base within the definition of the derived word — defining писатель (writer) as "one who пишет (writes)" and перечитать (to reread) as "to читать (read) again" — represents the most cognitively natural and pedagogically efficient approach to explaining derived word meaning, precisely because it mirrors the structure of derivational motivation itself. When learners understand that a derived word's meaning is compositionally determined by the meaning of its base and the meaning of its affix, they acquire not merely the meaning of the specific word being taught but a generalizable schema for interpreting and producing the entire derivational family to which that word belongs.

This approach requires that the semantic properties of affixes be explicitly taught as productive, generative components rather than as incidental features of individual lexical items. The pedagogical challenge is that individual affixes often exhibit semantic polysemy — multiple related but distinct meanings distributed across different derivational contexts — that must be systematically documented and taught if learners are to apply morphological knowledge reliably. The prefix пере-, for example, is polysemous across at least four major semantic values (repetition, excess, movement, mutuality), and a learner who knows only one of these values will misinterpret a substantial number of пере-prefixed forms. A pedagogically adequate account of affix meaning must therefore address the full semantic range of each affix, organized by frequency and productivity to ensure optimal learning efficiency.

5. Word-Formation Dictionaries as Pedagogical Instruments

5.1 Design Principles for Pedagogical Word-Formation Dictionaries

Word-formation dictionaries designed for foreign language learners constitute a category of lexicographic resource that is both theoretically well-motivated and practically underdeveloped. Existing word-formation dictionaries of Russian — including the large-scale reference works of Tikhonov (1985) and the pedagogically oriented dictionaries of Kuz'mina and Nemchenko (1986) — provide valuable documentation of derivational relationships but are not designed with foreign language learner needs in mind. A pedagogically adequate word-formation dictionary for foreign language learners must satisfy several additional requirements that standard lexicographic word-formation dictionaries do not address.

First, it must be organized by formant (affix) rather than by derivational family, so that learners can systematically acquire the semantic and combinatorial properties of individual affixes as productive rules rather than encountering them incidentally across disparate lexical entries. Second, it must document not only the core meaning of each affix but its semantic range and the contextual conditions that determine which semantic value is realized in any given derived form. Third, it must include contrastive information highlighting the distinctions between semantically related affixes — for example, the distinction between the Russian agentive suffixes -щик/-чик and -тель, which both derive agent nouns but differ in their combinatorial restrictions and stylistic connotations. Fourth, it must be integrated with exercises and activities that develop learners' productive as well as receptive morphological competence — enabling them to construct derived forms as well as to interpret them (Nation & Waring, 2020).

5.2 The Proposed Dictionary Model

Drawing on these design principles, this article proposes a model for a pedagogical word-formation dictionary of Russian derivational affixes for foreign language learners structured around three organizational levels. At the macro-level, affixes are organized by grammatical category (verbal prefixes, nominal suffixes, adjectival suffixes) and within each category by productivity rank, ensuring that learners who study the dictionary sequentially encounter the highest-frequency, most productive affixes first. At the meso-level, each affix entry documents its core semantic value(s), its morphophonological variants, its collocational and selectional restrictions (including information about the semantic classes of base words with which the affix productively combines), and contrastive notes distinguishing it from semantically related affixes. At the micro-level, each semantic value of each affix is illustrated with a set of derived form examples organized by semantic subtype, with each example accompanied by its base form, a compositional definition, and example sentences in authentic contexts.

This three-level structure directly addresses the principal pedagogical inadequacies of existing word-formation reference materials: it makes affix meaning the primary organizational principle rather than lexical form; it documents semantic polysemy systematically rather than treating each derived word as a separate lexical item; and it provides the collocational and selectional information that learners need to apply morphological knowledge productively rather than merely receptively. Such a resource would enable learners to approach unfamiliar derived words analytically rather than dependently — decomposing them into their morphological constituents, retrieving the meanings of those constituents from stored morphological knowledge, and constructing a compositional interpretation that can be verified against contextual evidence.

6. Communicative Dimensions of Morpheme-Based Vocabulary Instruction

The relationship between morphological awareness and communicative competence is mediated through several distinct pathways that together make morpheme-based vocabulary instruction a powerful tool for developing the full range of competencies required for authentic communication in a foreign language. The most direct pathway is lexical breadth: learners with strong morphological awareness command larger vocabularies because they can extend their receptive and productive vocabulary through morphological inference rather than being limited to words they have encountered and studied directly. Nation's (2001) research demonstrates that vocabulary size is among the strongest predictors of reading comprehension and overall language proficiency, and morphological awareness is one of the most efficient routes to vocabulary expansion available to advanced learners.

A second pathway concerns the precision and appropriateness of vocabulary use in production. Learners who understand the derivational relationships within word families — including the grammatical category, semantic nuance, and stylistic connotation differences between related forms — are better equipped to select the contextually appropriate form in writing and speech. The distinction between the Russian abstract nouns ending in -ость (typically derived from adjectives, denoting qualities: красота, beauty) and those ending in -ение/-ание (typically derived from verbs, denoting processes or results: решение, decision; написание, writing) is not merely a morphological fact but a communicative resource: it enables learners to express the distinction between properties and events in a way that reflects natural Russian usage. This kind of precision in form selection is a hallmark of advanced communicative competence that morphologically uninstructed learners are unlikely to develop.

A third pathway concerns reading fluency and comprehension efficiency. Readers who recognize derived words as morphologically complex — rather than treating each derived form as an opaque, unanalyzed unit — process text more efficiently because they can decode unfamiliar derived words through morphological inference rather than interrupting reading to consult a dictionary. Research by Hulstijn, Hollander, and Greidanus (1996) demonstrates that the capacity for contextual and morphological inference in vocabulary learning is closely associated with reading fluency and with the depth of incidental vocabulary acquisition that extensive reading can produce. Morphological awareness instruction therefore supports not only direct vocabulary learning but the effectiveness of extensive reading as a broader vocabulary acquisition strategy (Day & Bamford, 1998).

7. Discussion

The analysis presented in this article converges on a set of conclusions with significant implications for vocabulary pedagogy in foreign language instruction. The most fundamental is that morphological awareness instruction — systematic, explicit teaching of the semantic and combinatorial properties of derivational morphemes — represents a critically underexploited resource in foreign language vocabulary pedagogy whose potential returns substantially exceed those of the form-meaning association approach that dominates most instructional contexts. The evidence from morphological awareness research, word-formation theory, and vocabulary acquisition studies consistently supports the view that learners who possess explicit morphological knowledge are more effective vocabulary learners, more proficient readers, and more precise language producers than those who lack it.

The development of adequate pedagogical instruments for morpheme-based vocabulary instruction — particularly word-formation dictionaries organized by affix rather than by lexical form — represents a priority research and development need in applied linguistics and lexicography. Existing word-formation reference resources for foreign language learners of Russian and other morphologically rich languages are insufficient in both scope and pedagogical design to support the kind of systematic morphological awareness development that the research evidence endorses. The dictionary model proposed in this article represents one response to this gap, though its practical realization would require substantial collaborative work between morphologists, lexicographers, and language teaching specialists with expertise in learner needs analysis.

The implications for communicative language teaching are also significant. A communicative approach to vocabulary instruction does not reduce vocabulary teaching to contextual guessing or incidental acquisition from input alone; it integrates systematic vocabulary instruction — including morphological awareness development — within communicatively meaningful tasks and texts. The use of authentic texts as the primary vehicle for vocabulary instruction, combined with explicit pre-teaching of derivational morpheme meanings relevant to the target text and post-reading activities requiring productive use of derived forms, represents a principled integration of morphological instruction within a communicative framework. As Nuri and Ismayilli (2025) note in their analysis of student motivation, learners who understand the systematic, rule-governed nature of the language they are learning — and who experience the intellectual satisfaction of independently constructing word meanings through morphological analysis — report higher levels of intrinsic motivation and more sustained engagement with vocabulary learning tasks than those who rely on rote memorization alone.

8. Conclusion

This article has examined the theoretical foundations and pedagogical applications of morpheme-based semantization as an approach to vocabulary development in foreign language instruction, with particular attention to the derivational morphology of Russian as a productive case study. The analysis has demonstrated that morphological awareness — the conscious knowledge of word-formation processes and the semantic properties of derivational morphemes — constitutes one of the most powerful and transferable vocabulary-building tools available to foreign language learners, enabling the independent interpretation and production of derived words across the full scope of the derivational lexicon.

The central argument of the article is that the systematic integration of word-formation instruction into foreign language curricula, supported by purpose-designed pedagogical instruments such as the word-formation dictionary model proposed here, would yield substantial improvements in learners' vocabulary breadth, reading comprehension, and productive language precision — improvements that the dominant form-meaning association pedagogy is structurally unable to achieve. Realizing this potential requires the development of adequate lexicographic resources, the reform of vocabulary instruction methodologies in the direction of greater morphological explicitness, and sustained investment in teacher professional development to equip language instructors with the morphological knowledge and pedagogical skills required to implement morphological awareness instruction effectively. Future research should investigate the optimal sequencing and timing of morphological awareness instruction across proficiency levels, the relative effectiveness of different instructional formats (explicit vs. implicit, deductive vs. inductive) for morpheme meaning teaching, and the differential outcomes of morphological instruction across typologically distinct L1-L2 language pairs.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: R.E.; Methodology: R.E.; Investigation: R.E.; Writing – original draft: R.E.; Writing – review & editing: R.E.

References

Aronoff, M. (1976). Word formation in generative grammar. MIT Press.

Babayev, J. (2025). Orthographic challenges in the transliteration of proper names between languages with different spelling. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 2(4), 345–356.

Carlisle, J. F. (2000). Awareness of the structure and meaning of morphologically complex words: Impact on reading. Reading and Writing, 12(3), 169–190. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1008131926604

Day, R. R., & Bamford, J. (1998). Extensive reading in the second language classroom. Cambridge University Press.

Hulstijn, J. H., Hollander, M., & Greidanus, T. (1996). Incidental vocabulary learning by advanced foreign language students: The influence of marginal glosses, dictionary use, and reoccurrence of unknown words. The Modern Language Journal, 80(3), 327–339. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-4781.1996.tb01614.x

Jiang, X., & Zipf, L. (2023). Derivational morphological awareness and vocabulary knowledge in adult L2 learners. Studies in Second Language Acquisition, 45(1), 1–27. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0272263122000286

Kieffer, M. J., & Lesaux, N. K. (2008). The role of derivational morphology in the reading comprehension of Spanish-speaking English language learners. Reading and Writing, 21(8), 783–804. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11145-007-9092-8

Kuz'mina, S. M., & Nemchenko, V. N. (1986). Uchebnyy slovar' slovoobrazovatel'nykh formantov russkogo yazyka [Educational dictionary of word-formation formants of the Russian language]. Russkiy yazyk.

Laufer, B., & Goldstein, Z. (2004). Testing vocabulary knowledge: Size, strength, and computer adaptiveness. Language Learning, 54(3), 399–436. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.0023-8333.2004.00261.x

Marulis, L. M., & Neuman, S. B. (2010). The effects of vocabulary intervention on young children's word learning: A meta-analysis. Review of Educational Research, 80(3), 300–335. https://doi.org/10.3102/0034654310377087

Nation, I. S. P. (2001). Learning vocabulary in another language. Cambridge University Press.

Nation, I. S. P., & Waring, R. (2020). Teaching extensive reading in another language. Routledge.

Nuri, A., & Ismayilli, T. (2025). The importance of student motivation. Science, Education and Innovations in the Context of Modern Problems, 8(6), 260–262.

Schmitt, N. (2000). Vocabulary in language teaching. Cambridge University Press.

Tikhonov, A. N. (1985). Slovoobrazovatel'nyy slovar' russkogo yazyka [Word-formation dictionary of the Russian language] (2 vols.). Russkiy yazyk.

Tyler, A., & Nagy, W. (1989). The acquisition of English derivational morphology. Journal of Memory and Language, 28(6), 649–667. https://doi.org/10.1016/0749-596X(89)90002-8

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Zhang, D., & Koda, K. (2012). Contribution of morphological awareness and lexical inferencing ability to L2 vocabulary knowledge and reading comprehension among advanced EFL learners. Reading and Writing, 25(5), 1195–1216. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11145-011-9297-x

Received: 18 March 2026
Accepted: 5 May 2026
Published: 8 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Enhancing Reading Proficiency Through Innovative Teaching Practices

[1] Narmin Ibrahimli
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602025

Abstract. *Reading proficiency constitutes a cornerstone of academic achievement and lifelong learning, yet its systematic development in English as a Foreign Language (EFL) classrooms continues to present substantial pedagogical challenges. This article examines a range of innovative teaching practices that have demonstrated documented effectiveness in advancing reading proficiency among EFL learners, with particular attention to theoretical frameworks, empirical evidence, and practical implementation considerations. Drawing on a synthesis of recent research in applied linguistics, cognitive psychology, and educational technology, the study analyzes five principal innovative approaches: reciprocal teaching and metacognitive strategy instruction, extensive reading programs, multimodal and technology-enhanced reading environments, genre-based and text-structure instruction, and collaborative reading frameworks. The analysis is situated within the theoretical traditions of schema theory, the Simple View of Reading, Transactional Theory, and sociocultural learning theory, which together provide a comprehensive explanatory framework for the reading comprehension gains produced by these approaches. The findings indicate that innovation in reading instruction is most effective when it simultaneously addresses decoding efficiency, vocabulary knowledge, background knowledge activation, metacognitive strategy use, and learner motivation — dimensions that traditional comprehension-question pedagogies typically address inadequately. The article concludes by proposing an integrated pedagogical model for reading proficiency development and identifying priorities for future research in the field.*

Keywords: *reading proficiency, EFL, innovative teaching, metacognitive strategies, extensive reading, multimodal literacy, reciprocal teaching, reading comprehension*

1. Introduction

Reading proficiency is one of the most consequential competencies that learners of English as a Foreign Language (EFL) must develop. It underpins academic achievement across all disciplines, enables access to the exponentially expanding body of knowledge communicated through English-medium texts, and constitutes a primary vehicle through which learners acquire vocabulary, grammar, and discourse knowledge incidentally through exposure to authentic language (Nation, 2009; Grabe, 2009). Despite its centrality to language education, reading instruction in many EFL

[1] Ibrahimli, N. Senior Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: nermin.iskenderova.92@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-8929-3943

classrooms continues to be dominated by approaches whose theoretical and empirical foundations are insufficiently robust to produce the deep, flexible, and self-regulated reading competence that contemporary academic and professional contexts demand.

The dominant model of EFL reading instruction in many educational contexts remains what Grabe and Stoller (2011) characterize as the "comprehension questions" paradigm: learners are assigned a text, required to read it silently, and then assessed through a series of literal and inferential comprehension questions whose pedagogical value extends little beyond measuring whether the text was read. This paradigm does not teach reading; it tests the outcomes of reading processes whose development is left largely to chance. The substantial body of research accumulated over four decades of reading instruction scholarship has established that genuine reading proficiency development requires systematic attention to multiple component processes — phonological decoding, vocabulary knowledge, background knowledge activation, reading fluency, syntactic parsing, and higher-order comprehension and reasoning — that the comprehension questions paradigm leaves unaddressed (Alderson, 2000; Grabe, 2009).

The past two decades have witnessed the development and empirical validation of a range of innovative instructional approaches that more adequately address the multidimensional complexity of reading proficiency. These approaches draw on converging insights from cognitive psychology, applied linguistics, educational technology, and sociocultural theory to create learning conditions that are more finely calibrated to the needs of developing readers. The present article provides a comprehensive review and critical analysis of the most rigorously evidenced of these approaches, examining their theoretical foundations, implementation requirements, documented outcomes, and practical implications for EFL reading instruction. By synthesizing these insights, the article aims to contribute to the growing literature on evidence-based reading pedagogy and to provide a resource for EFL educators seeking to develop more effective and theoretically principled reading programs.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundations of this analysis draw on four intersecting traditions in reading research. The first is schema theory, as developed by Bartlett (1932) and elaborated in the reading research literature by Anderson and Pearson (1984). Schema theory proposes that comprehension is not the passive extraction of meaning from text but an active, constructive process in which readers integrate the information encoded in the text with their prior knowledge, organized in the form of cognitive schemas — structured networks of knowledge about particular domains, text types, and discourse patterns. This framework has direct pedagogical implications: instructional approaches that activate and build readers' background knowledge schemas before and during reading substantially enhance comprehension outcomes. The distinction between content schemas (knowledge about the world) and formal schemas (knowledge about text structures and genres) further informs the genre-based instructional approaches analyzed below.

The second theoretical tradition is the Simple View of Reading (SVR), proposed by Gough and Tunmer (1986) and extensively validated in subsequent research. The SVR proposes that reading comprehension is the product of two separable component capacities: decoding — the ability to accurately and fluently recognize words in print — and linguistic comprehension — the ability to understand spoken language. The SVR has direct implications for reading instruction: it establishes that reading comprehension difficulties may derive from deficits in either or both components, and that effective instruction must address both (Hoover & Gough, 1990). In EFL contexts, where learners may struggle with both the decoding demands of a new orthographic system and the linguistic comprehension demands of limited vocabulary and grammatical knowledge, this framework highlights the importance of instruction that simultaneously develops both dimensions.

The third tradition is Rosenblatt's (1978) Transactional Theory of reading, which conceptualizes the reading experience as a dynamic transaction between the reader and the text in which meaning is constructed in the interaction between the two rather than residing in either. Rosenblatt distinguishes between efferent reading, in which readers focus on extracting informational content from texts, and aesthetic reading, in which readers engage with the lived emotional and experiential dimensions of their reading experience. This distinction has important implications for reading pedagogy, suggesting that a comprehensive approach to reading instruction should cultivate both efferent and aesthetic orientations, enabling learners to engage with texts as both information sources and as aesthetic and cultural objects.

The fourth tradition is Vygotsky's (1978) sociocultural theory and its extension into reading pedagogy through the work of Palincsar and Brown (1984) on reciprocal teaching and subsequent collaborative reading frameworks. Sociocultural theory emphasizes the role of social interaction and scaffolded support in cognitive development, and its application to reading instruction has produced some of the most rigorously evidenced pedagogical approaches in the field — particularly the reciprocal teaching framework, which operationalizes Vygotsky's zone of proximal development concept through structured peer and teacher-mediated strategy instruction.

3. Methodology

This study employs a qualitative synthesis methodology integrating a systematic literature review with critical theoretical analysis. The literature review encompassed peer-reviewed research published between 2005 and 2025, identified through searches of Scopus, Web of Science, and ERIC using the search terms "reading proficiency EFL", "innovative reading instruction", "metacognitive reading strategies", "extensive reading", "reciprocal teaching", "multimodal reading", and "genre-based reading instruction". Inclusion criteria required peer-reviewed publication, focus on EFL or ESL reading instruction, empirical or theoretical engagement with innovative pedagogical approaches, and documented outcomes related to reading proficiency. The synthesis proceeds analytically, identifying patterns of evidence across the literature to evaluate each of the five instructional approaches under examination.

4. Innovative Approaches to Reading Proficiency Development

4.1 Reciprocal Teaching and Metacognitive Strategy Instruction

Reciprocal teaching, developed by Palincsar and Brown (1984), is one of the most extensively researched and robustly evidenced reading instructional approaches in the entire research literature. The approach involves structured, teacher-led small-group reading sessions in which four key comprehension strategies — predicting, questioning, clarifying, and summarizing — are explicitly taught, modeled, and then practiced by students who progressively assume the role of discussion leader. The reciprocal structure operationalizes Vygotsky's zone of proximal development: the teacher initially provides substantial scaffolding for strategy use, which is gradually withdrawn as students develop independent strategy competence.

The evidence base for reciprocal teaching is exceptionally strong. Rosenshine and Meister's (1994) meta-analysis of 16 studies found effect sizes ranging from 0.32 to 1.36 on standardized reading comprehension measures, with particularly large effects for struggling readers. More recent applications to EFL contexts have confirmed the approach's effectiveness across typologically diverse L1 backgrounds (Zhang, 2010). The underlying theoretical rationale is compelling: comprehension monitoring — the awareness of whether one is understanding what one reads and the capacity to deploy repair strategies when comprehension fails — is the single most diagnostically significant difference between skilled and unskilled readers (Baker & Brown, 1984), and reciprocal teaching directly develops this metacognitive capacity through overt, dialogic engagement with the comprehension process.

Broader metacognitive strategy instruction frameworks — including the Cognitive Academic Language Learning Approach (CALLA) developed by Chamot and O'Malley (1994) — extend the principles of reciprocal teaching to a wider repertoire of reading strategies, including note-taking, graphic organizer construction, self-questioning, and elaborative inference generation. Meta-analytic research consistently demonstrates that explicit strategy instruction produces significant, durable gains in reading comprehension across learner age groups, proficiency levels, and L1 backgrounds (Pressley, 2002; Grabe & Stoller, 2011).

4.2 Extensive Reading Programs

Extensive reading (ER) — the practice of reading large quantities of text at a comfortable level of difficulty, primarily for meaning and enjoyment rather than for linguistic analysis — has been identified in a substantial body of research as one of the most productive routes to reading proficiency development available to EFL learners (Nation & Waring, 2020; Day & Bamford, 1998). The theoretical rationale for ER draws on Krashen's (1985) Input Hypothesis, which holds that acquisition occurs through exposure to comprehensible input at and slightly above the learner's current proficiency level, and on the extensive vocabulary acquisition research demonstrating that a substantial proportion of vocabulary is learned incidentally through reading (Nation, 2001).

The cognitive case for ER is compelling. Reading fluency — the ability to read accurately and rapidly enough to free cognitive resources for comprehension — develops primarily through practice with large volumes of text at the appropriate level of difficulty. Readers who read extensively develop larger sight vocabularies, faster lexical access, stronger syntactic parsing abilities, and richer background knowledge schemas — all of which contribute to improved comprehension of more challenging texts (Grabe, 2009). Research on ER programs in EFL contexts, including the landmark studies by Elley and Mangubhai (1983) in Fiji, Mason and Krashen (1997) in Japan, and the extensive research program of Nation and Wang (1999) in New Zealand, has documented consistent gains in reading speed, vocabulary knowledge, grammatical awareness, and overall reading comprehension.

The implementation of effective ER programs requires access to adequately large libraries of graded readers calibrated to learners' proficiency levels, institutional support for autonomous reading time, and a classroom culture that positions reading for enjoyment as a legitimate and valued educational activity (Day & Bamford, 1998). Digital ER platforms, including e-readers with embedded dictionaries and vocabulary tracking tools, have extended the accessibility and pedagogical integration of ER by providing immediate lexical support and enabling teachers to monitor reading activity more effectively (Alisoy, 2025).

4.3 Multimodal and Technology-Enhanced Reading Environments

The proliferation of digital technologies has created new possibilities for reading instruction that extend significantly beyond the affordances of print-only environments. Multimodal texts — which combine written language with images, audio, video, interactive elements, and hyperlinked networks of related information — are increasingly the default format of contemporary reading in academic, professional, and personal contexts. Preparing EFL learners to read effectively in multimodal environments requires instructional attention to the specific comprehension and navigation skills that multimodal texts demand, which differ in important respects from those required for linear print reading (Kern, 2000).

Research on technology-enhanced reading instruction has identified several specific affordances that digital reading environments offer over print. Embedded vocabulary glossing — the provision of immediate definitions or contextual information for unknown words through clickable annotations — has been shown to enhance both incidental vocabulary learning and reading comprehension, particularly when learners have control over the timing and form of glosses (Hulstijn, Hollander, & Greidanus, 1996). Text-to-speech functionality supports phonological processing and listening-reading integration. Interactive comprehension questions with immediate feedback and explanation create formative assessment opportunities that the print environment cannot provide. And the data analytics capabilities of digital reading platforms enable teachers to identify individual learners' difficulty patterns and adjust instruction accordingly.

Corpus-based reading instruction represents a further technological innovation with significant pedagogical potential. By providing learners with access to large databases of authentic language use, corpus tools enable learners to investigate how specific vocabulary items, grammatical structures, and discourse patterns function in authentic texts, developing the genre awareness and lexical knowledge that underpin skilled reading in academic and professional registers (O'Keeffe, McCarthy, & Carter, 2007). The increasing accessibility of corpus tools through web-based interfaces has made this approach viable even in resource-constrained educational settings.

4.4 Genre-Based and Text-Structure Instruction

Research in text comprehension has consistently demonstrated that readers' awareness of how different types of text are organized — the schematic structure of argument, narrative, exposition, description, and procedural discourse — substantially facilitates comprehension by enabling readers to form appropriate structural expectations that guide their interpretation of incoming information (Meyer & Freedle, 1984; Grabe & Stoller, 2011). Genre-based reading instruction makes this structural knowledge explicit by teaching learners to identify, analyze, and utilize the organizational patterns of specific text types — including academic argument, research reports, news articles, and narrative fiction — as tools for comprehension.

Explicit text-structure instruction has been shown to produce significant gains in reading comprehension, particularly for longer and more complex texts where comprehension requires the integration of information across multiple paragraphs or sections (Williams, 2005). Graphic organizers — visual representations of text structure that help learners map the organizational logic of a text — are a particularly effective tool for making text structure visible and analytically accessible. Research on graphic organizer use in EFL reading instruction has demonstrated consistent benefits for comprehension monitoring, information retention, and summarization quality (Chang, 2010). Genre-based approaches further develop learners' awareness of the social functions of different text types and the rhetorical conventions that govern them — knowledge that is essential for effective academic reading and that is rarely addressed in traditional comprehension-focused reading pedagogy.

4.5 Collaborative Reading Frameworks

Collaborative reading frameworks — instructional approaches that organize reading as a social and dialogic activity rather than as a solitary, silent process — draw on sociocultural learning theory to position comprehension as something that can be constructed through dialogue as well as through individual cognitive processing. Literature Circles, Reading Workshops, Book Clubs, and Collaborative Strategic Reading (CSR) represent different instantiations of this principle, each providing structured frameworks within which learners discuss, question, and collectively construct interpretations of shared texts (Klinger & Vaughn, 1998).

The pedagogical rationale for collaborative reading extends beyond the social dimensions of Vygotsky's zone of proximal development. Reading discussion creates conditions in which learners are required to articulate, justify, and revise their interpretations — a process that forces more precise and evidence-based comprehension monitoring than silent individual reading permits. Research on CSR in EFL contexts has documented significant gains in reading comprehension, vocabulary acquisition, and content knowledge, along with improved participation and motivation among learners who typically disengage from individual silent reading tasks (Klinger & Vaughn, 1998). The collaborative structure also provides an ideal context for the development of the inferencing skills, critical reading competencies, and evaluative response capacities that are essential for advanced academic literacy.

5. An Integrated Pedagogical Model

The five innovative approaches reviewed above are not mutually exclusive but complementary, addressing different dimensions of reading proficiency that collectively constitute the full profile of a skilled reader. An integrated pedagogical model for reading proficiency development in EFL contexts would therefore incorporate all five dimensions within a coherent instructional framework. Pre-reading phases would activate background knowledge schemas and introduce relevant vocabulary and text-structure knowledge, preparing learners for the cognitive demands of the target text. During-reading phases would engage learners in metacognitive strategy use — predicting, monitoring, clarifying, inferencing — through reciprocal or collaborative reading structures. Post-reading phases would consolidate comprehension through discussion, graphic organizer construction, summarization, and evaluative response tasks that develop critical reading competence.

Extensive reading would provide the high-volume exposure necessary for fluency and vocabulary development across the full curriculum, supplementing the intensive reading of target texts with regular periods of self-selected reading at comfortable proficiency levels. Technology would be deployed strategically to provide vocabulary support, data analytics, and access to diverse text types, including multimodal and digital genres. Assessment would align with instructional goals, evaluating not only comprehension outcomes but also strategy use, reading fluency, vocabulary growth, and the quality of collaborative and individual reading responses. The consistency of this integrated model with the findings of Nuri and Ismayilli (2025) on student motivation is noteworthy: each of the approaches reviewed demonstrates that reading engagement and motivation are not preconditions for instructional effectiveness but outcomes of it — produced by instruction that challenges learners appropriately, provides adequate support, and makes the reading experience meaningful and successful.

6. Discussion

The synthesis of evidence reviewed in this article makes a compelling case for the pedagogical superiority of innovative, strategy-focused, extensive, and collaborative reading instruction over the comprehension-questions paradigm that continues to dominate many EFL classrooms. The evidence base is particularly strong for reciprocal teaching and metacognitive strategy instruction, whose documented effects on reading comprehension are among the largest in the educational intervention research literature. The evidence for extensive reading is equally compelling, though its implementation demands — particularly the requirement for access to large libraries of graded reading material — may present challenges in resource-constrained contexts.

A critical issue that emerges from the synthesis concerns the relationship between innovative teaching practices and teacher professional development. The effective implementation of reciprocal teaching, genre-based instruction, and collaborative reading frameworks requires substantial teacher knowledge — of reading theory, of specific strategy instruction techniques, of text-structure linguistics, and of collaborative learning facilitation. Research consistently demonstrates that the effectiveness of instructional innovations is heavily dependent on the quality of teacher implementation, and that high-quality implementation requires both initial training and sustained professional support (Grabe & Stoller, 2011). This has important implications for educational policy: investment in innovative reading curricula without parallel investment in teacher professional development is unlikely to produce significant improvements in learner outcomes.

The challenge of transfer — ensuring that strategies and skills developed through explicit instruction are applied independently in genuine reading encounters — is a further issue that the existing research has not fully resolved. Metacognitive strategy instruction research suggests that transfer is more likely when strategy instruction is embedded within authentic reading tasks, when learners are explicitly taught to monitor and regulate their own strategy use, and when instruction extends over sufficient time to allow strategies to become automatic (Pressley, 2002). These conditions require instructional coherence and longitudinal commitment that may be difficult to sustain within the fragmented, examination-driven curriculum structures that characterize many EFL educational contexts.

7. Conclusion

This article has reviewed and synthesized the evidence base for five principal innovative approaches to EFL reading proficiency development: reciprocal teaching and metacognitive strategy instruction, extensive reading, multimodal and technology-enhanced environments, genre-based and text-structure instruction, and collaborative reading frameworks. The evidence establishes that each approach, when implemented with fidelity and within a coherent pedagogical framework, produces documented gains in reading comprehension, vocabulary knowledge, reading fluency, and strategic reading behavior that substantially exceed those produced by traditional comprehension-questions instruction.

The integrated pedagogical model proposed in this article — combining pre-reading schema activation, during-reading strategy instruction and collaborative comprehension, post-reading consolidation and critical response, and extensive reading for fluency development — represents the most complete current framework for reading proficiency development available in the EFL research literature. Its implementation requires investment in teacher professional development, access to diverse reading materials including graded readers and digital texts, and curricular structures that allocate adequate time to both intensive and extensive reading. Future research should investigate the specific implementation conditions that maximize the effectiveness of each approach across different EFL learner populations, proficiency levels, and institutional contexts, with particular attention to the challenges and opportunities presented by the Azerbaijani and Central Asian educational environments in which approaches of this kind remain underresearched.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: N.I.; Methodology: N.I.; Investigation: N.I.; Writing – original draft: N.I.; Writing – review & editing: N.I.

References

Alderson, J. C. (2000). Assessing reading. Cambridge University Press.

Anderson, R. C., & Pearson, P. D. (1984). A schema-theoretic view of basic processes in reading. In P. D. Pearson (Ed.), Handbook of reading research (pp. 255–291). Longman.

Babasoy, Y. B., Zeynalova, K., Sadigova, N. E., & Ismayilli, T. M. (2025). Carácter semántico funcional de la afirmación en inglés en el aspecto de la lingüística cognitiva . *Universidad Y Sociedad*, *17*(3), e5214. Recuperado a partir de https://rus.ucf.edu.cu/index.php/rus/article/view/5214

Baker, L., & Brown, A. L. (1984). Metacognitive skills and reading. In P. D. Pearson (Ed.), Handbook of reading research (pp. 353–394). Longman.

Bartlett, F. C. (1932). Remembering: A study in experimental and social psychology. Cambridge University Press.

Chamot, A. U., & O'Malley, J. M. (1994). The CALLA handbook: Implementing the cognitive academic language learning approach. Addison-Wesley.

Chang, K.-E. (2010). Effects of using graphic organizers on EFL high school students' reading comprehension. Reading Improvement, 47(2), 117–132.

Day, R. R., & Bamford, J. (1998). Extensive reading in the second language classroom. Cambridge University Press.

Elley, W. B., & Mangubhai, F. (1983). The impact of reading on second language learning. Reading Research Quarterly, 19(1), 53–67. https://doi.org/10.2307/747337

Gough, P. B., & Tunmer, W. E. (1986). Decoding, reading, and reading disability. Remedial and Special Education, 7(1), 6–10. https://doi.org/10.1177/074193258600700104

Grabe, W. (2009). Reading in a second language: Moving from theory to practice. Cambridge University Press.

Grabe, W., & Stoller, F. L. (2011). Teaching and researching reading (2nd ed.). Longman.

Hoover, W. A., & Gough, P. B. (1990). The simple view of reading. Reading and Writing, 2(2), 127–160. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00401799

Hulstijn, J. H., Hollander, M., & Greidanus, T. (1996). Incidental vocabulary learning by advanced foreign language students: The influence of marginal glosses, dictionary use, and reoccurrence of unknown words. The Modern Language Journal, 80(3), 327–339. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-4781.1996.tb01614.x

Kern, R. (2000). Literacy and language teaching. Oxford University Press.

Klinger, J. K., & Vaughn, S. (1998). Using Collaborative Strategic Reading. Teaching Exceptional Children, 30(6), 32–37. https://doi.org/10.1177/004005999803000607

Krashen, S. D. (1985). The input hypothesis: Issues and implications. Longman.

Mason, B., & Krashen, S. D. (1997). Extensive reading in English as a foreign language. System, 25(1), 91–102. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0346-251X(96)00063-2

Meyer, B. J. F., & Freedle, R. O. (1984). Effects of discourse type on recall. American Educational Research Journal, 21(1), 121–143. https://doi.org/10.3102/00028312021001121

Nation, I. S. P. (2001). Learning vocabulary in another language. Cambridge University Press.

Nation, I. S. P. (2009). Teaching ESL/EFL reading and writing. Routledge.

Nation, I. S. P., & Wang, K. (1999). Graded readers and vocabulary. Reading in a Foreign Language, 12(2), 355–380.

Nation, I. S. P., & Waring, R. (2020). Teaching extensive reading in another language. Routledge.

Nuri, A., & Ismayilli, T. (2025). The importance of student motivation. Science, Education and Innovations in the Context of Modern Problems, 8(6), 260–262.

O'Keeffe, A., McCarthy, M., & Carter, R. (2007). From corpus to classroom: Language use and language teaching. Cambridge University Press.

Palincsar, A. S., & Brown, A. L. (1984). Reciprocal teaching of comprehension-fostering and comprehension-monitoring activities. Cognition and Instruction, 1(2), 117–175. https://doi.org/10.1207/s1532690xci0102_1

Pressley, M. (2002). Reading instruction that works: The case for balanced teaching (2nd ed.). Guilford Press.

Rosenblatt, L. M. (1978). The reader, the text, the poem: The transactional theory of the literary work. Southern Illinois University Press.

Rosenshine, B., & Meister, C. (1994). Reciprocal teaching: A review of the research. Review of Educational Research, 64(4), 479–530. https://doi.org/10.3102/00346543064004479

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Williams, J. P. (2005). Instruction in reading comprehension for primary-grade students: A focus on text structure. Journal of Special Education, 39(1), 6–18. https://doi.org/10.1177/00224669050390010201

Zhang, L. J. (2010). A dynamic metacognitive systems account of Chinese university students' knowledge about EFL reading. TESOL Quarterly, 44(2), 320–353. https://doi.org/10.5054/tq.2010.223352

Received: 25 March 2026
Accepted: 5 May 2026
Published: 8 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Between Algorithm and Artistry: A Comparative Analysis of AI Translation Tools and Human Translators

[1] Yasin Babazade
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602026

Abstract. *The rapid advancement of neural machine translation (NMT) and large language model-based translation tools has intensified scholarly and professional debate about the comparative capabilities of artificial intelligence and human translators across a range of translation domains. This article provides a systematic comparative analysis of AI translation tools and human translators across five critical dimensions: linguistic accuracy and fluency, cultural competence and pragmatic appropriateness, handling of specialized and domain-specific discourse, treatment of ambiguity and contextual inference, and ethical and professional responsibility. Drawing on translation theory, cognitive linguistics, and recent empirical studies of AI translation quality, the analysis demonstrates that while contemporary AI translation systems have achieved remarkable fluency and near-human accuracy in literal, domain-stable, and high-resource language pair contexts, they remain systematically deficient in cultural mediation, pragmatic competence, creative adaptation, and the ethical judgment that responsible translation demands. The article argues that the most productive framing of the AI-human translator relationship is not competitive substitution but complementary integration: a model in which AI tools augment human translator productivity and consistency while human expertise addresses the communicative, cultural, and ethical dimensions that AI cannot reliably manage. Implications for translator training, the professional translation market, and the ethics of AI-mediated communication are discussed.*

Keywords: *neural machine translation, human translation, AI translation tools, translation quality, cultural competence, post-editing, translator training, translation ethics*

1. Introduction

Translation is among the oldest and most intellectually demanding of human communicative practices. It requires not merely the transfer of lexical and syntactic structures from one language to another but the reconstruction of meaning across cultural, pragmatic, and aesthetic dimensions that resist mechanical equivalence — a process that has been theorized, since at least the time of Cicero's distinction between verbum pro verbo and sensum exprimere de sensu, as an irreducibly interpretive act (Robinson, 1997). The emergence of machine translation as a technological possibility in the mid-twentieth century, and its transformation through neural network

[1] Babazade, Y. Nakhchivan State University. Email: babazade_yasin@nedu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3727-3622

architectures into systems of remarkable fluency in the early twenty-first century, has therefore constituted not merely a technological development but a fundamental challenge to the theoretical understanding of what translation is and what competencies it requires.

Contemporary neural machine translation (NMT) systems — led by DeepL, Google Translate, and large language model-based tools such as ChatGPT and Claude — have achieved translation quality that is, in many narrow linguistic and statistical terms, indistinguishable from human translation output. Automatic quality evaluation metrics such as BLEU, METEOR, and ChrF, and even some human rater evaluations for high-resource language pairs and domain-stable text types, have reported NMT performance at or near human parity (Bahdanau, Cho, & Bengio, 2015; Vaswani et al., 2017). These achievements have generated substantial public and professional anxiety about the future of human translators as a professional class — anxiety reflected in surveys showing that a majority of professional translators expect significant market contraction within the next decade (Common Sense Advisory, 2023).

This article argues that the framework of competitive substitution — which asks whether AI can replace human translators — is theoretically impoverished and practically counterproductive. The relevant question is not whether AI can produce outputs that pass surface-level quality evaluations in favorable conditions, but whether AI translation tools can perform the full range of communicative, cultural, and ethical functions that translation serves across the diversity of real-world translation contexts. A systematic examination of this question across five critical dimensions — linguistic accuracy and fluency, cultural competence, handling of specialized discourse, management of ambiguity and contextual inference, and ethical and professional responsibility — reveals a profile of AI translation capability that is at once more impressive and more limited than both enthusiastic advocates and alarmed critics have acknowledged. The most defensible conclusion is that AI and human translation competencies are complementary rather than substitutable, and that the most productive professional model for the foreseeable future is human-AI collaboration — specifically the machine translation post-editing (MTPE) model — in which the respective strengths of both are systematically deployed.

2. Theoretical Framework

The comparative analysis conducted in this article is grounded in three intersecting theoretical traditions. The first is translation studies, particularly the functionalist and skopos-oriented approaches developed by Reiss and Vermeer (1984) and Nord (1997), which emphasize that translation adequacy must be evaluated relative to the communicative purpose (skopos) of the target text and the needs of its intended audience rather than against an abstract standard of source-text fidelity. This framework is particularly relevant to the AI-human comparison because it directs attention away from surface-level linguistic accuracy — the dimension in which AI performs best — toward the communicative and functional appropriateness of translated texts, which requires the kind of audience awareness, cultural knowledge, and pragmatic judgment that current AI systems handle less reliably (Nida, 1964).

The second tradition is cognitive translation studies, which investigates the mental processes involved in human translation and their relationship to translation quality. Göpferich's (2009) translatorial competence model identifies six component competencies of the expert human translator: language competence, textual competence, subject competence, cultural competence, research competence, and transfer competence — the integrative capacity to deploy all of the above in the service of the translation task. This multi-component model provides an analytical framework for identifying which competencies AI translation systems have developed to a high level and which remain underdeveloped, enabling a more granular and theoretically principled comparison than global quality ratings permit.

The third tradition is computational linguistics and natural language processing research on neural machine translation, which provides the technical understanding necessary for an accurate account of how NMT systems work, what types of errors they characteristically produce, and what kinds of linguistic and contextual information they are and are not capable of utilizing. The attention-based transformer architecture that underlies contemporary NMT systems (Vaswani et al., 2017) enables the modeling of long-range dependencies in source texts with unprecedented effectiveness, explaining the dramatic improvements in fluency and grammatical accuracy that current systems display relative to earlier phrase-based and statistical approaches. But the same architecture has characteristic limitations — particularly in handling pragmatic inference, culturally specific reference, and the disambiguation of utterances whose interpretation depends on extra-linguistic contextual knowledge — that are directly relevant to the comparative analysis (Hassan et al., 2018).

3. Methodology

This study employs a qualitative-analytical methodology combining systematic literature review, comparative theoretical analysis, and evaluation of published empirical studies of AI translation quality. The literature review encompassed peer-reviewed research in translation studies, computational linguistics, and applied linguistics published between 2015 and 2025, identified through Scopus and Web of Science. Empirical studies assessing NMT quality across multiple dimensions and domains were analyzed comparatively to identify consistent patterns in AI translation strengths and limitations. The comparative analysis is organized around five critical dimensions derived from the translatorial competence model of Göpferich (2009) and the functional translation framework of Nord (1997), enabling systematic cross-dimensional comparison across AI and human translation performance.

4. Comparative Analysis

4.1 Linguistic Accuracy and Fluency

Contemporary NMT systems have achieved their most striking advances in the dimension of surface linguistic quality — the grammatical correctness, lexical appropriateness, and overall fluency of the translated text evaluated independently of its communicative adequacy in context. Comparative studies using both automatic metrics and human rater evaluations have consistently shown that leading NMT systems approach or achieve human-level performance on these surface dimensions for high-resource language pairs — those with large quantities of parallel training data available — and for domain-stable text types such as weather forecasts, sports results, and standardized technical documentation (Hassan et al., 2018). The transformer architecture's ability to model long-range syntactic dependencies enables NMT to handle complex sentence structures more effectively than earlier statistical approaches, and the scale of training data available to leading systems gives them access to a vast range of lexical collocations and syntactic patterns.

However, several categories of linguistic error remain characteristic of NMT output even at the frontier of current performance. Pronoun resolution errors — in which the system fails to correctly identify the referent of a pronoun — are particularly frequent in languages where grammatical gender must be tracked across sentence boundaries, and in contexts where pragmatic knowledge about the discourse participants is necessary for accurate reference resolution. Hallucination — the generation of plausible-sounding but factually inaccurate content — represents a fundamental architectural limitation of large language model-based translation that has no direct equivalent in human translation error. And the systematic underperformance of NMT on low-resource language pairs — those with limited parallel training data, including many Central Asian, Caucasian, and African languages — creates a form of translation quality inequality that disproportionately affects speakers of languages underrepresented in digital data (Babayev & Alaviyya, 2023).

4.2 Cultural Competence and Pragmatic Appropriateness

Cultural competence — the capacity to recognize culturally specific references, conventions, and values in the source text and to manage their transfer into the target cultural context in ways that achieve the intended communicative effect — is among the dimensions of translation in which the gap between human and AI performance is most pronounced and most consequential. Human translators bring to their work an internalized understanding of the cultural systems of both source and target communities: knowledge of social norms, institutional conventions, historical memory, religious and ideological frameworks, humor conventions, and the symbolic resonances of culturally significant objects, practices, and events (Nida, 1964; Nord, 1997). This cultural knowledge is not merely a supplement to linguistic competence but an essential component of the interpretive capacity through which translation meaning is constructed.

NMT systems lack genuine cultural knowledge in this sense. They possess statistical regularities extracted from large corpora of translated texts, which provides them with a form of implicit cultural modeling that enables reasonable handling of many common cultural references —

particularly those that are frequently translated and well-represented in training data. But this implicit modeling breaks down systematically in the face of culturally specific humor, idiomatic expressions whose pragmatic force is highly culture-dependent, indirect speech acts whose interpretation requires knowledge of social hierarchies and politeness conventions, and culturally marked references whose significance depends on historical or local knowledge unavailable in the training corpus. Research on AI translation of culturonyms — terms encoding culturally specific concepts without direct equivalents in the target language — has confirmed that NMT systems consistently handle such terms less appropriately than experienced human translators, often opting for literal glosses that preserve surface form at the expense of communicative function (Sadikhova & Babayev, 2025).

4.3 Specialized and Domain-Specific Discourse

The handling of specialized, domain-specific discourse — legal, medical, technical, financial, and scientific text — presents a complex picture in which AI and human translation competencies interact differently across different specializations and different types of translation challenge. For domains with large amounts of parallel training data and relatively standardized terminology — particularly scientific and technical documentation in English and other major European languages — contemporary NMT systems achieve high accuracy and are widely used in professional workflows, typically in combination with human post-editing. The European Patent Office, the European Commission, and major pharmaceutical companies have all adopted NMT-assisted translation workflows for high-volume domain-stable text, with demonstrated productivity gains (Common Sense Advisory, 2023).

However, specialized discourse presents distinctive challenges for AI translation that extend beyond terminology accuracy. Legal translation, for example, requires not only accurate rendering of technical terms but understanding of the legal systems of both source and target jurisdictions, awareness of the precise legal implications of terminological choices, and judgment about how to handle cases where source and target legal systems do not have structurally equivalent concepts or institutions. Medical translation similarly requires not only accurate terminology but understanding of the clinical contexts in which translated texts will be used, sensitivity to the potentially life-critical consequences of mistranslation, and awareness of the different medical conventions and institutional contexts of source and target cultures. These dimensions of specialized translation require the kind of expert domain knowledge and professional judgment that current AI systems cannot reliably provide (Göpferich, 2009).

4.4 Ambiguity, Contextual Inference, and Creative Translation

Natural language is pervasively ambiguous, and effective translation requires the capacity to identify, resolve, and appropriately render the full range of lexical, syntactic, pragmatic, and referential ambiguities that source texts contain. Human translators draw on a rich repertoire of contextual inference strategies — including knowledge of the author's intentions and style, the genre conventions of the source text, the discourse context in which the ambiguous expression occurs, and the communicative needs of the target audience — to select the contextually appropriate interpretation of ambiguous source expressions. NMT systems, by contrast, resolve ambiguity statistically, selecting the translation option that is most frequent in training data for the relevant source expression, without access to the contextual knowledge that would be required for reliable pragmatic disambiguation (Bahdanau, Cho, & Bengio, 2015).

Literary and creative translation presents the most demanding test of this comparative dimension. Creative translation — the translation of poetry, fiction, advertising copy, humor, and other texts whose communicative value depends on aesthetic and rhetorical dimensions as well as propositional content — requires creative interpretive and generative competencies that go well beyond the accurate rendering of source-text meaning. The translator of literary texts must make complex aesthetic judgments about how to balance fidelity to the source text's formal and stylistic properties against the need to create a text that achieves comparable aesthetic effects in the target language and cultural context — judgments that current AI systems are not equipped to make with the consistency and cultural sensitivity that literary translation demands (Chesterman, 2016).

4.5 Ethical and Professional Responsibility

Translation involves ethical responsibilities that extend beyond the production of linguistically accurate target texts. Professional translators are accountable for the consequences of their translation decisions — in legal, medical, and political contexts, translation errors can have severe consequences for individuals and communities — and they are expected to exercise professional judgment about when to query clients, when to refuse commissions that would require them to produce harmful or misleading translations, and how to handle situations in which source and target cultural conventions create genuine ethical conflicts. These dimensions of professional responsibility require moral agency and ethical reasoning that AI systems, as currently constituted, cannot exercise.

The question of translation ethics becomes particularly acute in the context of AI-generated translation deployed without human oversight. When an AI translation system produces an inaccurate medical translation that leads to a misdiagnosis, or a legally inaccurate contract translation that creates commercial liability, or a politically sensitive translation that misrepresents a public figure's statements, the question of accountability is genuinely unresolved: the AI system cannot be held responsible, and the human actors in the translation workflow — the client who commissioned the translation, the developer who deployed the AI system — may not have the linguistic competence to identify the error. This accountability gap represents a fundamental ethical limitation of AI-only translation workflows that has no equivalent in human professional translation practice (Pym, 2012).

5. The MTPE Model: Human-AI Complementarity in Practice

Machine translation post-editing (MTPE) — the workflow in which a human translator reviews, corrects, and adapts NMT-generated output rather than translating from scratch — has emerged as the dominant professional translation model for high-volume, time-sensitive, and cost-sensitive translation contexts (Koponen, 2016). The MTPE model operationalizes the complementarity thesis: it deploys AI capabilities for the dimensions of translation in which they excel — generating fluent, grammatically acceptable draft translations rapidly and at scale — while preserving human translator competence for the dimensions in which AI is deficient — cultural mediation, pragmatic disambiguation, creative adaptation, and ethical judgment.

Research on MTPE productivity and quality has produced broadly positive findings. Koponen's (2016) meta-analysis of MTPE studies found that MTPE consistently achieves higher productivity than from-scratch human translation — translators can post-edit an NMT draft in roughly 60–70% of the time required to produce an equivalent human translation — without significant loss of final quality when post-editing is conducted by competent professional translators. However, the same research identifies important nuances: MTPE productivity gains are most pronounced for domain-stable, high-resource language pairs and are substantially smaller or even negative for domains where NMT quality is lower, where the cognitive demand of error identification exceeds the cognitive demand of original translation, and where post-editors underestimate error frequency and produce lower-quality output than they would through from-scratch translation (Koponen, 2016). The critical implication is that effective MTPE requires specialized training — both in recognizing characteristic AI error types and in calibrating post-editing effort appropriately — that professional translator education programs are only beginning to provide systematically (Babazade, 2024).

6. Implications for Translator Training and the Profession

The comparative analysis and the MTPE evidence together have significant implications for the preparation of future translators and for the evolution of the translation profession. The most immediate implication is that translator training must integrate AI literacy as a core component of professional preparation — not merely familiarizing students with the technical features of leading NMT tools but developing their capacity to evaluate AI translation output critically, to identify the characteristic error types and quality variations associated with different AI systems and text types, and to calibrate their post-editing strategies efficiently and appropriately. Research by Babazade and Alaviyya (2023) on the challenges of machine translation for culturally and linguistically specific terminology further underscores the importance of developing strong cultural and domain expertise as the foundation of post-editing competence.

At the same time, translator training must resist the temptation to reduce professional preparation to post-editing efficiency. The dimensions of translation competence that AI cannot replace — cultural mediation, creative adaptation, pragmatic judgment, ethical responsibility, client relationship management — remain the core of what distinguishes expert professional translators from competent post-editors, and they are precisely the competencies that add the most value in high-stakes, specialized, and creative translation contexts. A translator education that produces technically proficient post-editors without developing the full repertoire of translatorial competence (Göpferich, 2009) risks producing professionals who are effective in current high-volume commodity translation markets but poorly equipped for the specialized, high-value translation work that is least susceptible to AI displacement.

7. Conclusion

This article has argued, through systematic comparative analysis across five critical dimensions of translation performance, that the relationship between AI translation tools and human translators is most accurately characterized as complementary rather than competitive. Contemporary NMT systems have achieved remarkable fluency and near-human accuracy in surface linguistic dimensions for favorable language pairs and domain-stable text types, and they offer genuine productivity and cost advantages in high-volume, time-sensitive translation workflows. But they remain systematically deficient in cultural competence, pragmatic appropriateness, creative adaptation, handling of ambiguity in culturally specific contexts, and the ethical and professional judgment that responsible translation in high-stakes domains requires. These deficiencies are not merely technical limitations awaiting engineering solutions but reflect fundamental differences between the statistical pattern-matching processes that underlie NMT and the interpretive, culturally grounded, and ethically engaged cognitive processes that expert human translation involves.

The most productive response to the AI translation revolution is neither the panic of displacement nor the complacency of dismissal but the intellectually rigorous analysis of what AI can and cannot do — analysis that informs both the design of effective human-AI collaborative workflows and the evolution of translator training toward a model that develops the full spectrum of translatorial competencies while integrating AI literacy as a core professional skill. The algorithm can generate fluency; the artistry remains human.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: Y.B.; Methodology: Y.B.; Investigation: Y.B.; Writing – original draft: Y.B.; Writing – review & editing: Y.B.

References

Babayev, J. S., & Alaviyya, N. (2023). Translation procedures of culture-bound terms (CBTs). Journal of Science (Lyon), 48.

Babazade, Y. (2024). Transforming science education: The impact of active learning on student engagement and achievement. Excellencia: International Multi-disciplinary Journal of Education, 2(4), 506–514.

Bahdanau, D., Cho, K., & Bengio, Y. (2015). Neural machine translation by jointly learning to align and translate. In Proceedings of the 3rd International Conference on Learning Representations (ICLR 2015). https://arxiv.org/abs/1409.0473

Chesterman, A. (2016). Memes of translation: The spread of ideas in translation theory (2nd ed.). John Benjamins. https://doi.org/10.1075/btl.123

Common Sense Advisory. (2023). The language services market: Annual report. Common Sense Advisory.

Göpferich, S. (2009). Towards a model of translation competence and its acquisition: The longitudinal study TransComp. In S. Göpferich, A. L. Jakobsen, & I. M. Mees (Eds.), Behind the mind: Methods, models and results in translation process research (pp. 11–37). Samfundslitteratur.

Hassan, H., Aue, A., Chen, C., Chowdhary, V., Clark, J., Federmann, C., … Zhou, M. (2018). Achieving human parity on automatic Chinese to English news translation. arXiv. https://arxiv.org/abs/1803.05567

Koponen, M. (2016). Is machine translation post-editing worth the effort? A survey of research into post-editing and effort. Journal of Specialised Translation, 25, 131–148.

Nida, E. A. (1964). Toward a science of translating. Brill.

Nord, C. (1997). Translating as a purposeful activity: Functionalist approaches explained. St. Jerome.

Nuri, A., Ismayil, Z., Babayeva, M., Guliyev, A., Rzayeva, F., Shiraliyeva, G., & Jahangirli, T. (2025). Artistic expressions as vehicles of cultural memory. Journal of Ethnic and Cultural Studies, 12(5), 258–275.

Pym, A. (2012). On Machiavelli and the ethics of translators and translation companies. In C. Millán & F. Bartrina (Eds.), The Routledge handbook of translation studies (pp. 243–254). Routledge.

Reiss, K., & Vermeer, H. J. (1984). Grundlegung einer allgemeinen Translationstheorie. Niemeyer.

Robinson, D. (1997). Western translation theory from Herodotus to Nietzsche. St. Jerome.

Sadigzade, Z. (2025). AI-Powered Feedback in ESL Writing Classes: Pedagogical Opportunities and Ethical Concerns. *Journal of Azerbaijan Language and Education Studies*, *2*(4), 5-17. https://doi.org/10.69760/jales.2025004000

Sadikhova, S., & Babayev, J. (2025). Challenges encountered in translation of culture-bound and subject-specific terminology while using Google Translate. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 2(3), 119–126.

Sadiqzade, Z. (2025). Idiomatic Expressions and Their Impact on Lexical Competence. *Journal of Azerbaijan Language and Education Studies*, *2*(1), 26-33. https://doi.org/10.69760/jales.2025001002

Vaswani, A., Shazeer, N., Parmar, N., Uszkoreit, J., Jones, L., Gomez, A. N., … Polosukhin, I. (2017). Attention is all you need. In Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems, 30. https://arxiv.org/abs/1706.03762

Received: 2 April 2026
Accepted: 5 May 2026
Published: 8 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Gamified Digital Environments to Foster Motivation in Advanced English Grammar Learning

[1] **Sema Mehdi**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602027

Abstract. *This theoretical article examines how gamified digital environments can foster motivation and engagement in advanced English as a Foreign Language (EFL) grammar learning at the university level. Drawing on Self-Determination Theory (SDT), Flow Theory, and Second Language Acquisition (SLA) frameworks, the study analyzes how game-based strategies enhance both intrinsic and extrinsic motivation in the mastery of complex grammatical structures. Core gamification elements — points, badges, leaderboards, leveling systems, immediate feedback loops, and narrative progression — are examined for their roles in satisfying learners' psychological needs for autonomy, competence, and relatedness, as well as for their alignment with the challenge-skill balance identified by Flow Theory as the condition for optimal engagement. The analysis demonstrates that gamification has the potential to transform traditionally abstract and decontextualized grammar instruction into interactive, learner-centered experiences by embedding practice in meaningful, goal-oriented contexts. The article also critically addresses potential limitations including novelty-dependent engagement, risks of overemphasis on competitive rather than collaborative dynamics, and the conditions under which gamification produces shallow rather than deep learning. The article concludes by proposing pedagogically grounded principles for the strategic integration of gamified tools into advanced EFL grammar curricula, arguing that such integration, when theoretically informed and instructionally coherent, can sustain long-term engagement and foster deeper grammatical awareness.*

Keywords: *gamification, grammar instruction, learner motivation, digital learning, EFL, self-determination theory, flow theory, advanced grammar*

1. Introduction

In recent years, gamified digital learning environments have become increasingly prominent in English language teaching, particularly in promoting learner engagement and motivation. This pedagogical shift is especially significant for teaching advanced grammar — a traditionally challenging domain characterized by abstract rules, decontextualized drills, and frequently diminished learner interest. The integration of gamification, understood as the systematic

[1] Mehdi, S. Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: semamehdi222@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-8948-5074

application of game design elements in non-game educational contexts, offers a dynamic framework for reinvigorating grammar instruction, aligning with contemporary learners' digital fluency and evolving motivational profiles (Flores, 2015; Boudadi & Gutiérrez-Colón, 2020).

Motivation plays a critical and well-documented role in second language acquisition (SLA), and its absence has been consistently linked to decreased performance, reduced persistence, and premature disengagement from the learning process (Dörnyei, 2001; Gardner, 2010). Within this framework, Self-Determination Theory (SDT) provides a robust theoretical lens for understanding how gamified features may satisfy learners' psychological needs for autonomy, competence, and relatedness — the three basic psychological needs whose fulfillment, according to Deci and Ryan's foundational account, is necessary for the development and maintenance of intrinsic motivation (Niemiec & Ryan, 2009; Guay, 2022). Digital platforms incorporating elements such as choice-driven tasks, progression tracking, leaderboards, and narrative frameworks create environments where students can engage with grammar content in a more meaningful, personalized, and interactive manner (Shortt et al., 2023; Wulantari et al., 2023).

While the benefits of gamification in language learning have been widely discussed in the research literature, its specific application to advanced grammar instruction in EFL university settings remains comparatively underexplored. The majority of existing gamification studies in language education have focused on vocabulary acquisition and general communicative skills rather than on the grammatical accuracy and metalinguistic awareness that advanced learners need to develop. This article addresses this gap by theoretically examining how gamified digital environments can foster learner motivation and facilitate the mastery of complex grammatical structures. The analysis draws on SLA research, gamification studies, and motivational psychology to propose pedagogically grounded principles for grammar instruction in digitally mediated classrooms.

2. Theoretical Framework

2.1 Self-Determination Theory and Gamification

Understanding the intersection between gamification and advanced grammar instruction requires robust theoretical grounding across second language acquisition, motivation theory, and digital pedagogy. Self-Determination Theory (SDT), developed by Deci and Ryan, provides the central motivational framework for this analysis. According to SDT, three basic psychological needs — autonomy, competence, and relatedness — must be fulfilled to sustain intrinsic motivation and support deep, self-regulated learning (Niemiec & Ryan, 2009; Guay, 2022). In gamified digital environments, specific design elements map directly onto these needs: choice-driven tasks and branching scenarios support autonomy; progression tracking, leveling systems, and scaffolded challenge support the development of competence; and collaborative or competitive dynamics, social leaderboards, and community features address relatedness.

The theoretical significance of this mapping lies in its explanation of why well-designed gamification produces motivational effects beyond those achievable through conventional reward systems alone. When game mechanics satisfy underlying psychological needs rather than merely offering extrinsic incentives, they create conditions for what Deci and Ryan term autonomous motivation — internalized, self-directed engagement that is qualitatively superior to externally regulated compliance in its effects on persistence, depth of processing, and long-term retention (Niemiec & Ryan, 2009).

2.2 Flow Theory and Optimal Engagement

Complementing SDT, Csikszentmihalyi's Flow Theory (1990) provides an account of the conditions under which learners experience optimal engagement — the state of deep, effortless concentration known as flow. Flow occurs when the challenge level of a task is appropriately matched to the learner's current skill level: tasks that are too easy generate boredom, while tasks that are too difficult generate anxiety, and neither state is conducive to learning. Gamified learning environments, when well-designed, operationalize this principle through adaptive difficulty mechanisms that continuously calibrate task challenge to individual learner proficiency, creating the conditions for sustained flow states (Ishaq et al., 2021).

For advanced grammar instruction specifically, Flow Theory's challenge-skill balance principle is particularly relevant because advanced grammatical structures present a genuine cognitive challenge that typical motivational strategies fail to sustain. Learners who have achieved basic communicative competence in English often experience a motivational plateau with respect to grammatical accuracy, perceiving further grammatical refinement as less meaningful and rewarding than the communicative gains of earlier learning stages. Gamification addresses this plateau by recontextualizing grammatical accuracy within goal-oriented, competitively or narratively structured tasks where accuracy has instrumental consequences within the game environment (Reynolds & Kao, 2021).

2.3 SLA Frameworks and Affective Dimensions

Dörnyei's (2001) L2 motivation theory and Gardner's socio-educational model (2010) further illuminate the significance of integrative and instrumental motivations in language learning. These models emphasize that learners are more likely to persist in language study when they find personal relevance, emotional engagement, or clear utility in the learning process — outcomes that gamified systems can produce by embedding grammatical practice within narratives, challenges, and social interactions that carry personal meaning for learners. The concept of the affective filter, introduced by Krashen (1982), is equally relevant: learners whose anxiety levels are elevated acquire language less effectively, and gamified environments have been shown to reduce grammar-related anxiety by shifting the cognitive and emotional framing of grammatical practice from error avoidance to goal-oriented exploration (Gamlo, 2019; Reynolds & Kao, 2021).

3. Methodology

This article adopts a theoretical-analytical methodology grounded in a systematic review of the research literature on gamification in language learning and advanced grammar instruction. Sources were identified through searches of Scopus and Web of Science using the terms "gamification AND language learning", "gamification AND grammar instruction", "self-determination theory AND EFL", and "game-based learning AND second language acquisition". The theoretical analysis integrates findings from this review within the SDT, Flow Theory, and SLA frameworks described above, identifying both the empirical support for gamification's motivational effects and the conditions and limitations that qualify this support.

4. Gamification Elements and Their Pedagogical Functions

4.1 Core Game Mechanics and Motivational Alignment

Gamified learning environments deploy specific design elements that mirror those of digital games, each contributing distinctly to learner motivation and engagement. Points and badges provide immediate recognition and foster a sense of achievement by making progress visible and rewarding — a function that aligns with SDT's competence need (Flores, 2015; Shortt et al., 2023). Leaderboards introduce competitive social dynamics that can enhance extrinsic motivation, though their effects are context-dependent: leaderboards that expose low performers publicly without supportive scaffolding risk undermining rather than supporting motivation, particularly among learners with high grammar anxiety. Progress bars and leveling systems reinforce the sense of competence development by visually mapping the learner's trajectory through increasingly complex grammar tasks, making the gradual accumulation of grammatical knowledge tangible and rewarding (Wulantari et al., 2023).

Narrative and role-play elements offer qualitatively different motivational affordances by providing immersive contexts where learners interact with grammar in functionally rich, semantically meaningful scenarios rather than decontextualized drills (Lin et al., 2018). When learners must use the passive voice, conditional structures, or reported speech in order to complete a narrative challenge or achieve a goal within a game environment, the grammatical forms are encountered in conditions that approach those of authentic communicative use — conditions that SLA research identifies as more conducive to deep acquisition than those produced by mechanical form-focused practice (Bikowski, 2018; Richards & Reppen, 2014).

4.2 Alignment with Bloom's Taxonomy and Higher-Order Grammar Learning

A critical insight emerging from the literature is that the pedagogical effectiveness of gamification depends fundamentally on how well game mechanics are integrated with instructionally principled task design. Over-reliance on surface-level reward systems without meaningful linguistic challenge risks reducing grammar instruction to shallow performance on recognition-level tasks — addressing only the lower-order levels of Bloom's taxonomy (remembering and understanding) while leaving the higher-order processes of application, analysis, synthesis, and evaluation unaddressed. Effective gamified grammar instruction should therefore incorporate tasks that require learners not only to recognize and recall grammatical forms but to analyze syntactic patterns in authentic texts, construct grammatically complex utterances in context-specific scenarios, and evaluate the appropriateness of grammatical choices relative to communicative purpose (Ishaq et al., 2021).

When game mechanics are designed to scaffold cognitive effort progressively — introducing structural complexity gradually, providing contextual prompts and branching feedback loops, and rewarding qualitative improvement in grammatical precision rather than speed alone — they create conditions for the kind of deep grammatical processing that produces durable, transferable competence rather than transient performance. Gamified tools further offer distinctive formative assessment affordances: built-in feedback systems that identify patterns of repeated errors in real time provide both learners and instructors with diagnostic information that can guide instruction and direct learner attention to specific grammatical gaps (Ahmed et al., 2022).

5. Motivational Outcomes and Learner Engagement

The impact of gamification on learner motivation is multidimensional, simultaneously affecting intrinsic and extrinsic motivational processes in ways that interact with learner characteristics, task design, and instructional context. Research on gamified language learning platforms has consistently documented reduced language learning anxiety, increased willingness to engage with challenging grammatical content, and greater persistence in the face of difficulty when grammar instruction is delivered through adaptive, interactive gamified formats (Ahmed et al., 2022; Hung et al., 2015). These effects are theoretically explicable through SDT: when learners feel genuinely autonomous in their choices, experience concrete evidence of growing competence through visible progress indicators and skill-calibrated challenges, and perceive themselves as part of a social learning community through collaborative or competitive game dynamics, the conditions for sustained intrinsic motivation are established.

Several studies have specifically examined gamification's effects on grammar learning at the advanced level. Reynolds and Kao (2021) found that digital game-based grammar instruction produced superior accuracy gains on English article usage compared to both traditional teacher instruction and direct corrective feedback, attributing this advantage to the combination of immediate feedback, repeated exposure in varied contexts, and the motivational effects of the game format. Boudadi and Gutiérrez-Colón's (2020) systematic review of gamification in higher education language learning confirmed significant positive effects on motivation and engagement across multiple studies, while also identifying moderating variables including learner age, proficiency level, and the specific design quality of the gamified intervention.

At the same time, the research literature identifies important nuances and limitations. Novelty effects — the temporary motivational boost produced by any new instructional format — can inflate estimates of gamification's long-term effectiveness, and studies that track motivational outcomes over extended periods show more mixed results than those measuring immediate engagement (Boudadi & Gutiérrez-Colón, 2020). The motivational effects of competitive game mechanics are moderated by individual differences in competitiveness and social anxiety: learners who consistently occupy lower positions on public leaderboards may experience demotivation rather than the competitive spur that the design intends. And the distinction between engagement with the game itself and engagement with the grammatical content it is designed to develop — the risk of what might be termed ludic displacement — requires careful instructional management to ensure that motivational energy is channeled into linguistic learning rather than game-playing per se.

6. Challenges and Critical Considerations

A balanced account of gamification's potential in advanced EFL grammar instruction must engage substantively with the challenges and risks that the research literature has identified. The most fundamental of these is the risk of superficial engagement driven by extrinsic reward systems that fail to generate genuine grammatical processing. When learners orient primarily toward maximizing points or badges rather than attending to the grammatical form-meaning-use connections that the tasks are designed to teach, gamification produces behavioral engagement without cognitive engagement — a distinction that is critical for learning outcomes (Deterding et al., 2011). Instructional design that prioritizes deep grammatical engagement over surface reward-seeking requires careful alignment of game mechanics with linguistic learning objectives, regular redirection of learner attention to the grammatical dimensions of performance, and assessment practices that reward quality and accuracy rather than speed and frequency alone.

Collaborative versus competitive dynamics present a further design consideration. While competitive elements can enhance motivation for some learners, they risk undermining the collaborative learning relationships that sociocultural SLA theory identifies as particularly productive for grammatical development. Peer interaction, collaborative problem-solving, and co-construction of grammatical knowledge through dialogue are well-evidenced mechanisms of grammatical acquisition (Vygotsky, 1978) that purely competitive game structures may discourage. Effective gamified grammar environments should therefore integrate both competitive and collaborative elements, creating spaces for both individual challenge and collective meaning-making.

Finally, the effective implementation of gamified grammar instruction requires teacher competence in both game-based pedagogy and advanced grammar instruction — a combination of expertise that is not universally available in EFL university contexts. Teachers who lack confidence in grammatical analysis may be unable to design or select gamified tasks that target specific grammatical structures with appropriate precision; and teachers who lack experience with digital tools may implement gamified platforms in ways that underexploit their motivational and pedagogical affordances. Teacher professional development is therefore a necessary condition for realizing the potential of gamification in advanced grammar instruction.

7. Pedagogical Implications and Recommendations

The theoretical analysis and research synthesis presented in this article support several specific pedagogical recommendations for the integration of gamification into advanced EFL grammar curricula. First, gamified grammar tasks should be selected and designed on the basis of clearly specified grammatical learning objectives, ensuring that each game mechanic serves a defined instructional purpose and is aligned with target grammatical structures at the appropriate level of complexity. Grammar-focused games should provide repeated exposure to target forms in varied, functionally meaningful contexts, supporting the kind of distributed, elaborated practice that SLA research identifies as necessary for accurate and fluent grammatical use (Richards & Reppen, 2014).

Second, adaptive difficulty mechanisms should be used to calibrate task challenge to individual learner proficiency, creating the conditions for Flow Theory's optimal engagement zone and preventing both boredom through insufficient challenge and anxiety through excessive difficulty. Platforms that track individual error patterns and adjust task presentation accordingly — prioritizing structures where individual learners show persistent difficulties — are particularly valuable for advanced learners whose grammatical profiles are highly differentiated and whose learning needs are therefore difficult to address through uniform whole-class instruction.

Third, immediate, specific, and form-focused feedback should be an integral feature of gamified grammar platforms. Research consistently demonstrates that corrective feedback enhances grammatical accuracy when it is timely, specific, and presented in a manner that directs learner attention to the form-meaning-use connection rather than merely indicating error presence (Bikowski, 2018). Gamified platforms that provide this type of feedback within the flow of the game — rather than interrupting the activity to deliver pedagogical explanations — are more likely to maintain motivational engagement while supporting grammatical learning. Fourth and finally, gamification should be positioned as one component within a broader, integrative curriculum rather than as a standalone pedagogical approach. Its motivational effects are most durable when gamified practice is embedded within coherent instructional sequences that also include explicit grammar instruction, authentic communicative task performance, and reflective metalinguistic activity.

8. Conclusion

This article has examined the theoretical foundations and pedagogical implications of gamified digital environments for motivation and engagement in advanced EFL grammar learning. The analysis has demonstrated that gamification, when theoretically grounded in SDT and Flow Theory and instructionally aligned with sound SLA principles, offers genuine potential for addressing the motivational challenges that have historically characterized advanced grammar instruction. By satisfying learners' psychological needs for autonomy, competence, and relatedness while creating the conditions for optimal engagement through calibrated challenge, well-designed gamified grammar platforms can transform grammatical practice from an abstractly obligatory exercise into a meaningfully motivated pursuit.

At the same time, the analysis has identified important conditions and limitations that qualify gamification's effectiveness: the risk of superficial engagement, the moderating effects of competitive dynamics on learner wellbeing, the necessity of deep alignment between game mechanics and grammatical learning objectives, and the requirement for teacher professional development. The most defensible conclusion is that gamification's potential in advanced EFL grammar instruction is real but conditional — dependent on the quality of instructional design, the coherence of curricular integration, and the professional competence of the teachers who implement it. Future empirical research should examine gamification's longitudinal effects on grammatical accuracy and retention in university EFL contexts, investigate the differential responses of advanced learners with different motivational profiles and grammatical difficulty areas, and develop evidence-based design principles for gamified grammar platforms at the advanced proficiency level.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: S.M.; Methodology: S.M.; Investigation: S.M.; Writing – original draft: S.M.; Writing – review & editing: S.M.

References

Ahmed, M., Aslam, S., & Yousuf, M. I. (2022). A study of gamification in second language acquisition. Pakistan Languages and Humanities Review, 6(2), 323–333.

Anjomshoa, L., & Sadighi, F. (2015). The importance of motivation in second language acquisition. International Journal on Studies in English Language and Literature, 3(2), 126–137.

Azar, A. S., & Tanggaraju, D. (2020). Motivation in second language acquisition among learners in Malaysia. Studies in English Language and Education, 7(2), 323–333.

Bikowski, D. (2018). Technology for teaching grammar. In J. I. Liontas (Ed.), The TESOL encyclopedia of English language teaching. Wiley.

Boudadi, N. A., & Gutiérrez-Colón, M. (2020). Effect of gamification on students' motivation and learning achievement in second language acquisition within higher education: A literature review 2011–2019. The EuroCALL Review, 28(1), 57–69.

Csikszentmihalyi, M. (1990). Flow: The psychology of optimal experience. Harper & Row.

Deterding, S., Dixon, D., Khaled, R., & Nacke, L. (2011). From game design elements to gamefulness: Defining gamification. In Proceedings of the 15th International Academic MindTrek Conference (pp. 9–15). ACM. https://doi.org/10.1145/2181037.2181040

Dörnyei, Z. (2001). New themes and approaches in second language motivation research. Annual Review of Applied Linguistics, 21, 43–59. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0267190501000034

Flores, J. F. F. (2015). Using gamification to enhance second language learning. Digital Education Review, 27, 32–54.

Gamlo, N. (2019). The impact of mobile game-based language learning apps on EFL learners' motivation. English Language Teaching, 12(4), 49–56. https://doi.org/10.5539/elt.v12n4p49

Gardner, R. C. (2010). Motivation and second language acquisition: The socio-educational model. Peter Lang.

Guay, F. (2022). Applying self-determination theory to education: Regulations types, psychological needs, and autonomy supporting behaviors. Canadian Journal of School Psychology, 37(1), 75–92. https://doi.org/10.1177/08295735211044558

Hung, H. C., Young, S. S. C., & Lin, C. P. (2015). No student left behind: A collaborative and competitive game-based learning environment to reduce the achievement gap of EFL students in Taiwan. Technology, Pedagogy and Education, 24(1), 35–49. https://doi.org/10.1080/1475939X.2013.847359

Ishaq, K., Zin, N. A. M., Rosdi, F., Jehanghir, M., Ishaq, S., & Abid, A. (2021). Mobile-assisted and gamification-based language learning: A systematic literature review. PeerJ Computer Science, 7, e496. https://doi.org/10.7717/peerj-cs.496

Krashen, S. D. (1982). Principles and practice in second language acquisition. Pergamon Press.

Lin, C. J., Hwang, G. J., Fu, Q. K., & Chen, J. F. (2018). A flipped contextual game-based learning approach to enhancing EFL students' English business writing performance and reflective behaviors. Journal of Educational Technology & Society, 21(3), 117–131.

Niemiec, C. P., & Ryan, R. M. (2009). Autonomy, competence, and relatedness in the classroom: Applying self-determination theory to educational practice. Theory and Research in Education, 7(2), 133–144. https://doi.org/10.1177/1477878509104318

Reynolds, B. L., & Kao, C. W. (2021). The effects of digital game-based instruction, teacher instruction, and direct focused written corrective feedback on the grammatical accuracy of English articles. Computer Assisted Language Learning, 34(4), 462–482. https://doi.org/10.1080/09588221.2019.1648779

Richards, J. C., & Reppen, R. (2014). Towards a pedagogy of grammar instruction. RELC Journal, 45(1), 5–25. https://doi.org/10.1177/0033688214522622

Shortt, M., Tilak, S., Kuznetcova, I., Martens, B., & Akinkuolie, B. (2023). Gamification in mobile-assisted language learning: A systematic review of Duolingo literature from public release of 2012 to early 2020. Computer Assisted Language Learning, 36(3), 517–554. https://doi.org/10.1080/09588221.2021.1933540

Sun, H., Li, W., & Shen, B. (2017). Learning in physical education: A self-determination theory perspective. Journal of Teaching in Physical Education, 36(3), 277–291. https://doi.org/10.1123/jtpe.2017-0067

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Wulantari, N. P., Rachman, A., Sari, M. N., Uktolseja, L. J., & Rofi'i, A. (2023). The role of gamification in English language teaching: A literature review. Journal on Education, 6(1), 2847–2856.

Received: 11 April 2026
Accepted: 9 May 2026
Published: 11 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

The Irreplaceable Role of Human Doctors in the Age of Artificial Intelligence

[1] Günay Nağıyeva, [2] Harun Süleymanov
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602028

Abstract. *Artificial intelligence (AI) has emerged as one of the most transformative forces in contemporary healthcare, demonstrating remarkable capabilities in medical image analysis, diagnostic accuracy, predictive monitoring, and drug discovery. This article critically examines the central question of whether AI can fully replace human doctors, analyzing both the documented capabilities of AI systems and their persistent structural limitations. Drawing on recent empirical studies and theoretical frameworks from medical informatics and bioethics, the analysis identifies three principal domains of AI superiority — speed and data processing, pattern recognition in imaging, and predictive analytics — alongside three critical domains of irreplaceable human competence: emotional intelligence and the therapeutic relationship, ethical reasoning and accountability, and the clinical judgment required in complex and ambiguous cases. The article further presents evidence from a survey of 30 medical students, whose responses largely affirm the view that AI functions most productively as a supportive tool for physicians rather than a substitute for them. The role of English language proficiency as a prerequisite for engagement with AI-mediated global medical knowledge is additionally examined. The findings support a collaborative model of human-AI partnership in medicine, arguing that the future of healthcare lies not in technological substitution but in the complementary integration of computational precision and human compassion.*

Keywords: *artificial intelligence, medicine, human doctors, AI in healthcare, diagnostic AI, medical ethics, doctor-patient relationship, English for medical purposes*

1. Introduction

Over the past decade, artificial intelligence (AI) has transformed numerous sectors of human activity, but perhaps nowhere more profoundly or consequentially than in healthcare. Modern AI systems demonstrate an extraordinary capacity for analyzing large and complex datasets, detecting pathological patterns in medical imaging, predicting patient deterioration, and accelerating pharmaceutical research — capabilities that have led some commentators to suggest that AI may eventually supplant human doctors as the primary agents of diagnosis and treatment (Topol, 2019;

[1] Nağıyeva, G. Lecturer; Doctoral Student, Nakhchivan Teachers Institute, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: gunaynaghiyeva1995@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-2845-6741

[2] Süleymanov, H. First-Year Medical Student, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: harunsuleymanov7854@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0005-7901-074X

Maslej et al., 2024). This position, while superficially compelling, rests on a partial and reductive understanding of what medicine actually is and what doctors actually do.

Medicine is not reducible to data analysis and pattern recognition. It is a fundamentally human practice grounded in the therapeutic relationship between doctor and patient — a relationship built on trust, empathy, moral responsibility, and the kind of contextual, experiential judgment that cannot be replicated by algorithmic processes (Jørgensen et al., 2022). The question of whether AI can replace human doctors is therefore not primarily a technological question but a philosophical and ethical one: it concerns the nature of care, the requirements of trust, and the conditions under which medical decisions can be made accountably and justly.

This article addresses this question through a dual approach. First, it reviews the current state of AI capability in healthcare, identifying the domains in which AI systems have demonstrated documented advantages over unaided human performance and the domains in which fundamental limitations persist. Second, it presents primary survey evidence from a study of medical students' perceptions of AI in medicine, providing an empirical perspective from the healthcare professionals of the future. The article further examines the linguistic dimension of AI-mediated medical knowledge, noting the role of English language proficiency as a prerequisite for full engagement with global medical research and AI-assisted clinical tools. The central argument is that AI and human clinical expertise are not competitors but complementary partners, and that the future of medicine lies in their thoughtful, ethically informed integration.

2. Capabilities of AI in Healthcare

2.1 Data Processing and Diagnostic Speed

The most frequently cited advantage of AI in medical contexts is its capacity to process and analyze data at speeds and scales that far exceed human cognitive capacity. Research from Stanford HAI and McKinsey demonstrates that AI systems can analyze vast quantities of clinical data — laboratory results, imaging studies, electronic health records, and genomic data — in seconds, identifying patterns and correlations invisible to individual clinicians operating under time pressure and cognitive load (Singla et al., 2024; Maslej et al., 2024). This data-processing advantage has direct clinical relevance: it enables AI-assisted systems to function as a form of comprehensive second opinion, reducing the probability of diagnostic errors attributable to information overload or attentional fatigue.

Research published in Nature Medicine confirms that AI algorithms can detect early signs of serious conditions — including malignancies, fractures, and vascular anomalies — with accuracy rates that meet or exceed those of experienced specialist clinicians in controlled evaluation settings (Rajpurkar et al., 2022). Critically, unlike human clinicians, AI systems do not experience performance degradation associated with fatigue, emotional stress, or time pressure — a practically significant advantage in the high-volume, time-constrained environments of contemporary hospital medicine.

2.2 Medical Imaging and Pattern Recognition

AI has achieved its most impressive and clinically validated results in the domain of medical image analysis. Studies in radiology, pathology, dermatology, and ophthalmology have demonstrated AI performance at or near specialist human levels for specific diagnostic tasks, including the detection of diabetic retinopathy, skin cancer, pulmonary nodules, and breast cancer in mammography (Hosny et al., 2018). The deep learning architectures underpinning these systems are trained on millions of labeled images, enabling them to identify subtle morphological features and statistical patterns that may be imperceptible to human observers examining individual cases. Hosny et al. (2018) note that AI's capacity to analyze thousands of imaging studies simultaneously — processing visual information at a scale impossible for any individual radiologist — makes it a potentially transformative tool for population-level screening and early detection programs.

2.3 Drug Discovery and Predictive Analytics

Beyond diagnosis, AI has demonstrated significant potential in pharmaceutical research and predictive patient monitoring. Google DeepMind's AlphaFold system, which achieved landmark accuracy in protein structure prediction, has fundamentally accelerated the drug discovery pipeline by enabling researchers to predict molecular binding sites and protein conformations that previously required years of experimental investigation (Jumper et al., 2021). The practical implication is a compression of the drug development timeline that could bring life-saving treatments to patients substantially faster than conventional methods permit. In clinical monitoring, AI-driven systems integrated into hospital infrastructure can analyze continuous streams of physiological data — heart rate, blood pressure, oxygen saturation, and biochemical markers — to identify early warning signals of deterioration hours before clinical manifestation (Wong et al., 2019). This predictive capability gives medical teams the "golden time" needed to intervene proactively, potentially preventing deterioration to critical states that carry significantly higher mortality.

3. Limitations of AI in Healthcare

3.1 Emotional Intelligence and the Therapeutic Relationship

The most fundamental limitation of AI in medicine is its inability to engage in the human therapeutic relationship that is central to effective clinical care. The doctor-patient relationship is not merely an information exchange; it is a bond of trust, empathy, and mutual recognition that has been shown to have direct therapeutic effects independent of the technical interventions it facilitates (Jørgensen et al., 2022). Patients who trust their physicians are more likely to disclose relevant information, adhere to treatment recommendations, and report better health outcomes. This trust is grounded in the perception of the physician as a fellow human being who understands suffering, shares vulnerability, and exercises genuine moral concern for the patient's wellbeing — qualities that AI systems, however technically sophisticated, cannot authentically embody.

The communicative and interpretive dimensions of clinical consultation further illustrate this limitation. Skilled clinicians integrate verbal and non-verbal information — hesitation, affect, physical appearance, the patient's account of their experience — into a holistic clinical judgment that goes well beyond the information captured in structured data fields. AI systems trained on structured clinical data have no access to this rich interpretive layer, which is often diagnostically decisive in complex or atypical presentations (Miller et al., 2021).

3.2 Accountability, Ethics, and the Black Box Problem

The deployment of AI in high-stakes medical decision-making raises profound questions of accountability that remain unresolved. As Caicedo et al. (2020) demonstrate, errors in AI systems do not produce the isolated, individual mistakes characteristic of human clinical error; they produce systematic errors at scale — the same incorrect recommendation delivered simultaneously to potentially thousands of patients processed by the same flawed algorithm. This "mass error" risk has no direct human analogue and creates accountability structures that existing medical law and professional ethics frameworks are not equipped to address. When an AI-assisted diagnosis leads to patient harm, the question of who bears legal and ethical responsibility — the AI developer, the clinician who relied on the recommendation, or the institution that deployed the system — remains genuinely contested.

The transparency problem further compounds these concerns. Many high-performance AI systems operate as "black boxes" — producing outputs without providing interpretable explanations of the reasoning process that generated them (Shaban-Nejad et al., 2020). In a clinical context, this opacity is not merely technically inconvenient; it is ethically problematic. Medical ethics requires that treatment decisions be explicable to patients, justified by evidence, and subject to professional scrutiny. A recommendation that a clinician cannot explain, justify, or critically evaluate is incompatible with these requirements, regardless of its statistical accuracy in validation studies.

3.3 Algorithmic Bias and Health Equity

A further structural limitation of AI systems in healthcare concerns the risk of algorithmic bias — the systematic reproduction and amplification of inequalities embedded in training data. AI systems learn from historical clinical data that reflects the biases, omissions, and inequalities of the healthcare systems that generated it: data from wealthier patient populations, from healthcare systems serving predominantly majority ethnic groups, and from historical periods when diagnostic and treatment standards were different from current best practice. A system trained on such data will perform less accurately for patients whose characteristics are underrepresented in the training set, producing precisely the unequal treatment outcomes that contemporary medical ethics is committed to eliminating (Obermeyer et al., 2019). Addressing this limitation requires not merely technical fixes — algorithmic debiasing procedures, more representative training datasets — but a sustained commitment to health equity that extends beyond the technical domain to the institutional and political conditions of healthcare delivery.

4. Survey Evidence: Medical Students' Perceptions

To supplement the theoretical and empirical literature reviewed above, a small-scale survey was conducted among 30 medical students at Nakhchivan State University to examine current perceptions of AI's role in medicine among future healthcare professionals. Five questions were presented to participants, addressing trust in AI versus human doctors, AI's impact on medical errors, accountability for AI mistakes, the future role of doctors, and the core question of AI substitution.

On the question of trust, 60% of participants indicated greater trust in human doctors for medical decision-making, 40% expressed equal trust in both human and AI-assisted approaches, and only one participant indicated primary trust in AI systems alone. This distribution suggests that even among a digitally literate student population with generally positive attitudes toward technology, the perception of human doctors as the primary locus of trustworthy clinical judgment remains robust. On the question of AI's effect on medical errors, approximately 70% of participants held that AI partially reduces errors, while 13% expressed concern that AI may introduce new error risks — a nuanced response that reflects genuine engagement with the dual-edged character of AI deployment in medicine.

On accountability, a majority of participants held AI developer companies responsible for errors arising from AI systems — a position that reflects an intuitive but legally unresolved principle: that those who design and deploy powerful decision-support systems bear primary responsibility for their consequences. On the future role of doctors, the overwhelming majority of participants affirmed that human doctors will remain essential in future healthcare, irrespective of AI advancement. On the core substitution question, the majority answered in the negative, though a minority maintained that AI substitution was a genuine future possibility — a minority view that the present article's analysis does not support, but which reflects real uncertainty within the healthcare community about the trajectory of AI development.

5. The Role of English Language Proficiency

A dimension of AI's impact on healthcare that is particularly relevant to an English-language pedagogy journal concerns the linguistic prerequisites for engagement with AI-mediated medical knowledge. The global medical research literature, and virtually all leading AI-assisted clinical decision support tools, operate primarily in English. Medical professionals who lack strong English language proficiency are therefore structurally excluded from full engagement with the international evidence base that AI systems synthesize and deploy. This linguistic dimension of healthcare inequity is not often discussed in the AI in medicine literature but has direct practical consequences for clinicians practicing in non-anglophone contexts.

Naghiyeva (2024) addresses this issue directly in her analysis of listening skill development for medical English, arguing that listening comprehension — the ability to understand international medical lectures, research presentations, and clinical communications — constitutes a foundational competency for participation in the global medical knowledge community. For medical students in contexts such as Azerbaijan, where English is a foreign language and access to English-medium instruction may be limited, developing the English language proficiency necessary for confident engagement with AI-assisted diagnostic tools, international clinical literature, and global medical education is not merely an academic exercise but a professional necessity. The integration of English language instruction that is specifically oriented toward medical discourse and the communicative demands of AI-mediated clinical practice therefore represents an important curricular priority for medical education in non-anglophone settings.

6. Toward a Collaborative Model of Human-AI Medicine

The evidence reviewed in this article supports a model of human-AI collaboration in medicine rather than one of substitution. AI systems are most productively understood not as replacements for human clinicians but as powerful tools that augment specific dimensions of clinical capability — processing speed, pattern recognition at scale, predictive analytics, and pharmaceutical research acceleration — while human physicians provide the irreplaceable dimensions of care: the therapeutic relationship, ethical judgment, contextual clinical reasoning, and accountability. Miller et al. (2021) describe this collaborative model as one in which AI handles time-consuming routine tasks — paperwork, data analysis, preliminary screening — freeing physicians to invest more time and attention in the higher-order functions of clinical care that require human presence and judgment. Jørgensen et al. (2022) reinforce this perspective, finding that clinicians view AI as a sophisticated clinical instrument analogous to advanced imaging technology — a tool that enhances diagnostic capability without displacing the clinician's interpretive and relational role.

Tan et al. (2021) offer an important reframing of the debate: the relevant comparison for AI in medicine is not with doctors but with doctorlessness — the condition of populations in underserved and under-resourced healthcare settings where access to trained physicians is severely limited. In these contexts, AI-assisted diagnosis may provide genuinely life-saving screening and triage capability that would otherwise be unavailable, and the ethical question shifts from whether AI can replace doctors to how AI can extend the reach of healthcare to those currently excluded from it. This reframing does not diminish the importance of the limitations and risks analyzed in this article; it contextualizes them within a more nuanced and equitable ethical framework that takes seriously both the transformative potential and the irreplaceable human dimensions of medical care.

7. Conclusion

This article has examined the capabilities and limitations of AI in healthcare through theoretical analysis, empirical literature review, and primary survey evidence, arriving at a conclusion that the evidence strongly supports: artificial intelligence is a powerful and increasingly indispensable tool in modern medicine, but it cannot replace human doctors. The dimensions of medical practice that AI cannot replicate — the therapeutic relationship, emotional intelligence, ethical accountability, contextual clinical judgment, and the communicative dimensions of care — are not peripheral features of medicine that technology may eventually overcome; they are constitutive of what medicine fundamentally is.

The future of healthcare lies in the thoughtful, ethically informed integration of computational and human capabilities — a model in which AI's extraordinary data-processing and pattern-recognition strengths amplify the effectiveness of human clinical expertise, while human physicians provide the moral agency, relational presence, and contextual wisdom that algorithmic systems cannot supply. Realizing this future requires investment not only in AI technology but in the education of healthcare professionals who possess both the digital literacy to work effectively with AI tools and the humanistic formation to ensure that technology serves rather than supplants the human dimensions of care. It also requires sustained attention to the linguistic prerequisites for AI-mediated medical practice, ensuring that English language education for medical professionals keeps pace with the demands of an increasingly AI-mediated global healthcare environment.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: G.N., H.S.; Methodology: G.N., H.S.; Investigation: H.S.; Survey design & data collection: H.S.; Writing – original draft: H.S., G.N.; Writing – review & editing: G.N.

References

Brito, S. D. P. (2024). In the future, will artificial intelligence be able to replace doctors? Narrative review. Mexican Journal of Medical Research ICSa, 12(23).

Caicedo, J. C., Goodman, A., Karhohs, K. W., Cimini, B. A., & Carpenter, A. E. (2020). The risks of artificial intelligence in health care. The BMJ, 368, m689.

Hosny, A., Parmar, C., Quackenbush, J., Schwartz, L. H., & Aerts, H. J. (2018). Artificial intelligence in radiology. Nature Reviews Cancer, 18(8), 500–510. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41568-018-0016-5

Jørgensen, M. G., Kristensen, A. S., & Rasmussen, L. J. (2022). Augmenting, not replacing: Clinicians' perspectives on AI adoption in healthcare. npj Digital Medicine, 5, 105.

Jumper, J., Evans, R., Pritzel, A., et al. (2021). Highly accurate protein structure prediction with AlphaFold. Nature, 596(7873), 583–589. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-021-03819-2

Maslej, N., Fattorini, L., Perrault, R., Brynjolfsson, E., Etchemendy, J., & Clark, J. (2024). The AI Index 2024 annual report. Stanford Institute for Human-Centered AI (HAI), Stanford University.

Miller, S. M., Geis, J. R., & Prevedello, L. M. (2021). Artificial intelligence in healthcare: Complementing, not replacing, doctors. Radiology: Artificial Intelligence, 3(6), e210176. https://doi.org/10.1148/ryai.2021210176

Naghiyeva, G. (2024). Points to be considered when developing listening skill in teaching English. Nakhchivan Teachers Institute Scientific Journal.

Obermeyer, Z., Powers, B., Vogeli, C., & Mullainathan, S. (2019). Dissecting racial bias in an algorithm used to manage the health of populations. Science, 366(6464), 447–453. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aax2342

Rajpurkar, P., Chen, E., Banerjee, O., & Topol, E. J. (2022). AI in health and medicine. Nature Medicine, 28(1), 31–38. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41591-021-01614-0

Shaban-Nejad, A., Michalowski, M., & Buckeridge, D. L. (2020). Health intelligence: How artificial intelligence transforms population and personalized health. npj Digital Medicine, 3, 119. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41746-020-00342-6

Singla, A., Sukharevsky, A., Yee, L., Chui, M., & Hall, B. (2024). The state of AI in early 2024: Gen AI adoption spikes and starts to generate value. QuantumBlack, AI by McKinsey.

Tan, A. S. L., Chen, M. L., & Lee, S. K. (2021). Reframing the AI doctor debate: The comparison should not be with doctors but doctorlessness. The Lancet Digital Health, 3(9), e545–e546. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2589-7500(21)00167-9

Topol, E. J. (2019). High-performance medicine: The convergence of human and artificial intelligence. Nature Medicine, 25(1), 44–56. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41591-018-0300-7

Wong, A., Otles, E., Donnelly, J. P., et al. (2021). External validation of a widely implemented proprietary sepsis prediction model in hospitalized patients. JAMA Internal Medicine, 181(8), 1065–1070. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamainternmed.2021.2626

Received: 8 April 2026
Accepted: 9 May 2026
Published: 11 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Mapping Interlanguage through Error Analysis: A PEN Framework for Pedagogical Intervention in Rural ESL Contexts

[1] **Soumita Sarkar**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602029

Abstract. *Within contemporary English Language Teaching, narrowing the divide between learners' first language and the target language is essential for fostering communicative competence beyond rote grammatical instruction. This study quantitatively investigates persistent grammatical error patterns in the essays written by rural ESL learners in Gujarat, India and proposes the Productive Failure–Error Analysis–Noticing (PEN) framework as a conceptual pedagogical model emerging from empirical evidence. Grounded in Interlanguage Theory and Error Analysis, the study analyses a corpus of 423 descriptive essays produced by Class XII students from nine Jawahar Navodaya Vidyalayas in Gujarat, India, with a stratified sample of 127 essays examined in detail. Seventeen categories of morpho-syntactic and orthographic errors were identified, with spelling, articles, noun usage, and lexical choice structures emerging as the most frequent domains. Statistical analyses reveal significant variations across gender and academic streams, indicating patterned interlanguage development influenced by interlingual, intralingual, and overgeneralization factors. Findings are systematically mapped onto the PEN framework, establishing a clear connection between empirical analysis and pedagogical intervention. Building on these findings, the study synthesizes insights from errorful learning and productive failure, operationalized through Written Corrective Feedback, and culminates in Schmidt's Noticing Hypothesis as the key learning trigger. The resulting PEN framework offers a structured, feedback-driven model that reconceptualizes learner errors as productive resources for language development. The study contributes to SLA and ELT by advancing a theoretically integrated and pedagogically actionable model for rural ESL contexts.*

Keywords: *error analysis, errorful learning, interlanguage theory, JNV, noticing hypothesis, SLA, WCF*

1. Introduction

In the Indian context, the significance of English extends well beyond its historical or political origins, functioning as a key medium for intercultural communication, knowledge access, and participation in an increasingly globalized economy. Despite its widespread institutional presence, English remains a non-native language for the majority of learners, which makes the acquisition of its linguistic competencies — particularly grammar, vocabulary, and communicative proficiency — a persistent challenge for learners in rural ESL contexts.

[1] Sarkar, S. Department of English, Gujarat University, Ahmedabad – 380009, Gujarat, India. Email: sarkarsoumita806@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-5269-2537

Within contemporary language pedagogy, errors are no longer viewed as deficiencies but as inevitable and informative manifestations of the language learning process (Davies & Pearse, 2002; Hamouda, 2011). As emphasized in error analysis (EA), systematic examination of learner errors enables researchers and teachers to identify recurring patterns, underlying cognitive processes, and areas that require targeted pedagogical intervention (Lavery, 2001; Hamouda, 2011; Sarkar & Dave, 2024). In alignment with Interlanguage Theory, such errors are understood as evidence of a dynamic, evolving linguistic system rather than mere deviations from target norms.

However, while EA studies have extensively documented error patterns, there remains a limited integration of these insights into a structured pedagogical model that connects error generation, feedback, and cognitive processing, particularly in rural ESL settings. Existing approaches often treat error identification and correction as discrete processes, without fully theorizing their role in facilitating deeper language acquisition.

Addressing this gap, the present study proposes the Productive Failure–Error Analysis–Noticing (PEN) framework as a conceptual pedagogical model emerging from empirical error patterns. The framework synthesizes Interlanguage Theory and EA as its analytical foundation, integrates errorful learning and productive failure as cognitive mechanisms, and operationalizes WCF as a mediating process, culminating in the Noticing Hypothesis as the learning trigger. Through this integration, PEN reconceptualizes learner errors as productive sites for structured pedagogical intervention. This framework is a conceptually derived model grounded in empirical error patterns; future studies may validate its classroom implementation experimentally.

This study draws on a large corpus of Class XII ESL learners' essays from nine Jawahar Navodaya Vidyalayas (JNV) located in Gujarat, a unique residential schooling system serving rural populations in India, and presents a focused analysis of grammatical error patterns alongside their pedagogical implications (Sarkar, 2026). The study examined the following objectives: to identify the frequently occurring grammatical errors committed by Class XII JNV students in their written texts; to classify, analyse, describe, and identify the causes of these errors; and to design pedagogically grounded innovative teaching methods through the PEN framework.

2. Literature Review

Second Language Acquisition (SLA) research has progressively evolved from contrastive approaches to more nuanced, learner-centered perspectives that recognize the complexity of language development. Early frameworks such as Contrastive Analysis (CA) provided initial insights into cross-linguistic influence; however, subsequent developments, particularly Error Analysis (EA) and Interlanguage Theory (IL), reconceptualized learner errors as systematic and developmentally significant rather than as mere deviations from TL norms. Within contemporary pedagogy, this shift has been further strengthened by cognitive perspectives that view error generation as an integral component of learning.

2.1 Error Analysis

Error analysis conceptualizes learner errors as systematic and diagnostically valuable. This perspective enables the identification of recurring linguistic patterns that inform targeted pedagogical intervention (Ellis, 2008; Ahmed & Khan, 2019; Weireesh, 1991; Nazma, 2010). Within the PEN framework, EA can be reconceptualized as a pedagogical tool for both learning and assessment. Macías Borrego (2024, p. 272) proposes a systematic approach that integrates the core principles of EA across different stages of the corrective feedback (CF) process in ESL instruction (Fig. 1). This method facilitates structured identification, interpretation, and pedagogical response to learners' errors, and may contribute to progressively reducing recurring linguistic errors in students' written production.

Try → Error → Effective Feedback (Error Treatment)→ Desired goal
Try → Error → No feedback → Given up → Failure

Fig. 1. Role of error treatment in Language Learning (Huang, 2013; Macías Borrego, 2024)

2.2 Interlanguage Theory

Interlanguage extends this understanding and conceptualizes learner language as a special language — an intermediate, approximative system that may be seen as a new system with its own specific grammar (Nemser, 1971). The American linguist Larry Selinker (1972) coined the term interlanguage (Mendoza Gonzalez, 2021). The term IL evolved from Uriel Weinreich's notion of "interlingual identifications" (1953) and was later elaborated by Selinker, who described it as a provisional yet systematic grammatical system shaped by processes such as overgeneralisation, transfer of training, language transfer, and learners' L2 learning and communication strategies (Selinker, 1972; Nazma, 2010).

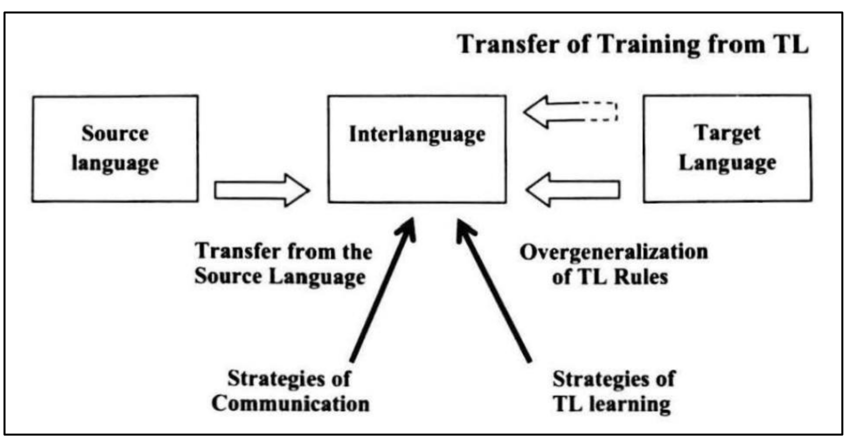


Fig. 2. Interlanguage Model (Keshavarz, 2023; Sarkar, 2026)

Maicusi et al. (2000) suggest that language errors can stem from psycholinguistic, sociolinguistic, and epistemic factors (Moiden & Liaw, 2021). Pedagogically, recognizing recurrent error patterns as manifestations of interlanguage development enables the identification of underlying causes and informs targeted instructional interventions, thereby enhancing linguistic proficiency. Within the IL framework, errors are treated as vital diagnostic indicators of the learner's developing interlanguage system rather than as signs of failure.

2.3 Written Corrective Feedback

Feedback literacy refers to the knowledge, capacities, and dispositions required for learners to interpret feedback meaningfully and apply it to improve their work and learning strategies (Carless & Boud, 2018). Students who develop feedback literacy are better able to engage with, interpret, and utilize feedback as a resource for learning improvement. As this competence is not innate, learners must participate in carefully designed pedagogical activities that scaffold their ability to understand and act upon feedback effectively (Gu et al., 2026).

The effectiveness of WCF is strongly mediated by teacher practices in EFL contexts (Lee, 2019; Mao & Lee, 2022; Miao et al., 2023; Mohammadkarimi, 2022). Direct feedback involves the teacher supplying the correct linguistic form in response to a student's error (Rajab et al., 2015). Studies in SLA indicate that learners must first become aware of the occurrence of an error; after identification, indirect feedback can encourage learners to participate in hypothesis testing, an approach that may promote more profound cognitive processing and aid in the internalization of correct linguistic forms (Daneshvar & Rahimi, 2014). Within the proposed PEN framework, WCF functions as the mediating mechanism that transforms error identification into opportunities for cognitive engagement and hypothesis testing.

2.4 Cognitive Perspectives: Productive Failure and Noticing

Evidence-based data from controlled experimental studies demonstrates that learning conditions permitting the generation of errors, when followed by timely CF, often lead to stronger retention of the correct response than error-free study conditions. Kapur (2016) critiques "unproductive success," referring to instructional designs that prioritize immediate performance gains without fostering deeper conceptual understanding. Such approaches may create an illusion of learning, where learners perform well on tasks but lack substantive conceptual mastery.

The Noticing Hypothesis (Schmidt, 1990) posits that awareness is "necessary and sufficient" for learners to convert input into intake (Fig. 3). According to Robinson (1995, 2003), learning cannot occur without awareness at the rank of noticing. Noticing also results from the rehearsal process, whereby linguistic features in short-term memory are encoded into long-term memory (Yazid et al., 2023, p. 124).

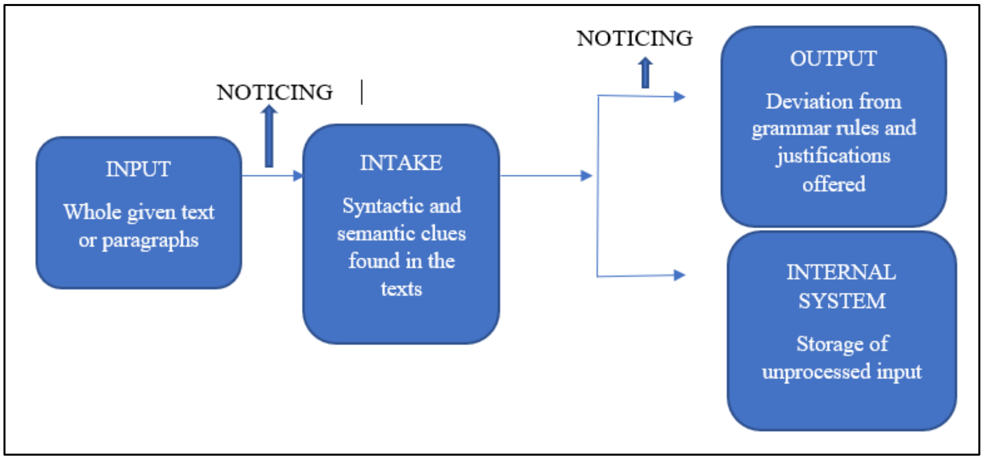


Fig. 3. Noticing in the stages of Learning Process (Yazid et al., 2023, p. 124)

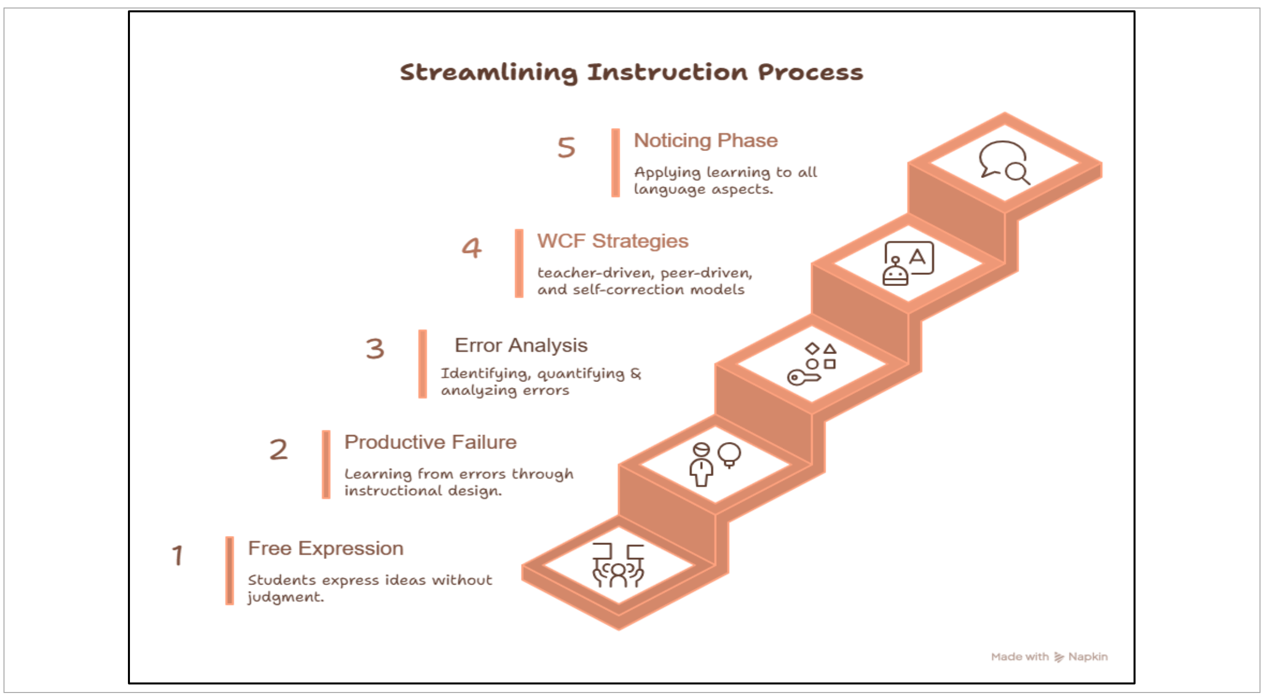


Fig. 4. Productive Failure–Error Analysis–Noticing (PEN) Framework

The present study addresses this gap through the proposed PEN framework that first encourages students to articulate their ideas freely in a non-judgmental environment (Figure 4). This approach aligns with the principle of productive failure in instructional design (Kapur, 2016). Subsequently, systematic EA is undertaken, followed by the selection of appropriate WCF strategies. The final stage emphasizes the process of noticing, which applies to all dimensions of language — grammatical form, lexicon, phonology, and pragmatics.

3. Research Methodology

A non-experimental, cross-sectional, descriptive quantitative design within the framework of EA was adopted for the study. The primary dataset comprised a 90,680-word corpus of 423 essays (212 boys and 211 girls). The population comprised a homogeneous group with Gujarati as their L1. All students follow the same syllabus, have passed the same nationwide All India Secondary School Examination conducted by the CBSE in session 2022–23, and are required to pass the same nationwide All India Senior School Certificate Examination. The data were elicited through a controlled descriptive writing task, requiring students to compose essays of 150–200 words on one of three topics: Online shopping; The importance of discipline in a student's life; and If I were the principal of my school for a day.

Error identification and classification were conducted using a structured coding framework informed by established grammatical models. To enhance reliability, a subset of the data was independently cross-checked and discrepancies resolved through iterative review. The relative seriousness of errors was further validated through an error gravity survey administered to English PGT teachers who taught the participants. Ethical considerations were observed, and student responses were anonymized prior to analysis.

Table 1 outlines the factors considered in selecting a well-defined sample.

Table 1. Factors Taken into Account during Sampling (Al-khresheh, 2016, p. 51)

Sl. No.	Factors	Description
1.	Language	
	Medium	Written (Learner production can be oral or written)
	Genre	Essay writing (Learner production may take the form of a conversation, a lecture, an essay, a letter, etc.)
	Content	a. Online Shopping b. The importance of discipline in a student's life c. If I become the principal of my school for a day
2.	Learner	
	Level	Lower Intermediate (Elementary, intermediate, or advanced)
	Mother Tongue	Gujarati (The learner's mother tongue)
	Language Learning Experience	Classroom (This may be classroom or naturalistic or a mixture of the two)

A stratified sampling technique was employed to select 30% of the total population, comprising 127 participants (Table 2). While seventeen categories of grammatical errors were identified, this study focuses on the ten most frequent categories, as these represent the most pedagogically significant domains.

Table 2. Stratified Sampling of the Population (Sarkar, 2026)

	Boys-212			**Total**	**Girls-211**			**Total**	**Grand Total**
	Science	**Arts**	**Commerce**		**Science**	**Arts**	**Commerce**		
Total population	187	9	16	212	161	28	22	211	423
Sample	56	3	5	64	48	8	7	63	127

Measures of central tendency (mean, median, and mode) were calculated to summarize overall error patterns. A chi-square test was employed to determine whether significant differences existed in the frequency of seventeen grammatical errors across gender: χ^2 (16, N = 423) = 38.99, $p < .001$. The null hypothesis is rejected because the p-value falls below the significance level of 0.05, indicating a statistically significant difference in the distribution of grammatical errors between genders. Post-hoc residual analysis showed that tense, noun inflections, and modal auxiliaries error types are significantly different.

The Shapiro-Wilk test for normality was applied to log-transformed data of the three streams (Science, Commerce, and Humanities). The findings indicate that errors generated by science students follow a normal distribution, whereas errors from commerce and humanities students do not. Welch's ANOVA indicated a statistically significant difference between groups, F (df_1, df_2) = 2.74, $p = .014$. A heatmap was generated to visualize the relationship between observed and expected seventeen error frequencies across districts (Figure 5). All analyses were conducted at a standard level of statistical significance ($p < 0.05$).

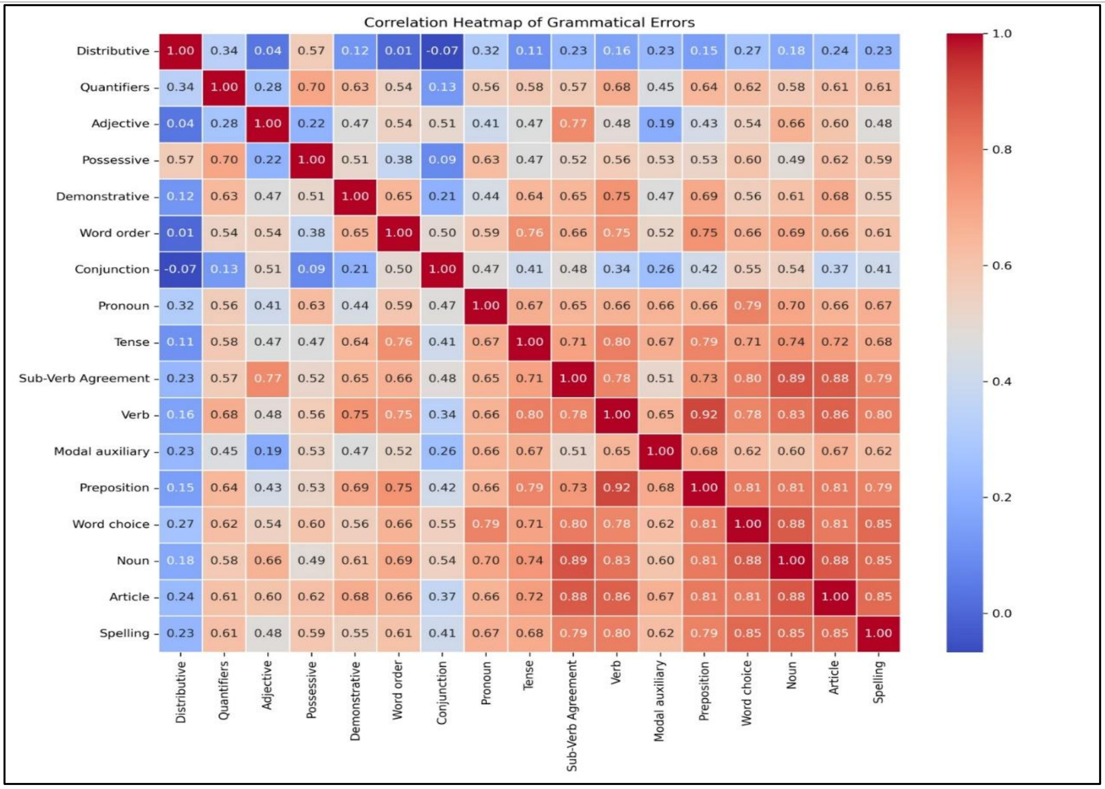


Fig. 5. Heatmap showing the Correlation of 17 grammatical errors

4. Results and Data Analysis

Table 3 presents the frequency and distribution of the ten most recurrent grammatical error categories identified in the learner corpus. Spelling errors emerged as the most dominant category (21.24%), followed by articles (13.62%), nouns (10.39%), and word choice (10.17%), indicating that both orthographic and morpho-syntactic domains pose significant challenges for rural ESL learners.

Table 3. Frequency, Percentage, Mean, and Average of Top 10 Types of Errors (Sarkar, 2026)

Rank	Error Type	Frequency	Percentage	Mean	Average
1	Spelling	566	21.246	62.889	4.46
2	Article	363	13.626	40.333	2.86
3	Noun	277	10.398	30.778	2.18
4	Word choice	271	10.173	30.111	2.13
5	Preposition	229	8.596	25.444	1.80
6	Modal auxiliary	225	8.446	25.000	1.77
7	Verb	223	8.371	24.778	1.76

8	Subject-Verb Agreement	176	6.607	19.556	1.39
9	Tense	115	4.317	12.778	0.91
10	Pronoun	52	1.952	5.778	0.41

From the perspective of the Productive Failure (P) stage of the PEN framework, the high frequency of errors across multiple categories reflects learners' active engagement in meaning-making despite incomplete linguistic competence. Rather than indicating failure, these error patterns represent productive attempts at language use, providing a rich diagnostic base for pedagogical intervention. The predominance of spelling and article errors suggests cognitive overload at the level of form encoding, where learners prioritize semantic expression over formal accuracy.

At the Error Analysis (E) stage, the systematic classification of errors into ten high-frequency categories enables targeted identification of persistent linguistic gaps. The clustering of verb-related errors (tense, subject–verb agreement, and modal auxiliaries) points to an interconnected domain of grammatical difficulty, reinforcing the interlanguage perspective that learner errors are rule-governed and developmentally structured.

A chi-square test was conducted to examine whether there is a significant difference in the frequency of errors in the essays written by boys (212) and girls (211). Table 4 shows the gender-wise distribution of top ten errors.

Table 4. Gender-wise Distribution of Top Ten Errors

Error type	Boys	Girls
Spelling	281	284
Article	187	176
Modal auxiliaries	141	84
Word choice	135	136
Nouns	116	161
Preposition	121	109
Verbs	102	121
Subject-Verb agreement	80	96
Tense	70	45
Pronouns	29	23

Statistical analysis using the chi-square test and post-hoc residual examination revealed notable gender-based variations in grammatical error patterns (Figure 6). Boys exhibited a significantly higher frequency of errors related to articles, modal auxiliaries, prepositions, tense usage, and pronouns, whereas girls demonstrated a comparatively higher occurrence of errors in spelling, noun usage, verb usage, and subject-verb concord. Lexical error challenges are experienced equally by both genders.

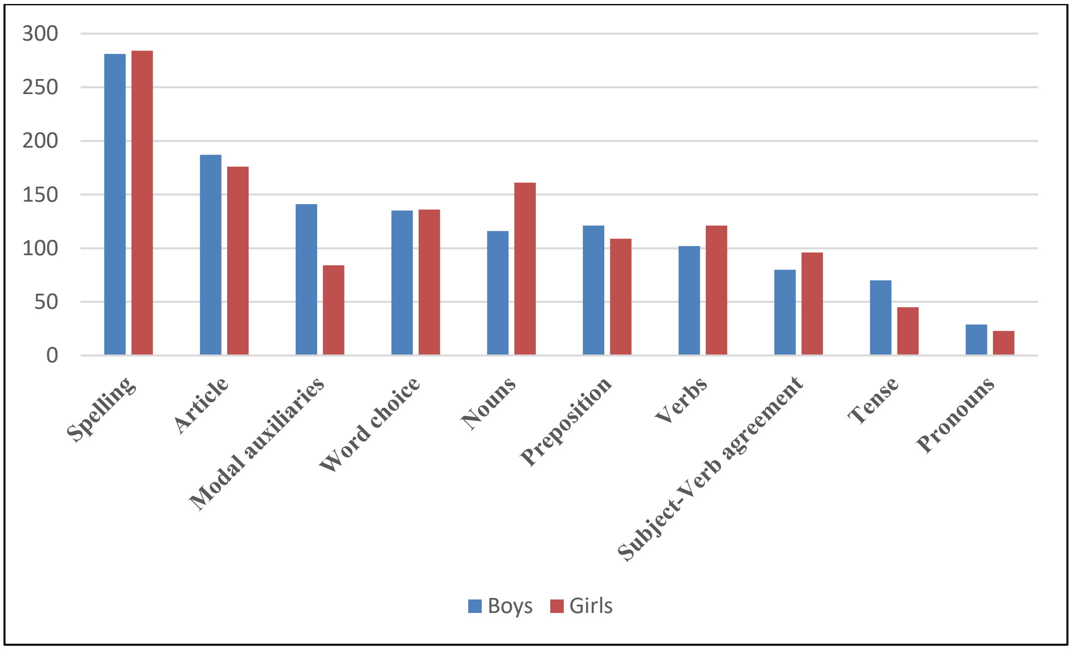


Fig. 6. Gender-wise Distribution of Top ten Errors

Within the PEN framework, these gender-related tendencies are particularly relevant at the WCF mediation stage, as they suggest the need for differentiated feedback strategies tailored to learner-specific tendencies. Targeted CF focusing on tense, preposition, and modal auxiliaries may be more beneficial for male learners, whereas noun and verb-related usage may require greater attention in feedback provided to female learners.

Figure 7 illustrates a scatter plot representing the distribution of errors across three academic streams. The analysis indicates a significant difference between students from the Humanities and Science streams, with Science stream students committing a higher number of errors. However, no statistically significant differences were observed between Humanities and Commerce students, nor between Commerce and Science students.

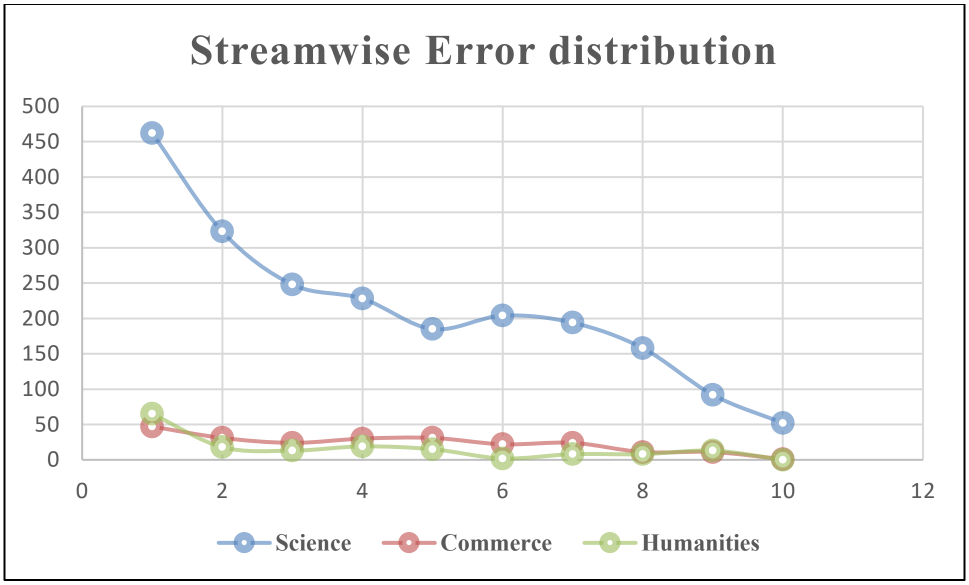


Fig. 7. Scattered Chart showing the Distribution of Top Ten errors Stream-wise

At the Noticing (N) stage, the structured identification and feedback on recurrent error patterns create conditions for learners to consciously recognize discrepancies between their interlanguage and the TL. The high frequency of specific error types, particularly in orthography and verb-related structures, provides an opportunity for focused noticing, essential for transforming input into intake.

5. Discussion

To further operationalize the proposed PEN framework, Table 5 maps the ten most frequent grammatical error categories onto specific stages of the model, along with their underlying cognitive challenges and corresponding pedagogical interventions. This mapping demonstrates that learner errors are not homogeneous but arise from distinct cognitive and linguistic constraints, thereby requiring differentiated instructional responses.

At the Productive Failure stage, errors in spelling, word choice, modal auxiliaries, and tense reflect learners' attempts to prioritize meaning-making over formal accuracy. These errors indicate active engagement with the TL and should be preserved as entry points for learning rather than prematurely corrected. In contrast, errors categorized under the EA stage — such as articles, nouns, prepositions, and verbs — reveal systematic gaps in learners' interlanguage, which can be addressed through structured identification and classification.

Table 5. Mapping of Error Types to the PEN Framework and Pedagogical Interventions

Error Type	PEN Stage	Cognitive Issue	Pedagogical Strategy (WCF + Instruction)

Spelling	Productive Failure (P) → Noticing (N)	Weak orthographic encoding; phoneme–grapheme mismatch	Indirect WCF (underlining) + guided self-correction; use of word logs and pattern recognition tasks
Articles	Error Analysis (E) → Noticing (N)	Absence/mismatch of article system in L1; low salience	Explicit WCF + contrastive input enhancement; rule-based mini-lessons with contextualized practice
Nouns	Error Analysis (E)	Number marking, countability confusion	Focused feedback on pluralization and count/non-count distinction; form-function mapping exercises
Word Choice	Productive Failure (P) → WCF	Lexical approximation; limited vocabulary depth	Recasts + lexical alternatives; collocation-building tasks and semantic field expansion
Prepositions	Error Analysis (E) → Noticing (N)	High arbitrariness; L1 transfer	Metalinguistic feedback + chunk-based learning; usage through phrases rather than rules
Modal Auxiliaries	Productive Failure (P) → WCF	Pragmatic and functional misuse	Scenario-based correction; explicit feedback on modality (possibility, obligation, etc.)
Verbs	Error Analysis (E)	Base form confusion; irregular forms	Focused corrective drills + feedback cycles; verb pattern reinforcement
Subject–Verb Agreement	Noticing (N)	Failure to track syntactic relations	Indirect WCF + prompting; sentence restructuring tasks
Tense	Productive Failure (P) → Noticing (N)	Temporal conceptualization gaps	Timeline-based feedback; contrastive tense usage tasks
Pronouns	Error Analysis (E)	Reference ambiguity; gender/number confusion	Clarification requests + referent tracking exercises

The role of WCF emerges as central in mediating between error production and learning. Different feedback strategies — ranging from indirect marking to explicit correction and metalinguistic explanation — can be selectively applied depending on the nature of the error. This reinforces the need for adaptive, learner-sensitive feedback practices rather than uniform correction techniques. The Noticing stage is activated when learners engage with feedback and become consciously aware of discrepancies between their output and the TL. Errors in domains such as subject–verb agreement and tense particularly benefit from feedback strategies that promote hypothesis testing and self-correction.

Overall, this mapping substantiates the central claim of the study: that learner errors, when systematically analyzed and strategically mediated through feedback, can function as productive resources for language development. The PEN framework offers a coherent and scalable model for integrating error-based learning into ESL pedagogy, particularly in rural contexts where targeted and efficient instructional strategies are critically needed.

6. Implications and Recommendations

Within this context, the present study advances the PEN framework as a pedagogically actionable model that streamlines the learning process by systematically integrating error generation, analysis, feedback, and cognitive engagement. The framework begins by encouraging learners to produce language freely in a low-anxiety environment, thereby operationalizing the principle of productive failure (Kapur, 2016). Subsequently, systematic EA enables the identification of recurring linguistic patterns, which form the basis for targeted instructional intervention.

At this stage, WCF functions as a mediating mechanism, and its effectiveness depends on alignment with learner-specific variables such as L1 background, proficiency level, and cognitive readiness, as well as adequate time for learners to process feedback (Park et al., 2015). Rather than adopting uniform correction strategies, the PEN framework advocates differentiated feedback practices that promote deeper cognitive processing. Digital tools may be employed to support reinforcement and practice; however, they should complement, not replace, teacher-mediated feedback.

The final stage of the framework foregrounds the process of noticing, wherein learners consciously attend to discrepancies between their output and the TL. This stage is critical for transforming input into intake and facilitating durable learning across linguistic domains including grammar, lexis, and pragmatics. Pedagogically, the framework has significant implications for curriculum design, particularly in rural and tertiary-level ESL contexts. Educators may implement bridge courses or remedial modules informed by identified error patterns, thereby addressing persistent gaps in learners' linguistic competence.

7. Conclusion

This study underscores the importance of integrating empirical classroom data with theoretically informed pedagogical design in addressing the linguistic challenges faced by rural ESL learners. It reaffirms that errors are essential indicators of interlanguage development and productive sites for learning. Moving beyond traditional error-avoidance approaches, the study demonstrates that error generation, when systematically analysed and supported through targeted feedback, can facilitate deeper and more durable language acquisition.

The primary contribution of this study lies in the formulation of the PEN framework — a conceptual pedagogical model that integrates core insights from Interlanguage Theory, Error Analysis, cognitive learning research, and the Noticing Hypothesis. By linking error production, feedback mediation, and conscious awareness into a coherent instructional sequence, the framework offers a structured pathway for transforming learner errors into meaningful learning opportunities.

Aligned with contemporary educational priorities, particularly those articulated in the National Education Policy (NEP) 2020 (Government of India, Ministry of Education, 2020, Section 22.7), language teaching must evolve toward more experiential approaches that prioritize communicative competence and interactive proficiency. The PEN framework advances a learner-centred, data-driven, and context-sensitive pedagogical model whose foundational principles remain adaptable and applicable across diverse instructional environments. Future research may extend this work by examining the implementation of the PEN framework across varied learner populations, proficiency levels, and institutional contexts.

Abbreviations

CA: Contrastive Analysis | CF: Corrective Feedback | EA: Error Analysis | ELT: English Language Teaching | ESL: English as a Second Language | IL: Interlanguage | JNV: Jawahar Navodaya Vidyalaya | L1: First Language/Mother Tongue | L2: Second Language | NEP: National Education Policy 2020 | SLA: Second Language Acquisition | TL: Target Language | WCF: Written Corrective Feedback

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Ethics Statement: Ethical considerations were observed. All student responses were anonymized prior to analysis.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: S.S.; Methodology: S.S.; Data collection: S.S.; Formal analysis: S.S.; Writing – original draft: S.S.; Writing – review & editing: S.S.

References

Ahmed, I., & Khan, M. J. U. (2019). Error analysis as a tool to improve writing skill: A journey from pretest to posttest. Journal of English Language and Literature (JOELL), 6(1), 68–74. https://doi.org/10.33329/joell.61.68

Al-Khresheh, M. H. (2016). A review study of error analysis theory. International Journal of Humanities and Social Science Research, 2, 49–59. https://doi.org/10.6000/2371-1655.2016.02.05

Assis Hornay, P. M. (2021). Cognitive load theory and English language instruction. ACCENTIA: Journal of English Language and Education, 1(1), 43–55. https://doi.org/10.37598/accentia.v1i1.1015

Carless, D., & Boud, D. (2018). The development of student feedback literacy: Enabling uptake of feedback. Assessment & Evaluation in Higher Education, 43(8), 1315–1325. https://doi.org/10.1080/02602938.2018.1463354

Daneshvar, E., & Rahimi, A. (2014). Written corrective feedback and teaching grammar. Procedia-Social and Behavioral Sciences, 136, 217–221. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sbspro.2014.05.317

Ellis, R. (2008). The study of second language acquisition (2nd ed.). Oxford University Press.

Government of India, Ministry of Education. (2020). National Education Policy 2020. https://www.education.gov.in/sites/upload_files/mhrd/files/NEP_Final_English_0.pdf

Gu, J., Chen, J., & Yan, Z. (2026). Fostering feedback literacy by scaffolding self-regulated feedback: A comparative study of GenAI and human peers. Frontiers in Education, 10, 1736446. https://doi.org/10.3389/feduc.2025.1736446

Hamouda, A. (2011). A study of students' and teachers' preferences and attitudes towards correction of classroom written errors in the Saudi EFL context. English Language Teaching, 4(3), 128–141. https://doi.org/10.5539/elt.v4n3p128

James, C. (1998). Errors in language learning and use: Exploring error analysis (1st ed.). Routledge. https://doi.org/10.4324/9781315842912

Kapur, M. (2016). Examining productive failure, productive success, unproductive failure, and unproductive success in learning. Educational Psychologist, 51(2), 289–299. https://doi.org/10.1080/00461520.2016.1155457

Keshavarz, M. H. (2023). Contrastive analysis, error analysis, and interlanguage hypothesis (6th ed.). Rahnama Press.

Lee, I. (2019). Teacher written corrective feedback: Less is more. Language Teaching, 52(4), 524–536. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0261444819000247

Macías Borrego, M. (2024). Error corrective treatment in Spanish L1 ESL learners: Suggesting an empirical method. ES Review: Spanish Journal of English Studies, 45, 269–295. https://doi.org/10.24197/ersjes.45.2024.269-295

Mendoza Gonzalez, Ma. de. (2021). The importance of interlanguage when learning a foreign language. Academia Letters. https://doi.org/10.20935/al2359

Metcalfe, J. (2017). Learning from errors. Annual Review of Psychology, 68(1), 465–489. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-psych-010416-044022

Moiden, A. H., & Liaw, J. O. (2021). Language error from Western scholar perspectives. International Journal of Academic Research in Business and Social Sciences, 11(3), 957–966. https://doi.org/10.6007/ijarbss/v11-i3/8993

Nazma, M. V. (2010). Error analysis: A study of errors committed by isiZulu-speaking learners of English in selected schools (Master's thesis, University of Zululand). https://hdl.handle.net/10530/615

Park, E. S., Kim, J. Y., & Kim, Y. (2015). To what extent do learners benefit from indirect written corrective feedback? A study targeting learners of different proficiency and heritage language status. Language Teaching Research, 20(6), 1–22. https://doi.org/10.1177/1362168815609617

Sarkar, S., & Dave, B. G. (2024). A critical study of metalinguistic corrective feedback in the essays by XII students of JNV Patan. Journal of English Language Teaching and Linguistics, 9(3), 327–345. https://doi.org/10.21462/jeltl.v9.i3.1443

Sarkar, S. (2026). The role of error analysis in teaching and learning of English as a second language: A case study in Jawahar Navodaya Vidyalaya (PhD Thesis, Gujarat University). Shodhganga@Inflibnet. https://shodhganga.inflibnet.ac.in/handle/10603/692891

Schmidt, R. W. (1990). The role of consciousness in second language learning. Applied Linguistics, 11(2), 129–158. https://doi.org/10.1093/applin/11.2.129

Selinker, L. (1972). Interlanguage. International Review of Applied Linguistics in Language Teaching, 10(3), 209–231. https://doi.org/10.1515/iral.1972.10.1-4.209

Yazid, N. H. M., et al. (2023). Error analysis: The correlation between justification inclusion and learners' performance in an English grammar assessment. Journal of Creative Practices in Language Learning and Teaching, 11(1), 122–131. https://ir.uitm.edu.my/id/eprint/81744

Received: 18 April 2026
Accepted: 9 May 2026
Published: 11 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

The Phonetic and Phonological Characteristics of Nasal Vowels in French

[1] Gulsum Kerimova, [2] Asmar Aliyeva
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602030

Abstract. *This article examines the special role of nasal vowels (voyelles nasales) within the phonetic and phonological system of the French language. Unlike other Romance languages and many members of the Indo-European family, French is distinguished by its nasal vowels. The articulatory mechanism of these vowels is characterized by the lowering of the soft palate, allowing the airflow to pass simultaneously through both the oral and nasal cavities. This process produces a unique acoustic timbre that contributes to the distinctiveness of French phonology. From a phonological perspective, nasal vowels function as independent phonemes with a distinctive meaning-bearing role. Minimal pairs (such as beau "beautiful" and bon "good") clearly demonstrate their semantic significance. Contemporary phonological tendencies reveal neutralization processes, particularly between [œ̃] and [ɛ̃], which indicate a simplification trend in modern French, especially in Parisian speech. The article also discusses orthographic manifestations of nasal vowels, denasalization phenomena, and the challenges they pose for learners of French as a foreign language. Ultimately, nasal vowels are evaluated as fundamental components that ensure the structural integrity, phonetic richness, and dynamic evolution of French. Their study provides valuable insights into both theoretical linguistics and practical pronunciation training.*

Keywords: *French language, nasal vowels, phonetics, phonology, articulation*

1. Introduction

The phonetic landscape of world languages is distinguished by its diversity, and within this variety, French occupies a unique position, particularly due to its vocalic system. French is one of the languages notable for the richness and distinctiveness of its phonetic structure. In French, pronunciation often differs from spelling. By examining sound production, transmission, and reception, phonetics helps us understand pronunciation and acoustic features. French sounds differ from other European languages, especially due to nasal vowels and distinct consonant pronunciations (Kerimova, 2025, p. 388). These sounds are not only significant for their manner of articulation but also for the functional role they play in the internal structure of the language. We argue that nasal vowels are not merely phonetic variations but independent phonemes

[1] Kerimova, G. Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: gulsumkerimova80@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-3233-4988

[2] Aliyeva, A. Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: esmeraliyeva008@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0009-1640-4468

carrying a distinctive semantic function. In this article, we will analyze the acoustic and articulatory features of these sounds while also focusing on their tendencies of transformation in modern French.

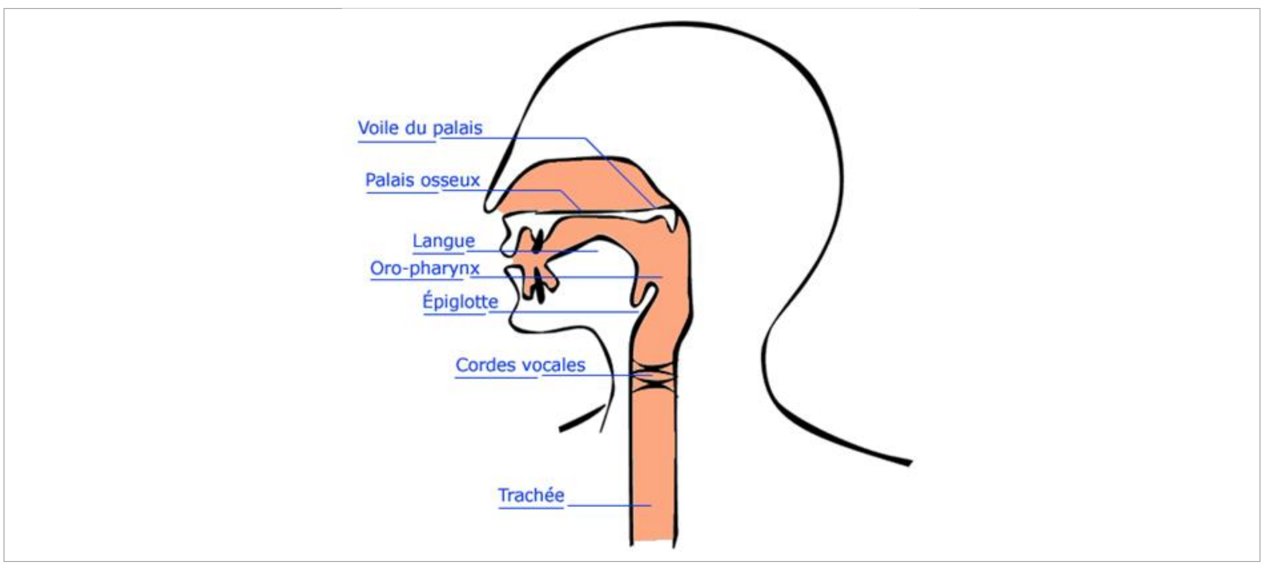
Although French is a widely spoken language worldwide, research conducted within educational institutions on the teaching and learning of French reveals certain weaknesses. In this regard, it is worth examining Özkan Gürses's study in Turkey, which investigated students' independent approaches to learning French: "The study revealed that the students perceived teachers as more responsible than themselves for their learning French. Furthermore, in general the participants' decision-making abilities and use of metacognitive strategies were moderate level and they engaged in limited autonomous language learning activities. Moreover, most of the students were not sufficiently motivated and had difficulties in maintaining their motivation during learning progress. Thus, the results suggest that the majority of the learners of French studying at a university in Turkey did not appear to be highly autonomous learners" (Gürses, 2021, p. 104). As Little points out, "Autonomy is not a synonym for self-instruction" (Little, 2007, p. 15).

These proposed ideas also highlight the necessity for those teaching the French language to explore French phonetics more deeply, in order to reveal the richness and uniqueness of its phonetic structure.

2. Nasal Vowels (Voyelles nasales): [ɑ̃], [ɛ̃], [ɔ̃], [œ̃]

2.1 Phonetic Nature and Articulatory Mechanism

The formation of nasal vowels in French is a complex physiological process. The main factor distinguishing them from oral vowels is the position of the soft palate (le voile du palais).



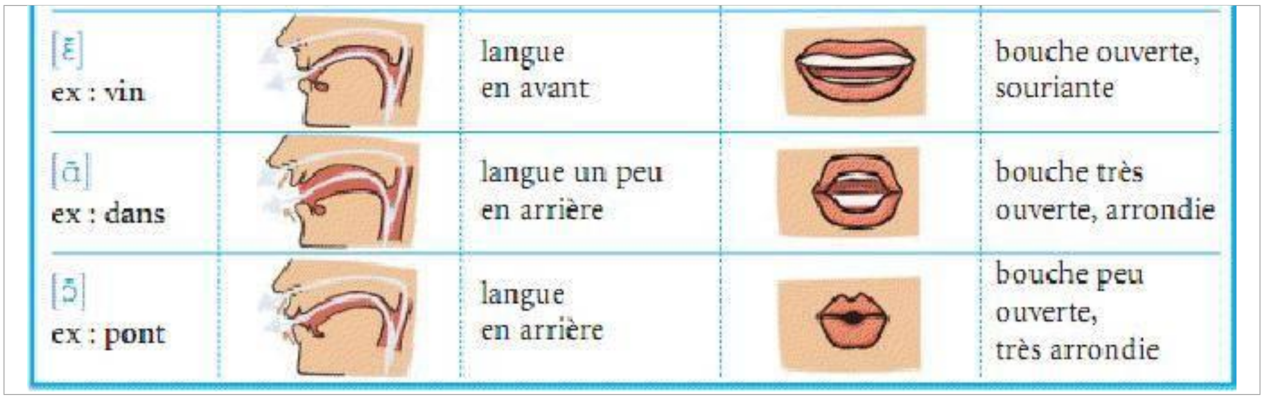
The position of the velum varies across the nasals, the speakers and the environments. Usually there is a connection between the degree of velum lowering and the position of the tongue in the velar region (Fougeron, 1999, p. 13).

2.1.1 Articulation Process

In oral vowels, the soft palate rises, blocking the nasal cavity, and air flows only through the mouth. In nasal vowels, the soft palate lowers, the airflow bifurcates, passing simultaneously through both the mouth and nose, and this resonance alters the timbre of the sound, producing the specific "nasal" quality. While examining nasal coarticulation typically involves nasality as a single parameter, nasal vowels and speech sounds in general differ along multiple phonetic dimensions (Rodriguez, Pouplier, Alderton, Lo, Evans, Reinisch, & Carignan, 2023, p. 848).

2.1.2 Acoustic Classification

Standard French has four primary nasal vowels, characterized as follows:



[ɑ̃]: tongue retracts, mouth opens wide (e.g., *enfant*, *temps*).

[ɔ̃]: lips rounded, tongue retracts (e.g., *pont*, *long*).

[ɛ̃]: tongue advances, lips spread (e.g., *vin*, *pain*).

[œ̃]: tongue advances, lips rounded (e.g., *un*, *parfum*).

3. Phonological Analysis: Distinctive Function

From a phonological perspective, nasal vowels are independent phonemes in French. Nasalization is not merely a manner of pronunciation but a feature that fundamentally changes meaning.

3.1 Evidence Through Minimal Pairs

Minimal pairs demonstrate their phonemic status:

Oral Phoneme	Nasal Phoneme	Example (Oral)	Example (Nasal)
[a]	[ɑ̃]	*bas (low)*	*banc (bench)*
[o]	[ɔ̃]	*beau (beautiful)*	*bon (good)*

[ɛ]	[ɛ̃]	*paix (peace)*	*pain (bread)*

3.2 Modern Phonological Trend: Neutralization of [œ̃] and [ɛ̃]

In contemporary French, especially in Paris and northern regions, [œ̃] tends to merge with [ɛ̃]. For many younger speakers, words like brin (twig) and brun (brown) are pronounced identically. This process is known as neutralization.

4. Orthographic Representation and Denasalization

Nasal vowels are usually represented in writing by combinations with n or m. However, when followed by another vowel, nasalization does not occur. For example: Nasal: plan [plɑ̃] (plan); Oral (Denasalization): plane [plan] ("flat/airplane") — here the final e causes the n consonant to shift into the next syllable, thereby breaking the nasal vowel.

The nasal vowel [ɛ̃] is almost always written as <in> (or <im> when followed by p or b). This vowel can appear in all positions within a word, and its graphemic distribution is as follows (Elsaadani, 2022, p. 63):

Table 1. The Nasal Vowel [ɛ̃] — Graphemic Distribution Patterns

Grapheme	Word-initial position	Word-medial position	Word-final position
in	*Inviter [ɛ̃vite]*	*Pincer [pɛ̃se]*	*Vin [vɛ̃]*
yn		*Syndicat [sɛ̃dika]*	
im	*Impossible [ɛ̃posibl]*	*Simplicité [sɛ̃plisite]*	
ym		*Symphonie [sɛ̃foni]*	*Thym [tɛ̃]*
ain	*Ainsi [ɛ̃si]*	*Vaincu [vɛ̃ky]*	*Pain [pɛ̃]*
aim			*Faim [fɛ̃]*
ein		*Teinté [tɛ̃te]*	*Plein [plɛ̃]*
eim		*Reims [rɛ̃:s]*	
éen			*Européen [øropɛ̃]*
ien		*Bientôt [bjɛ̃to]*	*Bien [bjɛ̃]*
yen			*Moyen [mwajɛ̃]*
oin	*Oindre [wɛ̃dr]*	*Coincer [kwɛ̃se]*	*Coin [kwɛ̃]*

4.1 The [œ̃] Nasal Vowel

The nasal vowel [œ̃] is almost always written with <un>. We have also observed that nasalized vowels slightly differ in formant frequency when compared to oral vowels. These frequency shifts are usually reinforced for nasal vowels. This is essentially true for front nasals ([ɛ̃], [œ̃]) (de Boer, Islam, & Charis, 2023, p. 3).

Table 2. The Nasal Vowel [œ̃] — Graphemic Distribution Patterns

Grapheme	Word-initial position	Word-medial position	Word-final position
un	*Un [œ̃]*	*Lundi [lœ̃di]*	*Aucun [okœ̃]*
um	*Humble [œ̃bl]*		*Parfum [parfœ̃]*

4.2 The [ɔ̃] Nasal Vowel

The nasal vowel [ɔ̃] can occur in all word positions (initial, medial, and final). Its graphemic distribution is presented as follows:

Table 3. Distribution of the Nasal Vowel [ɔ̃]

Grapheme	Word-initial position	Word-medial position	Word-final position
on	*Onde [ɔ̃d]*	*Ronde [rɔ̃d]*	*Ton [tɔ̃]*
om + p/b		*Pompe [pɔ̃p]*	*Rompt [rɔ̃]*
om + b	*Ombre [ɔ̃br]*	*Bombe [bɔ̃b]*	*Plomb [plɔ̃]*

4.3 The [ɑ̃] Nasal Vowel

The nasal vowel [ɑ̃] can occur in all word positions (initial, medial, and final). Its graphemic distribution is presented as follows:

Table 4. Distribution of the Nasal Vowel [ɑ̃]

Grapheme	Word-initial position	Word-medial position	Word-final position
<en>	*Entrer [ɑ̃tre]*	*Lentement [lɑ̃tmɑ̃]*	*Lent [lɑ̃]*
<em> + p/b	*Emporter [ɑ̃pɔrte]* *Embrasser [ɑ̃brase]*	*Temple [tɑ̃pl]*	*Temps [tɑ̃]*
<an>	*Ancre [ɑ̃kr]*	*Dangers [dɑ̃ʒe]*	*Dans [dɑ̃]*
<am> + p/b	*Ampoule [ɑ̃pul] Ambulance [ɑ̃bylɑ̃:s]*	*Lampe [lɑ̃p] Jambe [ʒɑ̃b]*	*Adam [adɑ̃]*
<aen>			*Caen [kɑ̃]*
<aon>			*Paon [pɑ̃]*

Detailed tables above illustrate the distribution of [ɛ̃], [œ̃], [ɔ̃], and [ɑ̃] across different graphemic contexts.

5. Comparative Note with Portuguese

For Portuguese speakers, French nasal vowels are less nasalized. Unlike Portuguese, French nasal vowels do not require complete nasal blockage; air flows freely through both mouth and nose, with the tongue remaining low (Kamoun, 2016, p. 99). Thus, French nasalization is softer and less resonant. The author explains that nasal vowels in French are produced with a weaker nasal resonance compared to Portuguese. In the French variant, air flows freely through both the mouth and nose, without complete nasal closure and without the tongue pressing against the palate.

In nasal vowels, air passes partially through both the nose and mouth, while the tip of the tongue remains lowered. In oral vowels followed by n, airflow is directed exclusively through the mouth. For the consonant [n], the tip of the tongue rises to the palate. Examples illustrating nasal/oral contrasts in French morphology include: Il y a des voisins — Il y a des voisines; Il y a des Parisiens — Il y a des Parisiennes; Il y a des paysans — Il y a des paysannes (Charliac, Thierry, Loreil, & Motron, 2003, p. 118).

6. Conclusion

Our investigation into the phonetic and phonological system of French once again confirms that nasal vowels constitute some of the most complex yet fundamental components ensuring the structural integrity of the language. The findings of this study can be summarized under the following key points.

Articulatory uniqueness: As observed, the mechanism of nasal vowel production is based on the lowering of the soft palate and the division of airflow between the oral and nasal cavities. This specific physiological process endows French with a distinctive timbre and acoustic richness that sharply differentiates it from other languages.

Phonological value: Our analysis demonstrates that nasal vowels in French are not merely pronunciation variants but independent phonemes with distinctive (meaning-differentiating) functions. The minimal pairs presented (e.g., beau vs. bon) clearly show that incorrect articulation of these sounds can damage the semantic structure of the language and lead to serious communicative misunderstandings.

Dynamic development and neutralization: The phonological system of French is not static but subject to transformation over time. In particular, the gradual neutralization of the distinction between [œ̃] and [ɛ̃] in contemporary Parisian French illustrates the tendency of the language toward simplification, in line with the principle of economy. This phenomenon should be regarded as one of the most relevant directions for current linguistic research.

Practical significance: The orthographic representation of nasal vowels and the phenomenon of denasalization remain among the most challenging aspects for learners of French as a foreign language. The phonetic principles and rules outlined in this study can serve as an important resource both for theoretical understanding and for the scientific development of accurate pronunciation habits.

Due to the complications of inferring nasal vowels' oro-pharyngeal shape from acoustics, direct measurement of the oropharyngeal shape has remained of considerable interest to articulatory and acoustic phoneticians. Accurate measurement of oropharyngeal shape in nasal vowels has implications for both diachronic and synchronic studies of human language (Carignan, Shosted, Fu, Liang, & Sutton, 2015, p. 35).

In conclusion, the system of nasal vowels in French stands as a clear example of the language's centuries-long historical evolution and aesthetic refinement. Deepening research in this field — particularly through laboratory analysis of acoustic changes in modern dialects — opens broad and promising horizons for future linguistic inquiry.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: G.K., A.A.; Investigation: G.K., A.A.; Writing – original draft: G.K., A.A.; Writing – review & editing: G.K.

References

Benson, P. (2013). Teaching and researching autonomy (2nd ed.). Routledge.

Borg, S., & Al-Busaidi, S. (2012). Learner autonomy: English language teachers' beliefs and practices. British Council.

Callamand, M. (1981). Méthodologie de l'enseignement de la prononciation. Hachette.

Carignan, C., Shosted, R. K., Fu, M., Liang, Z. P., & Sutton, B. P. (2015). A real-time MRI investigation of the role of lingual and pharyngeal articulation in the production of the nasal vowel system of French. Journal of Phonetics, 52, 15–34. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wocn.2015.04.002

Charliac, L., Thierry, J., Loreil, B., & Motron, A.-C. (2003). Phonétique progressive du français avec 400 exercices: Niveau débutant. CLE International.

Charliac, L., Thierry, J., Loreil, B., & Motron, A.-C. (2006). Phonétique progressive du français avec 400 activités: Niveau avancé. CLE International.

de Boer, G., Islam, J., & Charis, C. (2023). Revisiting the nasal continuum hypothesis: A study of French nasals in continuous speech. Journal of Phonetics, 98, 101244. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wocn.2023.101244

Delvaux, V., & Soquet, A. (2007). The influence of ambient speech on the development of nasal vowels in French. Speech Communication, 49(2), 130–152. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.specom.2007.01.004

Elsaadani, A. (2022). Cours de phonétique du français. Mansourah University.

Fougeron, C., & Smith, C. L. (1999). French nasal vowels: Acoustic and articulatory properties. Phonetics, 56(2–4), 128–152. https://doi.org/10.1159/000028448

Gürses, Ö. (2021). Learner autonomy in French language education in Turkey. Eurasian Journal of Applied Linguistics, 7(1), 85–108. https://doi.org/10.32601/ejal.911189

Kamoun, C., & Ripaud, D. (2016). Phonétique essentielle du français. Didier.

Kerimova, G. (2025). Phonetics of the French language: Sounds, structure, and pronunciation analysis.

Little, D. (2007). Language learner autonomy: Some fundamental considerations revisited. Innovation in Language Learning and Teaching, 1(1), 14–29. https://doi.org/10.2167/illt040.0

Littlewood, W. (1996). Autonomy: An anatomy and a framework. System, 24(4), 427–435. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0346-251X(96)00039-5

Rodriguez, F., Pouplier, M., Alderton, R., Lo, J. J. H., Evans, B. G., Reinisch, E., & Carignan, C. (2023). What French speakers' nasal vowels tell us about anticipatory nasal coarticulation. In R. Skarnitzl & J. Volín (Eds.), Proceedings of the 20th International Congress of Phonetic Sciences (ICPhS 2023) (pp. 848–852). International Phonetic Association.

Received: 12 April 2026
Accepted: 9 May 2026
Published: 11 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Syntactic Structure of the Complex Sentence in French: A Theoretical and Pedagogical Analysis

La structure syntaxique de la phrase complexe en français : une analyse théorique et pédagogique

[1] **Irade Qasımova**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602031

Abstract. *This article investigates the syntactic structure of complex sentences in French, analyzing the principal types of subordination, their formal markers, functional roles, and pedagogical implications. French complex sentence syntax — encompassing relative clauses, completive clauses, and adverbial clauses of cause, time, condition, purpose, and concession — constitutes one of the most grammatically intricate and communicatively essential domains of the language, yet it remains systematically challenging for learners at all proficiency levels. Drawing on generative syntax, functional grammar, and applied linguistics, the study examines the mechanisms of subordinate clause formation, the distributional properties of subordinating conjunctions and relative pronouns, the mood selection constraints governing subordinate clauses, and the information-structural functions of complex sentence constructions in discourse. Special attention is devoted to the subjunctive mood as a structurally defining feature of French subordination, the syntactic behavior of infinitival complements, and the typological contrasts between French complex sentence structure and that of structurally distant languages such as Azerbaijani. The article further examines the pedagogical dimensions of complex sentence instruction in foreign language contexts, proposing evidence-based strategies for developing syntactic competence in advanced French learners. The findings confirm that mastery of complex sentence structure is a prerequisite for communicative and academic proficiency in French and that its systematic instruction requires the integration of formal syntactic knowledge, mood selection rules, and discourse-pragmatic awareness.*

Keywords: *French syntax, complex sentences, subordination, relative clauses, subjunctive, adverbial clauses, French grammar, foreign language pedagogy*

La structure syntaxique de la phrase complexe en français : une analyse théorique et pédagogique

Résumé. *Cet article analyse la structure syntaxique de la phrase complexe en français, en examinant les principaux types de subordination — les propositions relatives, les propositions complétives et les propositions circonstancielles — ainsi que leurs marqueurs formels, leurs fonctions syntaxiques et leurs*

[1] Qasımova, İ. Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: irade.gasimova1969@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0008-6187-3012

implications pédagogiques. S'appuyant sur la grammaire générative, la linguistique fonctionnelle systémique et la grammaire descriptive du français, l'étude examine les mécanismes de formation des propositions subordonnées, les propriétés distributionnelles des conjonctions de subordination et des pronoms relatifs, les contraintes de sélection modale qui gouvernent les propositions subordonnées, ainsi que les fonctions informationnelles des constructions complexes dans le discours. Une attention particulière est accordée au subjonctif en tant que trait définitoire de la subordination française, aux compléments infinitifs et aux contrastes typologiques entre la phrase complexe française et celle de langues structurellement éloignées, notamment l'azerbaïdjanais. L'article propose également des stratégies pédagogiques fondées sur des données empiriques pour le développement de la compétence syntaxique chez les apprenants avancés du français langue étrangère.

Mots-clés : *syntaxe française, phrase complexe, subordination, propositions relatives, subjonctif, propositions circonstancielles, grammaire française, pédagogie des langues étrangères*

1. Introduction

The complex sentence — defined as a sentence containing one or more subordinate clauses integrated into the structure of a main clause — constitutes one of the most productive syntactic categories in French and one of the most theoretically revealing domains of the language's grammatical architecture. French syntax, rooted in the Latin tradition of subordination and enriched through centuries of literary and scholarly standardization, deploys an extensive and highly differentiated system of subordinate clause types — relative, completive, and adverbial — each characterized by distinctive formal markers, mood selection requirements, and functional properties that interact with discourse structure in complex and linguistically significant ways (Grevisse & Goosse, 2016; Riegel, Pellat, & Rioul, 2018).

The study of complex sentence syntax in French is significant for multiple overlapping reasons. From a theoretical perspective, French provides an exceptionally well-documented case study in the syntax of subordination, with a rich tradition of grammatical description extending from Port-Royal to contemporary generative and functional accounts (Chomsky, 1995; Halliday & Matthiessen, 2014; Qasımova, 2025).

The subjunctive mood, which French has preserved as a structurally productive grammatical category long after its erosion in most other modern European languages, is particularly revealing: its distribution across main and subordinate clause contexts encodes semantic and pragmatic distinctions — between assertion and presupposition, certainty and uncertainty, factivity and non-factivity — that illuminate the interface between syntax, semantics, and discourse (Maiden & Smith, 2000).

From a pedagogical perspective, complex sentence structure presents systematic challenges for learners of French as a foreign language at all proficiency levels. The selection of the appropriate subordinating conjunction from a set of near-synonyms — parce que versus puisque versus car for causal relations, or pour que versus afin que for final relations — requires sensitivity to pragmatic nuances of register, information structure, and speaker perspective that are not reliably captured by the binary grammar-rule accounts typical of pedagogical materials (Berthonneau & Cadiot, 1993). The subjunctive in subordinate clauses is particularly challenging: its selection is triggered by a heterogeneous set of semantic and syntactic environments — verbs of volition, emotion, doubt, impersonal expressions — whose underlying unity is not always transparent to learners (Confais, 1995).

This article provides a comprehensive theoretical and pedagogical analysis of the syntactic structure of complex sentences in French. The analysis proceeds through the major types of subordination — relative clauses, completive clauses, and adverbial clauses — examining the formal properties, functional roles, and pedagogical implications of each. A comparative dimension situates French complex sentence structure within a broader typological context, highlighting the contrasts with structurally distant languages — particularly Azerbaijani, a verb-final agglutinative language — that are relevant to learners in the South Caucasus region.

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical foundations of this analysis integrate three complementary frameworks. The first is generative syntax in the tradition of Chomsky's (1995) Minimalist Program and its applications to Romance languages. Within this framework, subordinate clauses are analyzed as syntactic constituents — CPs (complementizer phrases) — embedded within the argument or adjunct positions of matrix clause structures. The complementizer position (C) is occupied by subordinating conjunctions (que, si, quand, bien que, etc.) and relative pronouns (qui, que, dont, où, lequel), which establish the subordination relation and determine the internal clause type. This analysis provides the formal vocabulary for describing the structural properties of French subordination with precision.

The second framework is functional grammar, particularly the systemic functional linguistics (SFL) tradition developed by Halliday and Matthiessen (2014), which analyzes complex sentences in terms of their logico-semantic relations — projection (direct and indirect speech and thought) and expansion (elaboration, extension, and enhancement) — and their role in the textual and interpersonal organization of discourse. This functional perspective complements the generative analysis by addressing the communicative motivations for complex sentence use and the information-structural properties of different subordination types.

The third framework is applied linguistics and French foreign language pedagogy, particularly the descriptive tradition of Grevisse and Goosse's (2016) Le Bon Usage and Riegel, Pellat, and Rioul's (2018) Grammaire méthodique du français, which provide comprehensive empirical descriptions of French subordination patterns, supplemented by the theoretical insights of Confais (1995) on mood selection and Berthonneau and Cadiot (1993) on temporal and causal connectors.

3. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative, descriptive-analytical methodology grounded in the theoretical frameworks outlined above. The analysis draws on established grammatical descriptions of French syntax — principally Grevisse and Goosse (2016) and Riegel, Pellat, and Rioul (2018) — supplemented by authentic examples drawn from literary, journalistic, and academic French texts. Each subordination type is examined through the following analytical dimensions: the formal markers (complementizers, relative pronouns, subordinating conjunctions) that introduce the subordinate clause; the syntactic position of the subordinate clause within the matrix clause structure; the mood selection constraints governing the subordinate clause verb; and the functional and discourse-pragmatic properties of the construction. A comparative analysis examines selected contrasts between French and Azerbaijani complex sentence structure, informed by the typological literature on subordination in Turkic languages (Johanson & Csató, 1998).

4. Relative Clauses in French

4.1 Structure and Formal Markers

Relative clauses in French are subordinate clauses that modify a nominal head — the antecedent — through a relative pronoun that simultaneously establishes the subordination relation and encodes the grammatical function of the co-referential element within the relative clause. French has a rich inventory of relative pronouns whose distribution is conditioned by the grammatical function of the relativized element and the animacy and specificity of the antecedent (Grevisse & Goosse, 2016). The invariant pronouns qui (subject) and que (direct object) cover the two most common relativization positions. Dont covers the genitive relation and replaces de + NP: L'homme dont je parle ("The man of whom I speak"). Où functions as a locative or temporal relative: La ville où il habite ("The city where he lives"). The inflected series lequel/laquelle/lesquels/lesquelles is used with prepositions: La table sur laquelle il écrit ("The table on which he writes").

The relativization hierarchy — subject > direct object > indirect object > oblique > genitive > locative — is universally attested in the typological literature (Keenan & Comrie, 1977), and French conforms to this hierarchy: subject and direct object relativization are maximally productive, while relativization of more oblique positions requires the lequel series with prepositions and shows greater syntactic complexity. One typologically notable feature of French is the use of the invariant pronoun que for direct object relativization regardless of the gender, number, or animacy of the antecedent — a characteristic that simplifies direct object relativization at the cost of the pronominal agreement information available in more synthetic languages.

4.2 Restrictive and Non-Restrictive Relatives

The distinction between restrictive and non-restrictive relative clauses is semantically and prosodically significant in French. Restrictive relative clauses — those that identify or delimit the referent of the antecedent: Le livre que j'ai lu était fascinant ("The book that I read was fascinating") — are not set off by intonational or orthographic boundaries. Non-restrictive relative clauses — those that provide additional, parenthetical information about an already-identified referent: Paris, qui est la capitale de la France, est une ville magnifique ("Paris, which is the capital of France, is a magnificent city") — are set off by commas in writing and by prosodic breaks in speech, and they invariably require qui rather than que when the antecedent is the subject of the relative clause. This distinction has important implications for reading comprehension and writing instruction, as the semantic difference between restrictive and non-restrictive modification is frequently a source of interpretive error for learners.

5. Completive Clauses

5.1 Que-Clauses and Mood Selection

Completive clauses introduced by que — the most frequent subordinate clause type in French — occupy argument positions within the matrix clause, functioning as subject complements (Il est certain qu'il viendra), direct object complements (Je sais qu'il viendra), or predicative complements (Le fait est qu'il est parti). The grammatical behavior of que-clauses is shaped primarily by the mood of the embedded verb, which is selected by the semantic properties of the matrix predicate in a pattern that constitutes one of the most systematically studied and pedagogically challenging aspects of French grammar (Confais, 1995).

The distribution of indicative and subjunctive in que-clauses follows a broad semantic principle: predicates that assert the truth of their complement — verbs of cognition (savoir, croire, penser), perception (voir, entendre), and communication (dire, annoncer) — typically select the indicative: Je sais qu'il est là ("I know he is there"). Predicates that express an orientation toward a possible or desired state of affairs — verbs of volition (vouloir, désirer, souhaiter), emotion (regretter, être heureux que), and doubt (douter, ne pas croire) — select the subjunctive: Je veux qu'il vienne ("I want him to come"); Je regrette qu'il soit parti ("I regret that he has left"). Impersonal expressions of necessity, possibility, and evaluation constitute a further major category of subjunctive selection: Il faut qu'il vienne ("It is necessary that he come"); Il est possible qu'elle ait raison ("It is possible that she is right").

The interaction between negation and mood selection adds a further layer of complexity. Certain predicates that select the indicative in affirmative contexts shift to the subjunctive when negated or interrogated: Je crois qu'il viendra (indicative, affirmative) → Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne (subjunctive, negative). This alternation reflects the semantic shift from assertion (affirmative) to doubt or negative evaluation (negative/interrogative) and has no direct equivalent in most other languages known by French learners.

5.2 Infinitival Complements

When the subject of the complement clause is coreferential with the subject of the matrix clause, French typically requires an infinitival rather than a finite que-clause complement: Je veux venir (not *Je veux que je vienne) ("I want to come"). This obligatory subject-control infinitivalization — governed by what generative syntax describes as the Equi-NP deletion rule — applies across a wide range of complement-taking predicates and contrasts with the pattern in many other languages, including English (which also requires infinitivalization in such contexts) and Azerbaijani (which does not). The preposition introducing the infinitival complement — de or à — is lexically conditioned by the matrix predicate: J'essaie de comprendre; J'apprends à nager; Je commence à comprendre. This lexical conditioning means that infinitival complementation cannot be analyzed as a uniform syntactic construction but requires predicate-specific knowledge that learners must develop through exposure and explicit instruction.

6. Adverbial Clauses

6.1 Typology and Formal Markers

Adverbial clauses in French constitute the most semantically diverse category of subordination, encompassing causal, temporal, conditional, final, concessive, consecutive, comparative, and manner relations between the subordinate clause and the matrix clause. Each adverbial relation is expressed by a distinctive set of subordinating conjunctions whose distribution reflects semantic nuances of information structure and speaker perspective that pedagogical grammars frequently underspecify (Berthonneau & Cadiot, 1993).

Causal clauses are introduced by parce que, puisque, car, and comme, which differ along several pragmatic dimensions. Parce que is the neutral causal conjunction, introducing new causal information in response to an implicit or explicit question: Il est parti parce qu'il était fatigué ("He left because he was tired"). Puisque presupposes that the cause is already known to the interlocutor and introduces it as a reminder or justification: Puisque tu le sais, agis en conséquence ("Since you know it, act accordingly"). Car is a coordinating rather than subordinating conjunction — it introduces independent clauses rather than embedded ones — and carries a more formal, explanatory register: Il est parti, car il était épuisé ("He left, for he was exhausted"). Comme introduces a causal clause that typically precedes the main clause: Comme il était tard, il est parti ("As it was late, he left"). These pragmatic distinctions between near-synonymous causal connectors constitute a significant pedagogical challenge because learners must develop sensitivity to presupposition structure and register that transcends purely grammatical rule-following.

6.2 Conditional and Concessive Clauses

Conditional clauses in French are introduced by si (with strict tense sequence constraints) and by a range of conjunctional phrases — à condition que, pourvu que, à moins que, en supposant que — that select the subjunctive and encode fine semantic distinctions of conditionality. The si-conditional system is governed by a well-known tense-mood sequence: Si + present indicative → future (real condition: Si tu viens, je serai content); Si + imperfect → conditional (counterfactual: Si tu venais, je serais content); Si + pluperfect → past conditional (past counterfactual: Si tu étais venu, j'aurais été content). This three-way system of conditional factuality — real, hypothetical, and counterfactual — is syntactically encoded through tense and mood selection in a way that has no direct parallel in Azerbaijani or in many other languages, making the conditional system one of the most challenging domains of French grammar for learners from typologically distant backgrounds.

Concessive clauses introduce an adversative relation — they acknowledge a circumstance that might be expected to prevent the main clause event but fails to do so. French concessive conjunctions — bien que, quoique, encore que — all select the subjunctive: Bien qu'il soit malade, il travaille ("Although he is ill, he works"). This subjunctive requirement reflects the semantics of concession: by selecting the subjunctive rather than the indicative, the speaker signals that the concessive proposition is acknowledged as a presupposed or granted circumstance rather than asserted as new factual information. The semantic interface between syntactic mood selection and pragmatic presupposition is one of the most theoretically productive dimensions of French subordination and one that merits more systematic treatment in pedagogical materials than it typically receives.

6.3 Temporal and Final Clauses

Temporal clauses are introduced by quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que (simultaneous or sequential), avant que (anterior, + subjunctive), après que (posterior, + indicative — though colloquial usage is increasingly shifting toward the subjunctive under analogy with avant que), pendant que, and tandis que (durative). The mood distinction between avant que (subjunctive) and après que (indicative) reflects a semantic principle: the event introduced by avant que is prospective and therefore non-factive at the time of speech, while the event introduced by après que is retrospective and therefore factive. This principled semantic explanation for what might otherwise appear as arbitrary mood selection is an important pedagogical resource.

Final clauses — clauses expressing purpose — are introduced by pour que, afin que, and de peur que (negative purpose), all selecting the subjunctive. When the subject of the final clause is coreferential with the matrix subject, an infinitival construction with pour is obligatory: Je parle lentement pour qu'il comprenne (different subjects, finite subjunctive) versus Je parle lentement pour être compris (same subject, infinitive). This parallel with completive infinitivalization highlights the underlying grammatical principle — that subject coreferentiality triggers infinitivalization across multiple subordination types — and provides a conceptual generalization that can significantly reduce the learning burden for students who have grasped its scope.

7. Comparative Perspective: French and Azerbaijani

A brief comparative analysis of French and Azerbaijani complex sentence structure illuminates the specific challenges facing Azerbaijani learners of French and the typological dimensions of subordination more broadly. Azerbaijani, a verb-final agglutinative language of the Oghuz branch of Turkic, deploys a fundamentally different strategy for expressing subordination (Johanson & Csató, 1998; Asgarova, 2024). While French subordination is characterized by the use of overt subordinating conjunctions and relative pronouns that introduce finite embedded clauses with distinct mood marking, Azerbaijani makes extensive use of nominalized and participial verbal forms — deverbal nouns and converbs — to encode relations that French expresses through finite subordinate clauses. The Azerbaijani equivalent of a French relative clause is typically a participial modifier that precedes the head noun within the NP, without a relative pronoun: French L'homme que je vois ("The man whom I see") corresponds to Azerbaijani gördüyüm adam, where gördüyüm is a nominalized verbal form meaning "the one whom I see" functioning as a prenominal modifier.

This typological contrast — between French postposed finite relative clauses introduced by a relative pronoun and Azerbaijani prenominal participial modifiers — is one of the most systematically significant structural differences affecting Azerbaijani learners of French. It means that the learner must not only acquire the French relative pronouns and their distributional constraints but must reconceptualize the syntactic position of the modifier relative to the head — from prenominal to postnominal — and the structural type of the relativization strategy — from participial to finite clausal. Similarly, the French subjunctive has no direct functional equivalent in Azerbaijani, where the semantic and pragmatic distinctions encoded by the French indicative-subjunctive alternation are expressed through modal particles, verbal suffixes, and lexical means rather than through a grammaticalized mood system.

8. The Classification Table of French Subordinate Clause Types

The following table provides a systematic classification of the principal types of subordinate clauses in French, organized by clause type, formal marker, syntactic function, and example.

Table 1. Classification of Subordinate Clause Types in French

Clause Type	Connector / Marker	Syntactic Function	French Example
Relative clause	*qui, que, dont, où, lequel*	Nominal modifier	*L'homme qui parle*
Completive clause (subject)	*que + indicative/subjunctive*	Subject complement	*Qu'il vienne est certain*
Completive clause (object)	*que + indicative/subjunctive*	Direct object	*Je sais qu'il viendra*
Causal adverbial	*parce que, puisque, car*	Cause	*Il est parti parce qu'il était fatigué*
Temporal adverbial	*quand, lorsque, dès que*	Time	*Quand il arriva, elle partait*
Conditional adverbial	*si, à condition que*	Condition	*Si tu venais, je resterais*
Concessive adverbial	*bien que, quoique*	Concession	*Bien qu'il soit malade, il travaille*
Final adverbial	*pour que, afin que*	Purpose	*Je parle lentement pour qu'il comprenne*
Infinitival clause	*de / à + infinitive*	Various	*Il essaie de comprendre*

9. Pedagogical Implications

The theoretical analysis of French complex sentence syntax developed in the preceding sections has direct implications for the design of French foreign language instruction, particularly for learners in non-francophone contexts where exposure to authentic French discourse is limited. Several specific pedagogical principles emerge from the analysis.

The first concerns the importance of semantic motivation in mood instruction. Research consistently demonstrates that learners who are taught the subjunctive through memorized lists of triggering verbs and expressions retain this knowledge less effectively and generalize it less accurately than learners who are taught the underlying semantic principle — that the subjunctive encodes a speaker's orientation toward a non-asserted or non-factive proposition — and its application across different syntactic environments (Confais, 1995). A semantically-based approach to mood instruction does not eliminate the need for extensive practice with specific verb-conjunction combinations, but it provides a conceptual scaffold that makes the pattern learnable rather than merely memorizable.

The second principle concerns the pedagogical value of contrastive analysis for learners from typologically distant L1 backgrounds. Explicit instruction that draws learners' attention to the structural contrasts between French and Azerbaijani complex sentence syntax — the postposed versus prenominal position of relative clauses, the finite versus participial strategy for subordination, the mood-based versus modal-particle encoding of epistemic distinctions — equips learners to analyze the interference patterns they are experiencing and to develop more accurate interlanguage representations (Odlin, 1989). This contrastive dimension is particularly important in the Azerbaijani educational context, where the systematic differences between French and Azerbaijani syntax are substantial.

The third principle concerns the use of authentic discourse for syntactic instruction. Complex sentence structures are most effectively acquired when encountered in contexts where their communicative function is transparent — where the causal, conditional, or concessive relation they express is motivated by the discourse and not merely illustrated by decontextualized example sentences. Reading authentic French texts — journalistic articles, literary excerpts, academic prose — and analyzing the subordination structures they contain provides learners with the input conditions necessary for developing the pragmatic sensitivity to connector selection and mood choice that purely formal instruction cannot achieve (Riegel, Pellat, & Rioul, 2018).

10. Conclusion

This article has provided a comprehensive theoretical and pedagogical analysis of the syntactic structure of complex sentences in French, examining relative clauses, completive clauses, and adverbial clauses across their formal, functional, and discourse-pragmatic dimensions. The analysis has demonstrated that French complex sentence syntax is characterized by a high degree of formal differentiation — in the inventory of subordinating conjunctions, relative pronouns, and mood selection constraints — that encodes semantically and pragmatically significant distinctions with considerable precision. The subjunctive mood, in particular, emerges as a structurally productive category whose distribution reflects the interface between syntax, semantics, and discourse in ways that are theoretically revealing and pedagogically challenging.

The comparative analysis of French and Azerbaijani complex sentence structure has highlighted the typological distance between the two languages — particularly in the strategies for relative clause formation and the encoding of modality — and has established the specific learning challenges that this distance creates for Azerbaijani learners of French. These challenges are addressable through pedagogical approaches that combine explicit contrastive instruction, semantically motivated mood teaching, and extensive exposure to authentic French discourse.

Future research should investigate the acquisition sequence of French subordination types by Azerbaijani learners through longitudinal corpus studies, examine the effectiveness of semantically-based versus form-focused approaches to subjunctive instruction in Azerbaijani educational contexts, and explore the role of pragmatic and discourse-level instruction in developing accurate connector selection. The syntactic structure of the French complex sentence remains one of the most theoretically rich and pedagogically consequential domains of the language, and its systematic investigation contributes to both the descriptive grammar of French and the applied linguistics of French language teaching.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: İ.Q.; Methodology: İ.Q.; Investigation: İ.Q.; Writing – original draft: İ.Q.; Writing – review & editing: İ.Q.

References

Asgarova, M. (2024). Linguistic influences on French: A historical perspective on Germanic and English borrowings. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 1(2), 3–10.

Asgarova, M. (2024). Romanticism in French literature: The legacy of Victor Hugo and Alexandre Dumas. Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum, 1(2), 130–136.

Qasımova, İ. (2024). French linguists' syntactic views. Scientific Reports of Bukhara State University.

Qasımova, İ. (2025). Formes d'analyse en syntaxe française moderne et leurs applications en linguistique appliquée. Porta Universorum, 1(3), 307–320.

Berthonneau, A.-M., & Cadiot, P. (1993). Les connecteurs: Pragmatique et linguistique. Larousse.

Chomsky, N. (1995). The minimalist program. MIT Press.

Confais, J.-P. (1995). Temps, mode, aspect: Les approches des morphèmes verbaux et leurs problèmes à l'exemple du français et de l'allemand (2nd ed.). Presses Universitaires du Mirail.

Grevisse, M., & Goosse, A. (2016). Le Bon Usage: Grammaire française (16th ed.). De Boeck Supérieur.

Halliday, M. A. K., & Matthiessen, C. M. I. M. (2014). Halliday's introduction to functional grammar (4th ed.). Routledge.

Johanson, L., & Csató, É. Á. (Eds.). (1998). The Turkic languages. Routledge.

Keenan, E. L., & Comrie, B. (1977). Noun phrase accessibility and universal grammar. Linguistic Inquiry, 8(1), 63–99.

Kerimova, G. (2025). Phonetics of the French language: Sounds, structure, and pronunciation analysis.

Maiden, M., & Smith, J. C. (Eds.). (2000). The Oxford handbook of the history of linguistics. Oxford University Press.

Nuri, A., & Ismayilli, T. (2025). The importance of student motivation. Science, Education and Innovations in the Context of Modern Problems, 8(6), 260–262.

Odlin, T. (1989). Language transfer: Cross-linguistic influence in language learning. Cambridge University Press.

Riegel, M., Pellat, J.-C., & Rioul, R. (2018). Grammaire méthodique du français (7th ed.). Presses Universitaires de France.

Togeby, K. (1982). Grammaire française: Vol. 3. Les formes impersonnelles du verbe et la subordination. Akademisk Forlag.

Wilmet, M. (2010). Grammaire critique du français (5th ed.). De Boeck & Larcier.

Received: 2 April 2026
Accepted: 17 May 2026
Published: 19 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Language Acquisition Theories and Their Applications in Modern Language Education

[1] **Roya Zeynalova**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602032

Abstract. *Language acquisition is one of the most significant and complex fields in linguistics, psychology, cognitive science, and education. It examines how children acquire their first language and how adolescents and adults learn additional languages in formal, informal, multilingual, and technology-mediated environments. During the last century, several influential theories have attempted to explain this process, including behaviorist, innatist, cognitive, interactionist, sociocultural, input-based, and output-oriented approaches. Each theory focuses on a different aspect of language development, such as imitation, reinforcement, biological predisposition, mental growth, comprehensible input, social interaction, scaffolding, motivation, identity, and cultural context. This article reviews the main theories of language acquisition, compares their central principles, evaluates their limitations, and discusses their pedagogical applications. It argues that language acquisition should not be understood as a purely biological, psychological, or social process alone. Rather, it is a dynamic and multidimensional process shaped by the interaction of internal capacities and external learning conditions. The article also considers the growing influence of digital technologies, online platforms, artificial intelligence, and multimedia resources on contemporary language learning. It concludes that effective language teaching requires an integrated approach that combines structured practice, meaningful exposure, interaction, learner autonomy, emotional support, and responsible technological integration.*

Keywords: *language acquisition, second language acquisition, behaviorism, innatism, cognitive theory, sociocultural theory, communicative language teaching, technology*

1. Introduction

Language acquisition is one of the most remarkable abilities of human beings. From an early age, children begin to recognize sounds, attach meaning to words, form phrases, ask questions, and participate in social interaction. This development normally occurs without direct grammatical instruction and often appears effortless. For this reason, language acquisition has attracted the attention of linguists, psychologists, educators, sociologists, and cognitive scientists for many decades. Researchers have tried to explain why children acquire their first language so rapidly,

[1] Zeynalova, R. Teacher, Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: roya.q90@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0004-8712-7975

why second language learning is often more difficult, and how teaching can support learners more effectively.

The importance of language acquisition theory is not limited to academic debate. It has direct relevance to classroom practice. A teacher's understanding of language learning influences lesson planning, grammar teaching, vocabulary instruction, feedback, assessment, classroom interaction, and the use of technology. For example, a teacher influenced by behaviorism may emphasize repetition and correction, while a teacher influenced by sociocultural theory may focus on collaboration, scaffolding, and meaningful communication. In practice, effective teachers usually combine insights from different theories rather than relying on one approach alone.

Language acquisition is also closely connected to globalization, bilingualism, multilingualism, intercultural communication, and digital education. In many contexts, learners need foreign languages for study, employment, migration, international cooperation, and access to information. English, in particular, functions as a global language in science, business, technology, and higher education (Crystal, 2003). At the same time, digital tools have changed how learners access language input, communicate with others, and practice skills outside the classroom (Chapelle, 2001). These changes make it necessary to re-examine classical language acquisition theories in relation to modern educational realities.

This article analyzes the major theories of language acquisition and their applications in education. It discusses behaviorist theory, innatist theory, cognitive theory, interactionist and sociocultural theories, Krashen's Monitor Model, output-oriented perspectives, and the role of technology in language learning. The article also identifies strengths and weaknesses in each approach and argues that language education benefits most from a balanced, theoretically informed, and learner-centered methodology.

2. Behaviorist Theory of Language Acquisition

Behaviorist theory was one of the earliest influential explanations of language learning. It is associated with behaviorist psychology and especially with B. F. Skinner's work Verbal Behavior (1957). According to this perspective, language is learned through imitation, repetition, reinforcement, and habit formation. Children hear linguistic forms in their environment, imitate them, and receive reinforcement when their language use is appropriate. Correct responses may be rewarded through praise, attention, or successful communication, while incorrect responses may be corrected or ignored.

The behaviorist view strongly influenced language teaching in the twentieth century. The Audio-Lingual Method, which became popular in many educational systems, was based on the idea that language learning requires the formation of correct habits (Richards & Rodgers, 2014). Students repeated dialogues, memorized sentence patterns, practiced substitution drills, and imitated native-speaker pronunciation. The main goal was to develop automatic responses and reduce errors through controlled practice.

Behaviorist principles still have practical value. Repetition can help learners remember vocabulary, improve pronunciation, and develop fluency in frequently used structures. Drills may be useful when students need to practice sounds, stress patterns, irregular forms, or grammatical endings. In early stages of learning, controlled repetition can reduce hesitation and increase confidence. For example, repeating common classroom expressions or practicing question forms can help learners internalize useful patterns.

However, behaviorism cannot fully explain language acquisition. Children often produce sentences they have never heard before, which shows that language learning involves creativity rather than simple imitation (Chomsky, 1965). They also make systematic errors, such as overgeneralizing regular past tense forms, which suggests that they actively construct rules rather than merely copying linguistic input. In addition, behaviorism gives limited attention to meaning, cognition, learner motivation, and social interaction. For this reason, modern teachers should use behaviorist techniques selectively: repetition and correction are useful, but they should be connected to meaningful communication and not replace creative language use.

3. Innatist Theory and Universal Grammar

Innatist theory developed as a response to the limitations of behaviorism. Noam Chomsky argued that language acquisition cannot be explained only by imitation and reinforcement because children acquire complex grammatical systems from limited and imperfect input (Chomsky, 1965). In Aspects of the Theory of Syntax, Chomsky emphasized the distinction between linguistic competence and performance and argued that human beings possess an innate capacity for language. One of the most important ideas connected with innatist theory is Universal Grammar, which suggests that human languages share certain underlying principles and that children are biologically prepared to acquire language.

The child is not a passive receiver of linguistic habits but an active mind equipped with the capacity to identify grammatical patterns. This view explains why children can acquire language rapidly even when the input they receive is incomplete, fragmented, or not explicitly instructional. In education, innatist theory has encouraged teachers to value rich and meaningful language exposure. Learners need access to natural input, authentic communication, stories, conversations, songs, reading materials, and contextualized examples. Grammar should not be taught only as isolated rules; learners should also encounter grammatical structures in meaningful discourse.

At the same time, innatist theory has been criticized for paying insufficient attention to social, cultural, and affective factors. It explains the biological possibility of language acquisition but does not fully explain how classroom interaction, identity, motivation, or cultural context influence learning (Ellis, 1997). It is also more directly applicable to first language acquisition than to adult second language learning, where conscious strategies, prior knowledge, and educational experience play a larger role. Nevertheless, innatist theory remains highly influential because it highlights the creative and rule-governed nature of language.

4. Cognitive Theory of Language Acquisition

Cognitive theories emphasize the relationship between language development and general intellectual development. Jean Piaget argued that children construct knowledge through active interaction with their environment (Piaget, 1952). According to this view, language acquisition is connected to cognitive maturation, symbolic thinking, memory, classification, problem-solving, and conceptual development. Language does not develop separately from thought; rather, it reflects and supports the learner's broader mental growth. In cognitive theory, learners are active participants in the learning process who observe, compare, classify, infer, test hypotheses, and reorganize knowledge.

Cognitive theory has important educational implications. It supports learner-centered instruction, discovery learning, problem-solving tasks, reading strategies, visual organizers, and reflective activities. Instead of presenting grammar as a list of rules to memorize, teachers can guide students to discover patterns from examples. Vocabulary can be taught through semantic fields, word families, concept maps, and contextual usage. Reading and listening activities can include prediction, inference, summarizing, and critical thinking. This theory also emphasizes metacognition — learners' awareness of their own learning processes. Students who understand how they learn can plan, monitor, and evaluate their progress more effectively. Teachers can encourage learners to keep language journals, reflect on errors, set goals, and choose strategies for vocabulary, grammar, listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

However, cognitive approaches may underestimate the social dimension of language learning. Learners do not develop language only through individual mental processing. They also need interaction, feedback, cultural participation, and communicative purpose (Brown, 2007). Therefore, cognitive theory is most effective when combined with interactionist and sociocultural perspectives.

5. Interactionist and Sociocultural Theories

Interactionist theories argue that language acquisition develops through the interaction between internal learning capacities and external communication. Learners need input, but they also need opportunities to negotiate meaning, ask for clarification, receive feedback, and modify their language. Michael Long's Interaction Hypothesis emphasizes that conversational interaction can make input more comprehensible and help learners notice gaps in their language knowledge (Long, 1996). Learners also develop language through non-verbal communication, interaction, and contextual understanding (Ismayilli, 2024).

In the classroom, interactionist principles support pair work, group discussions, interviews, role plays, information-gap tasks, debates, and problem-solving activities. These tasks require learners to use language for real purposes. During interaction, students may realize that their message is not understood, reformulate their sentences, ask questions, or receive corrective feedback. Such processes can strengthen both fluency and accuracy. Jerome Bruner's concept of the Language

Acquisition Support System further emphasizes the importance of social support (Bruner, 1983). While Chomsky focused on internal linguistic capacity, Bruner highlighted the role of caregivers, routines, shared attention, and communicative scaffolding. In educational settings, teachers can perform a similar supportive role by modeling language, providing prompts, giving examples, and gradually reducing assistance.

Sociocultural theory, associated with Lev Vygotsky, places social interaction and culture at the center of learning (Vygotsky, 1978). A central concept is the Zone of Proximal Development (ZPD), which refers to the difference between what learners can do independently and what they can achieve with guidance. In language education, this means that students can perform at a higher level when they receive appropriate support from teachers or peers — a process commonly called scaffolding. Sociocultural theory also views language as a cultural tool for thinking, identity, and participation. Learners acquire language not only to form correct sentences but also to participate in social practices. Therefore, classroom activities should be meaningful, collaborative, and culturally relevant, and teachers should create communities of learning where students feel that their voices, experiences, and backgrounds are valued.

6. Krashen's Monitor Model and Output-Oriented Perspectives

Stephen Krashen's Monitor Model is one of the most influential frameworks in second language acquisition (Krashen, 1982). It includes several interconnected hypotheses: the Acquisition-Learning Hypothesis, the Monitor Hypothesis, the Natural Order Hypothesis, the Input Hypothesis, and the Affective Filter Hypothesis. The model is especially important because it shifted attention toward meaningful input and emotional conditions in language learning.

The Acquisition-Learning Hypothesis distinguishes between subconscious acquisition — which occurs naturally through communication — and conscious learning, which involves explicit knowledge of grammar rules. According to Krashen, acquired knowledge is the basis of fluent communication, whereas learned knowledge may function as a monitor to check or edit language output. The Input Hypothesis states that learners acquire language when exposed to comprehensible input slightly above their current level, expressed as "i + 1." Teachers can provide such input through stories, graded readers, visual support, simplified speech, videos, and contextualized examples. The Affective Filter Hypothesis emphasizes emotional factors such as anxiety, motivation, and self-confidence. A student who fears making mistakes may avoid speaking and may not benefit fully from input. Therefore, teachers should create supportive classrooms where errors are treated as part of learning.

Krashen's theory has been criticized, however, for giving limited attention to language production. Merrill Swain's Output Hypothesis argues that learners also need opportunities to speak and write, because output pushes them to notice gaps in their knowledge, test hypotheses, and develop more precise language control (Swain, 1985). Effective teaching should therefore balance input, interaction, and output: learners should listen and read extensively, but they should also speak, write, negotiate meaning, and receive feedback.

7. Applications of Language Acquisition Theories in Education

Language acquisition theories have significantly influenced teaching methods, curriculum design, classroom practices, and assessment. Modern language education benefits from combining insights from different theories according to learners' needs, proficiency levels, educational goals, and cultural contexts. Behaviorist principles can be applied through pronunciation drills, vocabulary recycling, controlled grammar practice, and memorization of useful expressions to develop accuracy and automaticity — though always followed by communicative tasks. Innatist perspectives encourage teachers to provide rich and meaningful input through authentic materials, stories, songs, and extensive reading, helping students notice grammar in context rather than as abstract rules.

Cognitive theory supports activities that develop thinking skills and learner autonomy: problem-solving tasks, projects, text analysis, vocabulary mapping, comparison activities, and reflective journals. Interactionist and sociocultural theories underpin communicative language teaching through pair work, group projects, peer feedback, debates, role plays, and collaborative writing. Teachers should scaffold learning by providing models, prompts, sentence frames, examples, and constructive feedback, gradually reducing support as learners become more confident. Assessment should also reflect these theoretical insights. While traditional grammar tests measure certain aspects of knowledge, performance-based assessment, oral presentations, portfolios, writing tasks, interviews, projects, and classroom observation can evaluate learners' ability to use language in real-life contexts. A balanced assessment system should consider accuracy, fluency, comprehension, interaction, vocabulary use, pragmatic competence, and progress over time.

8. Technology and Language Acquisition

Technology has transformed language learning by expanding access to input, interaction, feedback, and independent practice (Chapelle, 2001). Digital tools, mobile applications, online platforms, podcasts, videos, virtual classrooms, learning management systems, and artificial intelligence systems allow learners to engage with language beyond the physical classroom. These tools can support listening, speaking, reading, writing, vocabulary development, pronunciation, and intercultural communication. From a theoretical perspective, technology can support several dimensions of language acquisition simultaneously: it can provide repetition and immediate feedback (behaviorist principles), increase exposure to authentic input (innatist and input-based approaches), encourage problem-solving and self-regulation (cognitive theory), and create opportunities for online interaction and intercultural exchange (interactionist and sociocultural theories).

Artificial intelligence and adaptive learning systems offer additional possibilities in language education (Zeynalova, 2025). They can provide individualized exercises, instant grammar feedback, conversational practice, pronunciation support, and writing suggestions. Chatbots and AI-supported platforms can give learners more opportunities to practice language, especially when classroom time is limited. However, teachers should guide students in using these tools critically, as AI feedback is not always accurate and language learning still requires human interaction, cultural awareness, and communicative responsibility.

Technology also presents challenges. Unequal access to devices and internet connection may create educational inequality. Excessive dependence on digital tools may reduce face-to-face communication, attentional depth, and sustained reading. Privacy, academic honesty, and information quality are further concerns. Technology should therefore be integrated according to clear pedagogical goals rather than simply because it is modern. A blended approach is often most effective: students may use digital resources for preparation, vocabulary review, listening practice, or writing revision, while classroom time is used for discussion, collaboration, feedback, and communicative tasks. In this model, technology complements the teacher rather than replacing the teacher, expanding learning opportunities while preserving the social and human nature of language acquisition.

9. Conclusion

Language acquisition theories provide essential insights into how individuals develop linguistic competence. Behaviorist theory explains the role of imitation, repetition, reinforcement, and habit formation. Innatist theory highlights biological preparedness and the creative nature of grammar. Cognitive theory connects language learning with mental development, active construction, strategy use, and learner autonomy. Interactionist theory emphasizes communication, negotiation of meaning, and feedback. Sociocultural theory demonstrates that language develops through social participation, scaffolding, culture, and identity. Krashen's model stresses comprehensible input and emotional conditions, while output-oriented perspectives remind educators that learners also need meaningful opportunities to produce language.

The main conclusion is that no single theory can fully explain the complexity of language acquisition. Language learning is influenced by biological capacities, cognitive development, social interaction, emotional factors, cultural context, educational methods, and technological resources. For this reason, modern language teaching should be integrated and flexible. Teachers should combine structured practice with authentic input, communicative tasks, collaborative learning, reflection, feedback, and appropriate technology use. A theoretically informed teacher can make better decisions in the classroom — understanding when repetition is useful, when explanation is necessary, when interaction is essential, when emotional support is needed, and when technology can enhance learning. Ultimately, effective language education requires balance: accuracy and fluency, input and output, individual cognition and social interaction, traditional instruction and digital innovation. This balanced approach can help learners become more confident, competent, and autonomous language users.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: R.Z.; Methodology: R.Z.; Investigation: R.Z.; Writing – original draft: R.Z.; Writing – review & editing: R.Z.

References

Brown, H. D. (2007). Principles of language learning and teaching (5th ed.). Pearson Longman.

Bruner, J. S. (1983). Child's talk: Learning to use language. Oxford University Press.

Chapelle, C. A. (2001). Computer applications in second language acquisition: Foundations for teaching, testing and research. Cambridge University Press.

Chomsky, N. (1965). Aspects of the theory of syntax. MIT Press.

Crystal, D. (2003). English as a global language (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Ellis, R. (1997). Second language acquisition. Oxford University Press.

Ismayilli, T. (2024). The impact of non-verbal communication on the language learning process. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 1(2), 47–55.

Krashen, S. D. (1982). Principles and practice in second language acquisition. Pergamon Press.

Long, M. H. (1996). The role of the linguistic environment in second language acquisition. In W. Ritchie & T. Bhatia (Eds.), Handbook of second language acquisition (pp. 413–468). Academic Press.

Piaget, J. (1952). The origins of intelligence in children. International Universities Press.

Richards, J. C., & Rodgers, T. S. (2014). Approaches and methods in language teaching (3rd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Skinner, B. F. (1957). Verbal behavior. Appleton-Century-Crofts.

Swain, M. (1985). Communicative competence: Some roles of comprehensible input and comprehensible output in its development. In S. Gass & C. Madden (Eds.), Input in second language acquisition (pp. 235–253). Newbury House.

Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes. Harvard University Press.

Zeynalova, R. (2025). The impact of digital tools on English language teaching: Opportunities and challenges. German International Journal of Modern Science, 112.

Received: 10 April 2026
Accepted: 17 May 2026
Published: 19 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

Between Global Reach and Cultural Erasure: English Hegemony, Linguistic Diversity, and the Politics of Language Survival in the Age of Globalization

[1] Ilaha Ashrafova, [2] Zeynab Safarova

https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602033

Abstract. *The unprecedented global ascendancy of English as the dominant medium of international communication, scientific discourse, and digital exchange has generated a debate of profound theoretical and sociolinguistic consequence: does the structural dominance of a single global language constitute an existential threat to the world's extraordinary reservoir of linguistic diversity? This article systematically investigates the relationship between English global hegemony and minority language decline, examining the sociolinguistic, socioeconomic, educational, and ideological mechanisms through which language shift occurs in multilingual communities. Drawing on theoretical frameworks of linguistic imperialism, language ecology, and reversing language shift, the study analyzes the multifactorial nature of language endangerment, demonstrating that the decline of minority languages is not reducible to English dominance alone but results from the convergent operation of globalization, urbanization, migration, educational policy, technological mediation, and the symbolic economies of prestige that determine which languages are perceived as valuable. The analysis identifies the conditions under which English and minority languages can genuinely coexist within sustainable multilingual ecosystems, and proposes the principles of an ecologically balanced language policy framework that supports linguistic diversity as a form of intangible cultural heritage while enabling communities to access the communicative and economic resources that global English provides. The article argues that the central challenge is not the fact of English's global reach but the ideological conditions under which it operates — conditions that can be contested, reformed, and redirected through principled multilingual education, community-based language revitalization, and institutional recognition of linguistic rights.*

Keywords: *English as a global language, language extinction, linguistic diversity, globalization, linguistic imperialism, language ecology, language preservation, multilingualism*

[1] Ashrafova, I. Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: ilahaashrafova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0000-2127-3487

[2] Safarova, Z. Nakhchivan State University, Nakhchivan, Azerbaijan. Email: zeynepseferova008@gmail.com. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0001-0213-258X

1. Introduction

Language has always been one of the most fundamental elements of human identity, culture, and collective memory. Every language constitutes an irreplaceable system for encoding a community's history, cosmology, ecological knowledge, aesthetic sensibility, and social relations — what Maffi (2005) terms biocultural diversity, the inseparable interdependence of biological, cultural, and linguistic diversity that constitutes the adaptive heritage of humanity. Today, more than 7,000 languages are spoken around the world, yet the majority of them are endangered and at accelerating risk of disappearance (Crystal, 2003). UNESCO estimates that approximately half of the world's languages may be lost by the end of the twenty-first century if current trajectories are not reversed, representing an irreversible diminution of human cognitive and cultural diversity comparable in magnitude to the loss of species in biological ecosystems.

At the same time, English has become the dominant global language of education, science, technology, business, tourism, and international communication. Due to globalization and technological development, the influence of English continues to expand rapidly across different societies and cultures (Phillipson, 2009). The ascendancy of English is not merely a demographic or functional phenomenon — it is an ideological one. English has been constituted as the language of modernity, rationality, and economic opportunity in ways that systematically devalue other languages and the communities that speak them, creating what Bourdieu (1991) terms a symbolic economy in which linguistic capital is unequally distributed and in which speaking the dominant language is structurally rewarded while speaking minority or subordinate languages may carry social stigma.

Millions of students learn English as a foreign language because it provides access to better educational opportunities, international careers, and global communication networks (Elisoy, 2024). English is also the primary language of the internet, social media platforms, scientific publications, and multinational companies. As a result, individuals with English proficiency often have greater access to information and economic opportunities than those without it (Ashrafova, 2025). However, this functional value of English comes at a cost when it is pursued at the expense of linguistic and cultural diversity — when communities abandon their languages not from a free choice but under structural compulsion created by the unequal distribution of social and economic rewards.

This article investigates the complex and theoretically contested question of whether English is "killing" other languages, examining the sociolinguistic mechanisms of language shift and language endangerment, the role of ideological and structural factors beyond English itself, the theoretical debate between linguistic imperialism and its critics, and the conditions under which sustainable multilingualism can be achieved. The analysis draws on the theoretical frameworks of Phillipson (2009), Fishman (1991), Skutnabb-Kangas (2000), Crystal (2003), and Haugen's language ecology paradigm, supplemented by research on the Azerbaijani and Central Asian contexts (Ibrahim Zakir oğlu, 2022; Ismayilova, 2023; Naghiyeva, 2024).

2. Methodology

This study employed a systematic descriptive and analytical research methodology to examine the influence of English on other languages and its role in global language shift. The research drew on an extensive review of sociolinguistic, policy, and educational literature, encompassing peer-reviewed journal articles, academic monographs, and institutional reports from UNESCO, the Endangered Languages Project, and national linguistic policy bodies. Primary theoretical frameworks were drawn from Phillipson's (2009) linguistic imperialism theory, Fishman's (1991) reversing language shift model, Skutnabb-Kangas's (2000) linguistic genocide framework, Crystal's (2003) descriptive account of English as a global language, and Haugen's language ecology paradigm.

The analytical dimension of the research applied critical discourse analysis to evaluate the ideological dimensions of English dominance, examining how language is positioned within educational policy, media discourse, and economic institutions. Local and regional research — including studies on globalization and linguistic identity in Azerbaijani contexts (Ibrahim Zakir oğlu, 2022; Ismayilova, 2023; Naghiyeva, 2024; Zeynalova, 2022) — was integrated alongside international scholarship to ensure the analysis is responsive to the specific sociolinguistic contexts that are most directly relevant to the journal's readership. The study adopted a theoretically pluralistic approach, presenting multiple scholarly perspectives on the contested question of whether English causes language loss, rather than advancing a single determinist account.

3. Literature Review

3.1 English as a Global Language: Origins and Mechanisms

Crystal's (2003) authoritative account identifies the global spread of English as the product of three successive historical phases: the colonial expansion of British political and economic power from the sixteenth century onward, which implanted English across North America, Australasia, Southern Africa, South Asia, and the Pacific; the emergence of the United States as the dominant military, economic, and cultural power of the twentieth century, which consolidated English as the language of science, commerce, and popular culture globally; and the digital revolution, which established English as the default language of the internet, computing, and global information networks. These three historical forces are distinct in their mechanisms but converging in their effects: they have created a situation in which English occupies a structurally dominant position relative to all other languages across the domains of greatest social and economic value.

Phillipson (2009) offers a more critical account of this ascendancy through his concept of linguistic imperialism — the proposition that the global dominance of English reflects and perpetuates structural relations of power between anglophone core nations and multilingual periphery nations, and that this dominance is actively maintained through institutional mechanisms including educational policy, language testing regimes, publishing practices, and development aid conditionalities. Phillipson's framework positions English not merely as a language that happens to be widely spoken but as a site of ideological contestation in which the interests of anglophone-dominant institutions systematically override the language rights and cultural interests of non-anglophone communities.

Skutnabb-Kangas (2000) extends this analysis to its most radical formulation, arguing that the structural conditions under which minority languages are suppressed in formal education — a process she terms "linguistic genocide" — constitute a violation of internationally recognized cultural and linguistic rights. Her framework identifies educational language policy as the primary mechanism through which minority languages are devalued and displaced: when children are educated exclusively in a dominant language at the expense of their first language, the intergenerational transmission of minority languages is interrupted with consequences that are frequently irreversible.

3.2 Language Ecology and the Multifactorial Nature of Language Loss

Fishman's (1991) framework for reversing language shift provides a more nuanced account of the mechanisms of language loss that situates English dominance within a broader ecology of factors. For Fishman, the critical variable in language maintenance or loss is not simply the presence of a dominant language but the degree to which minority language communities maintain intergenerational transmission — the passing of the language from parents to children within the family and community domain. His Graded Intergenerational Disruption Scale (GIDS) identifies the conditions of language shift from minimal erosion to near-total language death, providing a diagnostic tool for evaluating where specific languages sit on the continuum and what interventions are most urgently needed. Fishman's analysis demonstrates that language shift is driven primarily by social, economic, and educational pressures that lead communities to value the dominant language more highly than their own — pressures in which English is one factor among many, alongside urbanization, migration, employment structures, and the prestige economy of education.

Local researchers have examined how these global dynamics manifest in specific regional contexts. Ibrahim Zakir oğlu (2022) analyzes how globalization affects linguistic identity and cultural transmission in Azerbaijani society, arguing that while English provides communicative advantages, societies must develop institutional mechanisms for protecting their linguistic heritage alongside global language competence. Ismayilova (2023) examines the role of English in intercultural communication and foreign language education, noting that excessive prioritization of English in academic and social environments may inadvertently diminish the perceived value of native language use among younger generations. Naghiyeva (2024) documents the specific role of digital communication platforms and social media in spreading English vocabulary and discourse patterns among young speakers, a process that may influence native language use through mechanisms of lexical borrowing, code-switching, and the gradual displacement of native language registers in online communication.

3.3 The Case Against Linguistic Determinism

The linguistic imperialism framework has also attracted significant theoretical critique. Canagarajah (1999) argues that the model underestimates the agency of non-anglophone communities in appropriating, adapting, and resisting English for their own purposes, and that it reproduces a binary of dominant and subordinate languages that obscures the complex negotiations of identity and power that characterize multilingual communities. Crystal (2003) himself cautions against the assumption that English is inherently destructive of linguistic diversity, pointing to historical and contemporary examples of communities that have maintained vibrant minority languages alongside high levels of English proficiency — Welsh in Britain, Catalan in Spain, and various indigenous languages in New Zealand and Canada — as evidence that language shift is a choice modulated by institutional support and community will rather than an inevitable consequence of English exposure. Elisoy (2024) similarly argues that within educational systems that are thoughtfully designed, English learning and native language maintenance are not competitors but complementary goals whose simultaneous pursuit is both practically achievable and pedagogically valuable.

4. Discussion

4.1 The Mechanisms of Language Shift

The evidence reviewed in this study confirms that the decline of minority languages in contexts of English dominance is not a simple matter of one language displacing another but a complex sociolinguistic process mediated by multiple intersecting mechanisms. The most powerful of these mechanisms is the symbolic economy of language prestige, in which English is positioned — through educational policy, media representation, employment markets, and social norms — as the language of modernity, opportunity, and intelligence, while minority languages are implicitly or explicitly devalued as backward, parochial, or economically irrelevant. When younger generations internalize this symbolic hierarchy, the consequence is not merely a preference for English in certain domains but a fundamental disruption of intergenerational language transmission: children who grow up associating their parents' language with limited opportunity may choose not to transmit it to their own children, initiating the process of language death that Fishman (1991) identifies as the most lethal threat to minority language survival.

Globalization and digital communication significantly amplify these mechanisms. International movies, music, online platforms, and social media expose people to English on a daily basis and create powerful associations between English and desirable cultural identities (Naghiyeva, 2024). Constant interaction with English-language content encourages individuals, especially young people, to adopt English vocabulary and expressions in everyday communication, a process of lexical infiltration that can gradually transform native language registers into hybrid varieties and eventually displace those registers altogether in domains where English has established structural dominance. In some communities, parents choose to communicate with their children in English in order to maximize their educational and professional opportunities, interrupting the most fundamental mechanism of language transmission at its source.

However, the research also confirms that English alone is not responsible for language disappearance. Social, political, and economic factors — migration, urbanization, educational policies, and economic pressures — often exert more direct and immediate influence on language use than English exposure per se (Fishman, 1991; Ibrahim Zakir oğlu, 2022). Communities that maintain strong institutional support for their minority languages — through bilingual education, official recognition, media presence, and cultural programming — can sustain intergenerational transmission even in contexts of high English exposure. The Azerbaijani context illustrates this dual dynamic: while English proficiency is increasingly valued in educational and professional contexts (Ashrafova, 2025), the Azerbaijani language retains strong institutional support through state language policy and educational systems, demonstrating that the relationship between global language exposure and minority language maintenance is mediated by institutional and political choices rather than determined by linguistic competition alone.

4.2 Coexistence, Ecology, and the Politics of Multilingualism

The most theoretically productive framework for addressing the question of English and linguistic diversity is not the competitive metaphor of language killing but the ecological metaphor of language diversity — the idea that linguistic diversity, like biological diversity, is a form of collective inheritance whose value exceeds the sum of its individual components and whose loss constitutes an irreversible impoverishment of human cognitive and cultural resources (Maffi, 2005). Within this framework, the question is not whether English can be stopped — it cannot, and the attempt to do so would impose its own costs on communities that need access to the communicative resources English provides — but whether the structural conditions in which English operates can be reformed to permit genuine multilingual coexistence rather than a de facto hierarchy in which English dominates and minority languages survive only at the margins.

Educational institutions, governments, and cultural organizations play an indispensable role in creating these conditions of genuine multilingualism (Ibrahim Zakir oğlu, 2022; Zeynalova, 2022). Bilingual education programs that develop competence in both the national language and English, curriculum policies that treat minority language literacy as a core educational goal rather than a supplementary extra, media and cultural policies that ensure minority languages have a visible and prestigious presence in public life, and language revitalization programs that engage communities in the active reclamation of endangered languages — these are the institutional mechanisms through which linguistic diversity can be actively maintained rather than passively mourned

(Babayev, 2023). The research of Orucova (2023) further highlights the importance of educational environments that cultivate positive language attitudes, enabling students to develop pride in their linguistic identities alongside competence in global communication languages.

5. Conclusion

The global spread of English represents one of the most consequential sociolinguistic developments in human history — a development that has simultaneously expanded the communicative possibilities of billions of people and created structural conditions in which the world's extraordinary linguistic diversity is under sustained and accelerating threat. This article has argued that the question of whether English is "killing" other languages cannot be answered with a simple yes or no, because the causal relationship between English dominance and minority language decline is mediated by a complex ecology of social, economic, political, and ideological factors that cannot be reduced to the mere presence of English as a widely spoken language.

English is not killing languages directly. It is creating — through its structural positioning in educational, economic, and media systems — the conditions in which communities make rational choices to abandon their languages in pursuit of opportunities that are artificially restricted to English speakers. The remedy is not to restrict English but to dismantle the structural inequalities that make it rational to abandon one's language, by creating educational, economic, and social conditions in which multilingualism is genuinely valued and institutionally supported. The key insight of Fishman's (1991) reversing language shift model — that language maintenance requires not merely the preservation of linguistic forms but the active maintenance of the social contexts in which those forms are transmitted and valued — remains as theoretically indispensable and practically urgent as when it was first formulated.

Ultimately, language is not only a communication tool but a fundamental component of culture, identity, and collective memory. The world's linguistic diversity is an irreplaceable resource — a repository of alternative ways of perceiving, categorizing, and engaging with reality that cannot be recovered once lost. Protecting this diversity alongside enabling access to the opportunities that English provides requires not the suppression of English but the construction of genuinely multilingual societies, educational systems, and symbolic economies in which all languages are recognized as valuable and all communities are empowered to transmit their linguistic heritage to future generations. This is the central challenge for language policy in the age of globalization — and meeting it requires not resignation but principled, informed, and sustained commitment.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: I.A.; Methodology: I.A.; Investigation: I.A.; Writing – original draft: I.A.; Writing – review & editing: I.A.

References

Ashrafova, I. A. (2025). Language and cultural identity in the age of globalization. Philology and Translation Studies, 3(2), 18–25.

Babayev, C. S. (2023). The role of English language teaching in modern education. Nakhchivan State University Scientific Works, 2, 52–59.

Bourdieu, P. (1991). Language and symbolic power (G. Raymond & M. Adamson, Trans.). Polity Press.

Canagarajah, A. S. (1999). Resisting linguistic imperialism in English teaching. Oxford University Press.

Crystal, D. (2003). English as a global language (2nd ed.). Cambridge University Press.

Elisoy, H. (2024). Modern approaches in English language teaching and communication. Foreign Language Teaching Journal, 4(1), 33–41.

Fishman, J. A. (1991). Reversing language shift: Theoretical and empirical foundations of assistance to threatened languages. Multilingual Matters.

Ibrahim Zakir oğlu, Ü. (2022). Globalization and linguistic influence in modern societies. ADU Publishing.

Ibrahimli, N. Q. (2023). Communication skills in foreign language learning. Modern Philological Studies, 5(2), 40–46.

Ismayilova, T. M. (2023). Language diversity and intercultural communication in education. Pedagogical Research Journal, 5(2), 44–50.

Maffi, L. (2005). Linguistic, cultural, and biological diversity. Annual Review of Anthropology, 34(1), 599–617. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.anthro.34.081804.120437

Mehdi, S. H. (2024). The influence of globalization on language and culture. Academic Research Journal, 3(1), 27–34.

Naghiyeva, G. Y. (2024). Communicative competence in foreign language learning. Modern Education Review, 6(1), 61–67.

Orucova, D. I. (2023). Language and identity in modern educational environments. Language and Society, 4(2), 55–62.

Phillipson, R. (2009). Linguistic imperialism continued. Routledge.

Skutnabb-Kangas, T. (2000). Linguistic genocide in education — or worldwide diversity and human rights? Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Zeynalova, L. K. (2022). The role of multilingualism in global communication. Scientific Bulletin of Education, 7(1), 39–45.

Received: 15 April 2026
Accepted: 17 May 2026
Published: 19 May 2026

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
ISSN 3030-1394 /online/

Vol. 3 No. 2 (2026) Vasara

The Adjective Category in Azerbaijani and French: A Contrastive Analysis of Structural, Semantic, and Functional Properties

La catégorie de l'adjectif en azerbaïdjanais et en français : une analyse contrastive des propriétés structurales, sémantiques et fonctionnelles

[1] **Ali Allahverdiyev**
https://doi.org/10.69760/egjlle.2602034

Abstract. *This article presents a systematic comparative analysis of the adjective category in Azerbaijani and French across three interconnected analytical dimensions: structural formation and morphological typology, syntactic position and agreement behavior, and lexical-semantic classification. The two languages represent radically different morphological typologies — Azerbaijani as an agglutinative Turkic language and French as an inflectional Romance language — whose divergence produces fundamental differences in adjectival behavior that constitute a major source of learning difficulty for Azerbaijani learners of French. The analysis identifies six principal areas of contrast: the complete absence of grammatical gender in Azerbaijani adjectives versus the obligatory masculine-feminine agreement system of French; the invariant form of Azerbaijani adjectives versus the number agreement morphology of French; the strictly prenominal position of Azerbaijani adjectives versus the variable pre- and postnominal position of French adjectives; the analytic comparison system of Azerbaijani versus the partly suppletive comparison system of French; and the different semantic classification systems operative in the two languages. The article further examines the implications of these contrasts for the teaching and learning of French as a foreign language in Azerbaijani educational contexts, proposing that contrastive awareness instruction — explicit pedagogical engagement with the structural divergences identified in the analysis — constitutes the most theoretically principled and practically effective approach to addressing the characteristic errors that Azerbaijani learners produce in French adjectival grammar.*

Keywords: *adjective, Azerbaijani, French, comparative grammar, agreement, grammatical gender, adjectival position, contrastive linguistics*

La catégorie de l'adjectif en azerbaïdjanais et en français : une analyse contrastive des propriétés structurales, sémantiques et fonctionnelles

Résumé. *Cet article présente une analyse comparative systématique de la catégorie de l'adjectif en azerbaïdjanais et en français selon trois dimensions analytiques interdépendantes : la formation structurale*

[1] Allahverdiyev, A. Author, Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan. Email: aliallahverdiyev@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: https://orcid.org/0009-0003-1249-3041

et la typologie morphologique, la position syntaxique et le comportement en accord, ainsi que la classification lexico-sémantique. Les deux langues représentent des typologies morphologiques radicalement différentes — l'azerbaïdjanais en tant que langue agglutinante d'origine turque et le français en tant que langue romane flexionnelle — dont la divergence engendre des différences fondamentales dans le comportement de l'adjectif, constituant une source majeure de difficultés d'apprentissage pour les apprenants azerbaïdjanais du français. L'analyse identifie six domaines de contraste principaux : l'absence totale de genre grammatical dans les adjectifs azerbaïdjanais par opposition au système obligatoire d'accord masculin-féminin du français ; la forme invariante des adjectifs azerbaïdjanais par opposition à la morphologie d'accord en nombre du français ; la position strictement antéposée des adjectifs en azerbaïdjanais par opposition à la position variable pré- ou postnominale des adjectifs français ; le système analytique de comparaison de l'azerbaïdjanais par opposition au système partiellement supplétif du français ; ainsi que les différents systèmes de classification sémantique en vigueur dans les deux langues.

Mots-clés : *adjectif, azerbaïdjanais, français, grammaire comparée, accord, genre grammatical, position de l'adjectif, linguistique contrastive*

1. Introduction

The adjective constitutes one of the most theoretically productive grammatical categories for cross-linguistic comparison, because the way in which languages encode adjectival meaning — the attribution of qualities, properties, and relational characteristics to nominal referents — reflects with particular clarity the fundamental typological differences between grammatical systems (Dixon, 2004). Languages differ profoundly not only in the morphological forms that adjectives take but in whether adjectives agree with the nouns they modify, in what dimensions agreement is marked, in the syntactic positions adjectives occupy relative to their head nouns, and in the semantic classifications that the adjectival lexicon encodes. These differences are not arbitrary; they are systematic reflexes of the deeper typological organizations of the languages in which they occur.

Azerbaijani and French present one of the most typologically instructive contrasts available for the comparative study of adjectival systems, precisely because the two languages are organized along fundamentally different grammatical principles. Azerbaijani is an agglutinative language of the Oghuz branch of the Turkic family, characterized by a morphological strategy in which grammatical relations are expressed through the successive addition of discrete, semantically transparent suffixes to invariant roots (Johanson & Csató, 1998). French is an inflectional language of the Romance branch of Indo-European, characterized by a morphological strategy in which grammatical information — including gender, number, and agreement — is encoded through fusion morphology that does not decompose cleanly into one-suffix-one-meaning units. Within the adjectival system, this typological difference produces contrasts of the most fundamental kind: Azerbaijani adjectives are morphologically invariant, do not agree with their head nouns in any grammatical category, and occupy a fixed prenominal position; French adjectives agree with their head nouns in grammatical gender and number through a system of inflectional endings, and occupy a variable position — prenominal or postnominal — whose determination reflects a complex interaction of semantic, pragmatic, and lexical factors (Grevisse & Goosse, 2016).

These contrasts are not merely of theoretical interest; they have direct practical consequences for Azerbaijani learners of French, for whom the French adjectival system constitutes one of the most persistent and systematically difficult domains of grammatical acquisition. The absence of grammatical gender in Azerbaijani means that learners must not only acquire the inflectional endings of the French gender system but must first develop the conceptual category of grammatical gender itself — a category that has no functional analog in their first language. The variable position of French adjectives presents a further challenge: Azerbaijani learners, accustomed to the invariant prenominal position of adjectives in their first language, must develop sensitivity to the semantic and pragmatic factors that determine adjectival position in French, factors that are not encoded in any equivalent way in Azerbaijani grammar (Qasımova, 2025).

This article provides a systematic comparative analysis of the adjective category in Azerbaijani and French across three principal dimensions: structural formation and morphological typology; syntactic position and agreement behavior; and lexical-semantic classification. The analysis draws on established descriptive grammars of both languages — particularly Grevisse and Goosse's (2016) Le Bon Usage for French and Budagova's (1982) descriptive grammar of Azerbaijani — supplemented by the contrastive linguistics tradition for Azerbaijani-French comparisons (Asgarova, 2024; Allahverdiyev, 2025).

2. Theoretical Framework

The theoretical framework for this analysis integrates three complementary traditions. The first is the cross-linguistic typology of adjectives, as developed by Dixon (2004), who provides a systematic account of the grammatical properties that adjectives exhibit cross-linguistically — including the degree to which they participate in agreement, their syntactic distribution, and their semantic organization — and identifies the typological parameters along which languages vary in their adjectival systems. Dixon's work provides the comparative vocabulary for identifying and interpreting the contrasts between Azerbaijani and French adjectival systems.

The second tradition is the descriptive grammar of French adjectives, represented principally by Grevisse and Goosse's (2016) authoritative Le Bon Usage and Riegel, Pellat, and Rioul's (2018) Grammaire méthodique du français. These works provide the empirical description of French adjectival behavior — including the complex rules for gender agreement, number agreement, variable position, degrees of comparison, and semantic classification — that the contrastive analysis requires. For Azerbaijani, the primary descriptive source is Budagova's (1982) grammar of Azerbaijani, supplemented by Johanson and Csató's (1998) typological account of Turkic languages.

The third tradition is contrastive linguistics, particularly the methodology developed by James (1980) for identifying and analyzing systematic structural differences between languages.

Contrastive analysis provides both the theoretical justification for the present study — the evidence that structural contrasts predict learning difficulty — and the methodological tools for conducting feature-by-feature comparison across the relevant grammatical dimensions. Recent work by Qasımova (2025) and Asgarova (2024) on French-Azerbaijani linguistic contrasts provides the most directly relevant scholarly context for the present analysis.

3. Methodology

This study adopts a qualitative, descriptive-comparative methodology grounded in contrastive linguistics. The analysis proceeds through systematic feature-by-feature comparison of the adjectival systems of Azerbaijani and French across three analytical dimensions. Descriptive data were drawn from established grammatical references for both languages, and authentic examples were selected to illustrate each structural contrast with maximum clarity. The analysis follows James's (1980) contrastive analysis methodology, identifying areas of structural divergence that are predictive of learning difficulty, and the pedagogical implications section draws on applied linguistics research on contrastive awareness instruction in foreign language teaching contexts.

4. Overview of the Adjective Category in Both Languages

In both Azerbaijani and French, the adjective functions as a primary word class whose central semantic function is the attribution of qualities, properties, and relational characteristics to nominal referents. In this fundamental respect, the two languages are parallel: adjectives modify nouns in both attributive and predicative functions, they participate in comparative constructions that encode degrees of property possession, and they are organized into semantic subclasses that reflect the ontological distinctions between qualitative, relational, and evaluative properties. However, this functional parallelism conceals structural divergences of the most fundamental kind that arise from the different typological organizations of the two languages.

Azerbaijani, as an agglutinative language, organizes its grammar around the principle of morphological transparency: each grammatical meaning is encoded by a distinct, consistently identifiable suffix added to a stable root. Adjectives in Azerbaijani conform to this principle by being morphologically invariant — they do not change their form to agree with the nouns they modify in any grammatical category — and syntactically fixed — they invariably precede the nouns they modify and do not alternate between prenominal and postnominal positions. French, as an inflectional language, organizes its grammar around the principle of morphological fusion: grammatical meanings are encoded through endings that simultaneously mark multiple grammatical categories, and agreement — the systematic matching of dependent elements to head elements in specified grammatical features — is a pervasive organizing principle of the noun phrase and the clause. Adjectives in French are therefore morphologically variable, reflecting the gender and number of the nouns they modify through inflectional endings, and syntactically flexible, occupying prenominal or postnominal positions whose determination is governed by a complex interaction of semantic and pragmatic factors.

5. Structural and Morphological Analysis

5.1 Adjective Formation in Azerbaijani

Azerbaijani adjectives can be divided into three principal structural categories: simple (sadə) adjectives, which consist of underived roots (e.g., böyük "big", kiçik "small", yaxşı "good", pis "bad", qırmızı "red"); derived (düzəltmə) adjectives, which are formed from nominal, verbal, or other adjectival bases through the addition of derivational suffixes; and compound (mürəkkəb) adjectives, which are formed through the combination of two or more lexical elements. Derivational suffixes that productively form adjectives from nominal bases include -lı/-li/-lu/-lü (indicating possession or association: dağlı "mountainous", suyu "watery"), -sız/-siz/-suz/-süz (indicating absence: susuz "waterless", işsiz "unemployed"), and -(ı)ncı/-(i)nci (indicating ordinal sequence: birinci "first", ikinci "second"). These derivational suffixes follow the vowel harmony principle that is a defining characteristic of Turkic morphophonology.

Crucially, regardless of their structural category, Azerbaijani adjectives are morphologically invariant: they take no inflectional suffixes to agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, or case. The same form böyük serves in böyük adam ("big man") and böyük qadın ("big woman") — there is no feminine form. Similarly, böyük is unchanged in böyük adamlar ("big men"): there is no plural form. This invariance is a fundamental property of the Azerbaijani adjectival system that has no equivalent in French.

5.2 Adjective Formation and Agreement in French

French adjectives are marked by obligatory agreement with the nouns they modify in grammatical gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural). The regular agreement paradigm adds -e to the masculine singular base form to derive the feminine singular (grand → grande, petit → petite), adds -s to the masculine singular to derive the masculine plural (grand → grands), and adds -es to the masculine singular to derive the feminine plural (grande → grandes). This four-way paradigm — masculine singular, feminine singular, masculine plural, feminine plural — applies to the majority of French adjectives, though the phonological realization of the agreement morphology varies depending on the final consonant of the adjective stem, producing numerous orthographic and phonological irregularities that must be individually acquired (e.g., beau/belle/beaux/belles; vieux/vieille/vieux/vieilles; doux/douce/doux/douces).

Beyond the regular paradigm, French has a substantial class of adjectives with irregular feminine forms that cannot be derived by the simple addition of -e but require more complex morphological operations: adjectives ending in consonant clusters that assimilate in the feminine (gros → grosse; gras → grasse), adjectives that undergo stem alternation in the feminine (long → longue; blanc → blanche; sec → sèche), and adjectives derived from present or past participles (fatigué → fatiguée; aimant → aimante). The agreement system therefore demands of French learners not merely the mastery of a regular paradigm but an extensive repertoire of lexically specific knowledge about the morphophonological behavior of individual adjectives in agreement contexts.

6. Syntactic Position

6.1 Fixed Prenominal Position in Azerbaijani

In Azerbaijani, adjectives occupy a strictly fixed prenominal position: they invariably precede the nouns they modify and cannot be placed postpominally without becoming predicative rather than attributive. The adjective in gözəl qız ("beautiful girl"), qara at ("black horse"), and böyük ev ("big house") always precedes the head noun, and this positional constraint applies without exception across all adjective types and syntactic contexts. The invariant prenominal position of Azerbaijani adjectives reflects the broader head-final typology of Turkic languages, in which modifiers systematically precede their heads at all levels of grammatical structure — adjectives precede nouns, genitive phrases precede the possessed noun, and the verb is final in the clause.

6.2 Variable Pre- and Postnominal Position in French

In French, the position of attributive adjectives relative to the head noun is variable and grammatically significant. The default position for most adjectives is postnominal: the vast majority of French adjectives appear after the head noun in the basic, unmarked attributive construction, as in un homme grand ("a tall man"), une voiture rouge ("a red car"), and un livre intéressant ("an interesting book"). However, a well-defined class of adjectives — those expressing absolute or evaluative qualities such as size, age, goodness, and beauty — normally appear prenominally: un grand homme ("a great man"), une belle femme ("a beautiful woman"), un vieux livre ("an old book"), un bon repas ("a good meal").

For a subset of these adjectives, the positional alternation is semantically contrastive: the same adjective, placed before or after the noun, expresses a different meaning. Grand homme means "great man" (figuratively large in stature, i.e., important), while homme grand means "tall man" (physically large). Ancien professeur means "former professor" (no longer holding the position), while professeur ancien means "old/ancient professor" (of great age). Certain homme means "a certain man" (some unspecified man), while homme certain means "a sure man" (a reliable man). This position-meaning interaction has no equivalent in Azerbaijani and constitutes one of the most pedagogically challenging dimensions of French adjectival syntax for Azerbaijani learners (Grevisse & Goosse, 2016; Riegel, Pellat, & Rioul, 2018).

7. Lexical-Semantic Classification

Both Azerbaijani and French organize their adjectival lexicons into semantic subclasses, though the classification systems are not identical. In Azerbaijani, the primary semantic distinction is between qualitative adjectives (keyfiyyət sifətləri), which directly attribute a quality or property to the nominal referent (yaxşı "good", pis "bad", ağıllı "intelligent", güclü "strong"), and relational adjectives (nisbi sifətlər), which express a relationship between the referent and some other entity (dəmir "iron, made of iron", kənd "village, rural", qış "winter"). This binary classification reflects the fundamental semantic distinction between descriptive predication (the referent has quality X) and relational classification (the referent stands in relation R to entity Y).

French adjectival semantics is organized around a similar but more finely differentiated set of distinctions. Qualitative adjectives (adjectifs qualificatifs) describe inherent properties of referents and can typically be used both attributively and predicatively, can be modified by degree adverbs, and can participate in comparative constructions: grand, petit, beau, intelligent, rouge. Classifying adjectives (adjectifs classifiants or relationnels) place referents within a category or class — they typically cannot be graded, cannot be used predicatively without a change of meaning, and do not normally participate in direct comparison: national, chimique, médical, présidentiel. The distributional differences between these two classes — including their different behavior with respect to degree modification, predicative use, and position — constitute a semantically principled but pedagogically challenging aspect of French adjectival grammar that has no direct parallel in the Azerbaijani system (Riegel, Pellat, & Rioul, 2018).

8. Comparative Summary

The following table presents a systematic comparison of the principal structural, syntactic, and semantic properties of adjectives in Azerbaijani and French, providing a concise reference for the contrasts analyzed in detail in the preceding sections.

Table 1. Comparative Overview of Adjectival Properties in Azerbaijani and French

Feature	Azerbaijani	French
Typological class	Agglutinative (Turkic)	Inflectional (Romance)
Grammatical gender	Absent — adjectives do not mark gender	Obligatory — masculine / feminine (e.g., grand / grande)
Number agreement	Absent — adjectives do not agree in number	Obligatory — singular / plural (e.g., grands / grandes)
Position relative to noun	Fixed — strictly prenominal (güclü adam)	Variable — pre- or postnominal depending on meaning (un grand homme / un homme grand)
Degrees of comparison	*Analytic: ən, daha (ən gözəl, daha böyük)*	*Analytic (plus beau) + suppletive (bon → meilleur, mauvais → pire)*
Semantic subtypes	Qualitative, relational, compound (düzəltmə, mürəkkəb)	Qualitative (grand), relational/classifying (national), participial (fatigué)
Predicative use	Requires copula ol- in present: Adam zəhmətkeşdir	Uses être: L'homme est grand — adjective agrees with subject

9. Pedagogical Implications

The contrastive analysis presented in this article has direct and substantial implications for the teaching and learning of French as a foreign language in Azerbaijani educational contexts. The systematic structural divergences identified — in gender agreement, number agreement, syntactic position, and semantic classification — are predictive of the characteristic errors that Azerbaijani learners produce in French adjectival grammar, and they identify the specific domains that require the most intensive pedagogical attention.

The most fundamental challenge is the acquisition of grammatical gender. Since Azerbaijani has no grammatical gender, Azerbaijani learners approach French without the conceptual framework needed to process gendered agreement. Research on the acquisition of French gender by learners from genderless L1 backgrounds consistently demonstrates that gender is one of the latest-acquired and most persistently error-prone dimensions of French grammar (Ayoun, 2007). Explicit instruction that introduces the concept of grammatical gender as a lexical property of nouns — to be stored together with the noun form as a single lexical entry — and that systematically teaches the gender-predictive morphological cues available in French (nominal suffixes that reliably predict gender) is more effective than implicit exposure alone for these learners.

The variable position of French adjectives presents a second major pedagogical challenge. Contrastive awareness instruction — explicitly drawing learners' attention to the contrast between the fixed prenominal position of Azerbaijani adjectives and the variable position of French adjectives, and providing systematic instruction in the semantic and pragmatic factors that determine French adjectival position — is more effective than attempting to teach position as a set of isolated lexical facts about individual adjectives. Understanding the underlying principle — that the prenominal position in French encodes a subjective, evaluative, or inherent reading while the postnominal position encodes an objective, descriptive, or classifying reading — gives learners a generative rule that can be applied across the full range of position-alternating adjectives rather than memorized item by item (Qasımova, 2025; Asgarova, 2024).

10. Conclusion

This article has provided a systematic comparative analysis of the adjective category in Azerbaijani and French, demonstrating that the two languages exhibit fundamental structural divergences that arise from their different typological organizations and that have direct implications for the acquisition of French by Azerbaijani learners. The complete absence of grammatical gender in Azerbaijani, the invariant form of Azerbaijani adjectives, and the fixed prenominal position of Azerbaijani adjectives all contrast sharply with the obligatory gender and number agreement system of French adjectives and their variable positional behavior — contrasts that constitute the principal sources of systematic difficulty in Azerbaijani learners' French adjectival grammar.

The analysis confirms that contrastive linguistics provides both a theoretically principled framework for understanding these difficulties and a practically useful basis for designing more effective pedagogical approaches. Explicit contrastive instruction that makes learners aware of the structural divergences between their first and target languages — and that develops their understanding of the semantic and pragmatic principles that govern French adjectival behavior — equips them with the generative knowledge needed to produce accurate and appropriate French adjectival constructions rather than relying on inadequate transfer strategies from Azerbaijani. Future research should investigate the acquisition sequence of French adjectival agreement by Azerbaijani learners, the effectiveness of different instructional approaches for developing gender accuracy, and the role of explicit contrastive instruction in accelerating the acquisition of French adjectival position.

Funding: This research received no external funding.

Conflicts of Interest: The author declares no conflict of interest.

Author Contributions: Conceptualization: A.A.; Methodology: A.A.; Investigation: A.A.; Writing – original draft: A.A.; Writing – review & editing: A.A.

References

Allahverdiyev, A. (2025). Structural and functional characteristics of the adjective category in Azerbaijani and French. Nakhchivan State University Scientific Notes.

Asgarova, M. (2024). Linguistic influences on French: A historical perspective on Germanic and English borrowings. EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education, 1(2), 3–10.

Ayoun, D. (2007). Parameter setting in language acquisition. Bloomsbury Academic.

Budagova, Z. I. (1982). Azərbaycan dilinin qrammatikası [Grammar of the Azerbaijani language]. Elm.

Dixon, R. M. W. (2004). Adjective classes in typological perspective. In R. M. W. Dixon & A. Y. Aikhenvald (Eds.), Adjective classes: A cross-linguistic typology (pp. 1–49). Oxford University Press.

Grevisse, M., & Goosse, A. (2016). Le Bon Usage: Grammaire française (16th ed.). De Boeck Supérieur.

James, C. (1980). Contrastive analysis. Longman.

Johanson, L., & Csató, É. Á. (Eds.). (1998). The Turkic languages. Routledge.

Qasımova, İ. (2025). Formes d'analyse en syntaxe française moderne et leurs applications en linguistique appliquée. Porta Universorum, 1(3), 307–320.

Riegel, M., Pellat, J.-C., & Rioul, R. (2018). Grammaire méthodique du français (7th ed.). Presses Universitaires de France.

Nuri, A., & Ismayilli, T. (2025). The importance of student motivation. Science, Education and Innovations in the Context of Modern Problems, 8(6), 260–262.

Received: 13 March 2026
Accepted: 17 May 2026
Published: 19 May 2026

EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy
E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Vol. 3 No. 1 (2026): Pavasaris

The *Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education* ***(3030-1394)*** is an international, peer-reviewed journal dedicated to advancing knowledge and understanding in the fields of linguistics and language education. We aim to provide a platform for researchers, educators, and practitioners to share their work and contribute to the global discourse on language teaching, learning, and linguistic research.

Aims and Scope

Our journal focuses on a wide range of topics within linguistics and language education, including but not limited to:

- Theoretical and applied linguistics
- Language acquisition and learning
- Bilingualism and multilingualism
- Language teaching methodologies
- Educational technology in language learning
- Sociolinguistics and language policy
- Translation studies

We welcome submissions that explore innovative approaches, present empirical research findings, or offer critical reviews of current trends in the field.

Open Access Policy

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education is committed to the open-access movement, providing unrestricted online access to all published articles. This ensures that research is freely available to the academic community and the general public, facilitating wider dissemination and engagement.

Peer Review Process

All submissions undergo a rigorous double-blind peer review process. This ensures that each manuscript is evaluated based on its academic merit, contribution to the field, and adherence to the journal's standards.

Ethical Standards

We adhere to the highest ethical standards in publishing. Authors are expected to follow ethical guidelines in conducting and reporting research, including avoiding plagiarism, conflicts of interest, and ensuring proper attribution of sources.

Archiving
Our journal is included in the LOCKSS and CLOCKSS archiving systems, ensuring that our content is securely preserved and accessible for the future.

Contact Information
For any inquiries regarding submissions, the peer review process, or other journal-related matters, please contact us at **urbaite0013@gmail.com**

Euro-Global Journal of Linguistics and Language Education
Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy
Executive Secretary: Gerda Urbaite
Salomėjos Nėries g. 57, Vilnius, Lithuania
E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Editorial Team

• Soumita Sarkar, PhD in Philology (English Language Teaching & Second Language Acquisition), Department of English, Gujarat University, Ahmedabad, India

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy
Executive Secretary: Gerda Urbaite
Salomėjos Nėries g. 57, Vilnius, Lithuania
E-mail: editor@egarp.lt, urbaite0013@gmail.com